



MONTGOMERY, 1946  
Chief of the Imperial General Staff

A.

COMPLETE KEY

TO

KINGSLEY'S THE 'HEROES'

—BY—

RAMNATH BHARGAVA, B A.

AND

PODHI BIHARI LAL, M.A.



Allahabad:

The Nazair Kanun Hind Press.

1897.



## CONTENTS.

---

1. Life of Charles Kingsley.
2. Notes on the Preface.
3. Story I.—Perseus.  
Introduction, Argument or Summary, Notes.
4. Story II.—The Argonauts.  
Notes.
5. Story III.—Theseus.  
Notes.
6. Appendices.
  - (1) Introduction, Analysis and Summary of the second Story—‘The Argonauts.’
  - (2) Introduction and Summary of the third Story—Theseus.
  - (3) Some Rational explanation of the stories.
  - (4) Sixty Model Questions, with Answers, on the Preface and the three stories.



"To preserve a becoming brevity—that, surely, is the first duty of the biographer. The second, no less surely, is to maintain his own freedom of spirit. It is not his business to be complimentary; it is his business to lay bare the facts of the case as he understands them."

From LYTTON STRACHEY's Preface,  
*Eminent Victorians*

A  
COMPLETE KEY  
TO  
KINGSLEY'S 'THE HEROES.'

---

LIFE OF CHARLES KINGSLEY.

*Kingsley, Charles* (1819-1875), an English clergyman, poet and novelist, was born on the 12th June 1819, at Holne vicarage, Dartmoor, Devon. His early years were spent at his father's living in the Len country and afterwards in North Devon. The scenery of both made a great impression on his mind, and was afterwards described with singular vividness in his writings. He was educated at a private school and at King's College, London, after his father's promotion to the rectory of Chelsea. In 1838 he entered Magdalene College, Cambridge, where he took his degree in 1842, first class in Classics and senior optime in Mathematics. In the same year he was ordained to the curacy of Eversley in Hampshire to the rectory of which he was not long afterwards promoted, and this was his home for the remaining thirty three years of his life, although his residence there was much broken by various domestic circumstances as well as in later years, by promotion to the other offices in Chester. In 1844 he married Fanny, daughter of Pascoe Grenfell, and in 1848, when aged twenty nine he published his first volume, the *Saint's Tragedy*. In 1860 he was appointed to the Professorship of Modern history in the University of Cambridge, which he resigned in 1869, and was soon after appointed to a canonry at Chester. In 1873 this was exchanged for a canonry at Westminster. He died at Eversley, after a short illness, on the 23rd January 1875.

It will be seen that his life had but few incidents. With the exception of occasional changes of residence in England, generally for the sake of his wife's health, one or two holiday trips abroad, a tour in the West Indies, and another in America to visit his eldest son settled there as

Shrewsbury, and Dr. William Moodie who helped me for no other reason than their disinterested generosity.

None of these people should be associated necessarily with the opinions or any specific information in this book; it is a pie baked to my own recipe. As the research progressed and each new piece in the jig-saw found a place, a theme developed in my mind; and while I believe this theme to be a true explanation of Montgomery's career, I hesitate to suggest that any of my kind informants automatically subscribe to it as well. They may strongly oppose it.

At all events here is the story as I see it and as my wife has revised and edited it. At least it is a story with a happy ending.

ALAN MOOREHEAD

Jan 1946

As a novelist his chief power lay in his descriptive faculties.

As a poet he wrote but little but that little he wrote with a singular facility; and there are passages in his poetical works which ought to take their place in all future standard collections of English literature.

In person, Charles Kingsley was tall and spare, sinewy rather than powerful and of a restless excitable temperament. His complexion was swarthy, his hair dark, and his eye bright and piercing. His temper was hot, kept under rigid control, his disposition tender, gentle, and loving as that of a woman, with flashing scorn and indignation against all that was ignoble and impure. He was a good husband, father and friend.

### NOTES ON THE PREFACE.

Page VII.\* *Preface*, introduction. *My dear children*, these tales have been written by Kingsley for the amusement and instruction of his three children, namely, his two daughters, Rose and Mary, and his son, Maurice; hence this preface has been put in the form of a letter addressed to them. *Already*, before this. *Of*, means with reference to. *The old Greeks*, the Greeks of the ancient times. *As ... up*, as you advance in years. *Spend.....time*, employ much of your time. *To come across*, to meet; to see. *Taken from*, derived from; based upon. *History*, record of the past.

*I may.....day*, is a parenthetical clause. *Have had*, have possessed or obtained; *have* is the auxiliary and *had* the principal verb. *If.....for*, but for. *The girls.....old Greeks*, though the girls may not read Greek books in original, yet they will surely read many stories based upon Greek history and see things which we would not have possessed, if these ancient Greeks had not existed. *Hardly*, scarcely, almost never. *Proverbs*, maxims; sayings. *Passing*, going beside. *Buildings*, houses. *Well-furnished*, adorned with proper furniture. *Statues*, images. *Ornaments*, decorations. *Patterns*, samples; specimens. *Greek.....paper*, furniture and paper after the model of that used by the Greeks. *Strangely*, wonderfully; surprisingly. P. VIII. *Mark*, stamp. *Modern*, new. *So strangely.....now live*, so wonderfully has this modern society, in which we move, been influenced by the ancient Greeks. *Owe to*,

---

\* Figures in black type are from the Three and Sixpenny edition.



It would ....you why, to explain the reason of which would occupy a great deal of our time. *Hellas*, originally was a small district in Thessaly. As the inhabitants of this district, the *Hellenes*, gradually spread over the surrounding country, their name was adopted by other tribes, who became assimilated in language, manners and customs to the original Hellenes. The Romans called the land of the Hellenes *Graecia*, whence we have derived the name of Greece. *Were made up of*, consisted of. *Separate states*, distinct kingdoms. *Minwai*, an ancient Hellenic tribe who dwelt originally in Thessaly. *Other such names*, other similar names. *The Archipelago*, the sea which separates Greece from Asia Minor, with a large number of islands dotting its surface. *Ionia*, the name given by the ancient Greeks to the maritime district on the west coast of Asia Minor. *Hellespont*, (now *Dardanelles*), the strait joining the sea of Marmora with the Mediterranean. *Rhodes*, an island in the *Ægean Sea*. *Colonies*, new settlements. *Sicily*, a large island in the Mediterranean Sea, off the South western coast of Italy. *South Italy*, or *Graecia Major* (Great Greece) was the name applied chiefly to the cities on the Tarentine Gulf; but it also included the Greek cities on the west coast, such as Cumae and Neapolis. Apart from its relation with the Greeks, the name was never applied to South Italy itself. *Sinope*, a Seaport on the northern coast of the Black Sea. *Kertch and Sevastopol*, are the principal seaport towns in the Crimean Peninsula. *Alexander the Great*, was a king of Macedon, who after subduing all Greece, invaded and reduced Persia, and advanced up to the Sutlej into India, but was obliged to return as his troops refused to go on. He was the greatest conqueror of ancient times. He was born in B.C. 355 and died in 323. (For a more detailed account of his life, see your Indian History.) *Egypt, Syria, Persia*, countries too well known to require any particular description. *P. X. After my stories*, after the period to which my stories relate. *Puzzled*, bewildered. *Find them out*, look them up in the maps. *Pleasanter way*, more agreeable method. The Comparative "pleasanter" is, strictly speaking, incorrect; for Adjectives of two syllables are compared by adding *more* and *most*, except when they end in *e*, *ow* or *y*. *Dull*, uninteresting. *Lesson book*, a prescribed text-book.

*Heartily*, cordially. *If I did not*, i.e., if I did not love



admired. The great wonders of the world are seven in number : viz.; (1) The Pyramids of Egypt; (2) the Pharos of Alexandria ; (3) the walls and hanging gardens at Babylon ; (5) the temple of Diana at Ephesus ; (5) the Statue of Olympian Jupiter ; (6) the mausoleum of Artemesia, and (7) the colossus of Rhodes ; of which the 5th and the 7th are of Greek origin. The Parthenon, the Theseum and other buildings in Greece, though now in ruins, also testify to the excellence of Greek architecture. *For which* :.....*day*, which have made us wiser.

*Fancy*, imagine. *Heathens*, pagans ; originally, this word meant, like *Pagan*, (L. *pagus*, a heath), one who dwells in a village or the country ; but as Christianity spread into villages more slowly than in towns, these *heathens* or *pagans*, from being merely *rustics*, *villagers*, came to be regarded as idolaters. *It was not so*, i.e., God cared for them. *God's*.....*works*, God is merciful to all his creatures. *Understands*..... *people*, can read everybody's thoughts. *Fashions*, models. *St. Paul*, one of the most energetic apostles of Christ. *In after times*, at a later date. *After*, is an Adjective; comparative of *aft*. *Fallen low*, become degenerate. *They ought*.....*better*, they should have acted better. *Offspring*, children ; progeny. Page XIII. *Feel after*, search for. *And St. Paul told these old Greeks, &c. &c.* this passage alludes to St. Paul's preaching at Athens, wherein the Apostle says : " Ye men of Athens, I perceive that in all things ye are too superstitious. \* \* \* \* \* God that made the world and all things therein seeing that He is Lord of heaven and earth, dwelleth not in temples made with hands ; \* \* \* \* \* hath made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth, and hath determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation ; that they should seek the Lord, if haply they might feel after him and find Him, though He be not far from every one of us ; for in him we live and move and have our being ; as certain of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring." (*The Acts XVII, 22-28.*) *Father of the Church*, one of the early Christian writers who were born in the first century. They were Polycarp, Clement, Ignatius and Hermas. *Philosophy*, the science of things divine and human, and the causes in which they are contained.



of a British general. Where for the most part his predecessors since Wellington had been big and handsome men, Montgomery was small and wiry. He had neither the ruddy complexion nor the deep voice nor the heartiness which usually goes with men who have succeeded on the battlefield and come home at last among their friends to a life of privilege and power. At fifty-nine the Field-Marshal was a soft-spoken little man, rather more dapper than resplendent in his uniform, and his movements were quiet and precise. His thinning grey hair had left him bald across the temples, and his complexion was sallow, his face sharp and taut, his nose pinched and slightly aquiline. There was something almost of a mediaeval ascetic in his spare appearance, something of the ecclesiastic or the hermit; at all events if you had come upon him unawares in his civilian clothes you would scarcely have taken him for a regular soldier.

And despite his evident love of the crowds, his gregariousness stopped short of his private life. He shared with General Gordon of Khartoum a contempt for "dinners", for the normal club-life of other soldiers. He went to bed early, and while the port and cigars went round in his absence a hundred stories were hatched about Monty's abstemiousness, his eccentricities, his simplicities and, as it seemed to others, his absurdities. There can scarcely have been a British general so much discussed, so often the butt of pleasantries which ranged sometimes beyond gossip into malice. And yet perversely he seemed more and more to obtain a respect not for his office but for himself. He was a character in his own right.

It was not so much the tight and rigid mouth, the set of the chin, which arrested your attention: it was the light blue-grey eyes. They had a peculiar steely remoteness, a coldness altogether washed of emotion, and they gave you the impression that he was searching rather than seeing, always watching intently rather than merely looking from place to place. Half a dozen of the best British artists attempted to capture that expression and were baffled; and it was never quite revealed in the millions of photographs that flooded the country.

If Montgomery was still popular among the mass of the people in England, and even enlarging his following in the Army, it was almost in despite of his behaviour. He had consistently done the one thing that was not permissible: he had broken the traditional rules. Instead of being silent he had approached the soldiers and the public directly. He had quarrelled with men to whom he ought to have deferred. He

3. Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God, in vain:

4. Remember that thou keep holy the Sabbath day. Six days shalt thou labour and do all that thou hast to do, but the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God. In it thou shalt do no manner of work, thou, and thy son, and thy daughter, thy man servant and thy maid servant, thy cattle and the stranger that is within thy gates. For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day; wherefore the Lord blessed the seventh day and hallowed it.

5. Honour thy father and thy mother.

6. Thou shalt do no murder.

7. Thou shalt not commit adultery.

8. Thou shalt not steal.

9. Thou shalt not hear false witness against thy neighbours.

10. Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's wife, nor his servant nor his maid, nor his ox nor his ass, nor anything that is his.

*Knew well.....wrong*, had wisdom enough to distinguish between right and wrong. *That was.....courage*, their courage arose principally from this belief. *Right enough*, quite right. *All wisdom.....Him*, He is the source of all wisdom.

*Wrought*, prepared. *Country people*, villagers; rustics. *Walled villages*, villages surrounded by walls. *Simple*, as opposed to luxurious; plain. *Hardworking*, laborious. *Cooked...meals*, prepared their own food. *Thought...shame*, were not ashamed of doing so. *Harnessed*, put the harness on. P. XVI. *Did...house*, managed all domestic affairs. *Embroidered*, made ornamental needle work. *Honoured*, respected. *But grown-up children*, persons advanced in years but as simple as children. *Right noble children*, very noble children. *Cleverest*, most skilful. *Leads all the rest*, is obeyed by all the others.

*Simple*, guileless. *They.....tales*, they liked to hear strange thrilling stories. *Sagas*, Scandinavian legends, or heroic or mythic traditions handed down among the Norsemen and kindred people. *Eddas*, the religious or

missile struggles slowly and awkwardly upward, leaving an acrid trail of smoke behind. Then suddenly it alters course for no apparent reason and shoots off at tremendous velocity into the stratosphere.

In 1942 few people outside the Army had ever heard of him. The war was half over. More than half his life was spent. Suddenly, at the late age of fifty-four, this obscure figure seizes command of hundreds of thousands of men, apparently with the utmost ease and confidence. He walks among kings and commanders with complete, even aggressive assurance, and manages battles on a cosmic scale as though he had been accustomed to this exalted atmosphere all his life. The minor soldier who had spent half a century inside the narrow walls of a regular army life becomes overnight an inspirational leader, a household word among millions, a public figure approaching the war-time popularity of Churchill in Britain and Roosevelt in America. To the outward eye there are no mistakes, no back-slidings. He advances from one victory to another, cramming the events of five lifetimes into these few tumultuous years until even his eccentricities become part of the legend of his success.

What happened to Montgomery in 1942 at Alamein, the critical moment of his life, the point where he shot off into the stratosphere? Was it merely good luck and a certain amount of native cunning? Is there something unknown in the years before and a good deal unrevealed in the years thereafter? Was he a good man who was simply kept down until that perilous moment because of his idiosyncrasies and his vanity? Was there some mystical experience in the desert?

The questions are irresistible. One feels the need to plunge in search of the answers, to burrow backwards from the point of his birth and upwards through that early secluded life, to establish some kind of pattern and explanation for this seemingly disjointed and two-sided career. And in their very nature the questions seem to suggest that we might emerge at the end of our search with a character who bears only slight resemblance to the popular figure of Montgomery as he was known to the public during and immediately after the war.

First, to glance briefly backward.

The family background bristles with attractive analogies and coincidences which might mean anything or nothing at

## STORY I.

Perseus.

## INTRODUCTION.

King Abas of Argos had two sons, who were twins. Ever since their birth, the two princes, who were called Acrisius and Proetus respectively, hated and quarrelled with each other; so much so that some mythologists relate that they quarrelled even in the womb. The jealousy between the brothers, grew from day to day. Acrisius, on his father's death, drove Proetus out of the country and the latter had to take refuge with Jobates, king of Lycia, whose daughter Antea he married. Assisted by his father-in-law, and the Cyclopes, Proetus returned and defeated Acrisius. After a great deal of fighting the two brothers decided to divide the kingdom between themselves. Under this arrangement Proetus received Media and the coast of Argolis, with Tiryns as the chief town, while Acrisius received Argos and the rest of the kingdom. Now, because Acrisius had been the first to raise his hand against his own blood, it was prophesied, that by his own blood he should be slain. Far from mending his ways even under this threat, he shut up his daughter Danae in a subterranean chamber lined with brass and imagined himself secure. But Zeus visited her in the form of a shower of gold and in due course she gave birth to Perseus.

## SUMMARY.

Part I. An oracle having declared that her father would be killed by her son, Danae was shut up in a subterranean chamber by Acrisius. But even there, she became by Zeus the mother of Perseus. The mother and son were, by Acrisius's orders, exposed on the sea in a chest; but through divine intervention they reached Seriphos, where they were kindly received by Dictys the brother of king Polydectes.

Part II. Perseus went on a voyage to Samos, and during his absence Polydectes conceived the idea of making Danae his wife and on her refusal made her a slave. Meanwhile Perseus one day dreamt a dream; in which Athene came and asked him if he was bold enough to bring her the head of Medusa the Gorgon, and on his agreeing she told that he was then too young; but first he should go

man. At Shrewsbury in 1083 he founded the Abbey in fulfilment of a vow, and a monastery grew up around it. Three days before his death the old soldier was received into the Benedictine Order. Twentieth-century tourists visiting the Abbey came upon a stone slab bearing the representation of a knight in armour with his sword and shield. The stone is very old and very worn and it has this inscription:

*Sir Roger de Montgomery  
Second in Command of the Army of His Kinsman  
William the Conqueror  
At the Battle of Hastings, the First of the Family of Montgomery in  
England. He was advanced to High Honour as the Over-Lord of Many  
counties, and created  
Earl of Shrewsbury  
He Founded the Church and Abbey, wherein he, as a  
brother of the Benedictine Order .  
Died, the First of August MXCV*

From this strong plant the Montgomery clan grew up. The records are obscure and they had a way of being burnt at intervals. A Robert Montgomery turns up in Scotland in the twelfth century, and early in the seventeenth century there begins the migration over to Northern Ireland. In 1628 a branch of the family settled at Killaghtee in south-west Donegal, near Dunkineely. There is a John Montgomery, then a David, and finally one is on sure ground at last with the birth of a Samuel Montgomery in 1723. Samuel was a prosperous Londonderry merchant dealing in wines and spirits and other goods. By 1773 he had amassed sufficient wealth to buy a thousand acres of land on the north bank of Lough Foyle and erect thereon a country home called New Park, which has been the centre of the family life ever since. To the dignity of the new estate Samuel added the Montgomery crest with its motto "Gardez Bien". An arm holding a broken spear rises above the shield and this commemorates the Montgomery who rode in a tourney upon King Henry II of France and drove his lance into the King's eye.

Another Samuel, a churchman, succeeds the first, and then in 1811 Robert Montgomery, the grandfather of Field-Marshal Montgomery, is born. From here onwards we might justly look for the first definite roots of the squalling and difficult grandchild who was to be born towards the close of the century.

Robert Montgomery, the grandfather, was a stern and gifted man. At the age of seventeen he set out from New Park with three hundred pounds in his pocket to make his fortune in India. From the first he prospered in the Indian Civil Service.

her marriage with a stranger. When he and his followers listened to no reason, but rushed upon Perseus with drawn swords, our hero changed them into stone by means of the Gorgon's head. He then married Andromeda and lived for a year at his father-in-law's court after which,

Part V. he started homewards. When he reached Seriphos, he went straight to the palace of Polydectes who, with all his courtiers, was engaged in a feast. Seeing Perseus at the door, he taunted him regarding his promise, and Perseus displayed the terrible Gorgon's head, which turned all the revellers into stone. Giving the kingdom to Dictys, Perseus, accompanied by his mother and bride sailed towards Argos. On arriving there, he found that Acrisius had fled to Larissa, having been driven out by Prætus who had made war against him afresh. Perseus proceeded to Larissa where he found that the king Teutamenes had got up all kinds of games and a feast in honour of Acrisius. Desirous of distinguishing himself in the presence of his grand-father before disclosing himself, Perseus entered the lists and won 4 successive crowns. To win the fifth crown, he took up a quoit and hurled it 5 fathoms beyond the rest, but the people asked him to hurl it again, He put forth all his strength in the next quoit, but, as fate would have it, a gust of wind turned the quoit from its course and it hit Acrisius in the foot, killing him on the spot, thus fulfilling the oracle. Perseus mourned and wailed, and had a rich pyre erected on which Acrisius was burnt: after which he had himself purged of the sin of killing his aged relative unintentionally and returned to Argos where he reigned well and long, with Andromeda, by whom he was the father of seven children. When they died, Athene took them up into the sky together with Cepheus and Cassiopoeia (the father and mother of Andromeda), and placed them there as a constellation of stars.

## PART I.—HOW PERSEUS AND HIS MOTHER CAME TO SERIPHOS.

Page 1. *Once upon a time*, formerly ; in ages gone by. *Twins*, two children produced at a birth. It also means in Astronomy a constellation and sign of the Zodiac, called Gemini; when used in the Singular form, it is an Adjective. *Who were twins*, who were born at one and the same time. *Acrisius*, son of Abas, king of Argos and

almost undiluted hell-fire. On the whole such diet has done me immense good."

Still later, in the course of passing on this doctrine of hell-fire to his children, he adjured them: "You come of a family of 'gentlemen'. You know that word does not signify mere outward refinement. It tells of a refined and noble mind to which anything dishonourable or mean or impure is abhorrent and unworthy."

From the first there could be no doubt about Henry's piety or of his obedience to his somewhat overwhelming Victorian father. It was also evident that Henry was no brilliant scholar. He yearned for sports with a more than schoolboy eagerness. Sir Robert was able to indulge him; the family was prosperous. New Park in Ireland had flourished and the village of Moville or Bunnyfuddle had grown around it in the feudal tradition. Henry was sent to Harrow, where he soon became captain of both football and cricket. At eighteen, when he was ready for Cambridge, he was a tall, sensitive, strikingly good-looking youth, obviously embarked on a successful career. At the University he took his degree in the Moral Sciences Tripos, but he was chiefly remembered among his contemporaries there for jumping up the steps leading out of Great Court up to the Hall at Trinity—a remarkable leap ten feet in length and four feet high.

In 1871 Henry, at the age of twenty-four, was ordained in Chichester Cathedral and his ecclesiastical career had begun. About this time a Dr. Farrar was obtaining a remarkable success in England as a popular preacher and a writer of improving books. Dr. Farrar was a stern churchman, a pronounced teetotaller and a great teacher of boys (he had been both a schoolmaster at Harrow and headmaster of Marlborough). But writing and preaching were the passions of his life, and in these he exhibited a certain flamboyance, even a theatricality, which was looked on by the more crusty elders of the Church with some misgiving. He excited the parishioners. He stirred up emotions in a way that was reminiscent of Mr. Charles Dickens at his public readings. And soon the Doctor's *St. Winifred's* and *Eric, or Little by Little* were to sweep around the English-speaking world. He was a best-seller. There was no restraining his success either in the pulpit or at the desk, and he applied himself to both with an abounding energy. His *Life of Christ* became a standard work. Eventually he died, it is said, of writer's cramp.

There is little in Dean Farrar's works which the modern reader will find sensational. To take a typical sentence:

make man happy. *And yet*, in spite of these things. *Wretched*, miserable; unhappy. *Were jealous of*, envied. *Each other*, is a Reciprocal Pronoun; used of two persons; while "one another" is used of more than two. *From...* *quarrel*, disputes arose among them even from the moment of their birth. *Take away*, wrest. *Keep all for himself*, appropriate the whole to himself. *First*, at first; an Adverb. *Drove out*, expelled. *Brought.....wife*, returned home with a foreign princess as his wife. This foreign princess was Antea or Stheneboea, the daughter of king Jobates of Lycia. *Warriors*, persons skilled in the art of war. *Cyclopes* (i.e., creatures with round or circular eyes) are described differently by different writers. Homer speaks of them as a gigantic and lawless race of shepherds in Sicily who ate human flesh and cared not for Zeus, and had only one eye each in the centre of the forehead. According to Hesiod, they were Titans, 3 in number, and having one eye each in the centre of the forehead. In later traditions they were regarded as the assistants of Vulcan and their number was no longer confined to three. *In his turn*, in order of succession. The meaning is that formerly Acrisius had turned out Proetus and now Acrisius himself was turned out by Proetus. Page 2.—*A long while*, for a long time. *Up and down the land*, all over the country. *Settled*, decided. *Tiryns*, a town of Argolis, next in importance to Argos. *Unhewn*, not cut. *Are standing*, exist. *To this day*, even at the present time. 'To' denotes extent or limit.

*Prophet*, oracle; one who predicts events. *Hard-hearted*, cruel. *Prophesied*, foretold. It should be noted that *prophecy*, is the verb and *prophecy*, the noun. *Risen up against*, injured. *Your own blood*, your own kinsmen. *Blood*, consanguinity. This is an Abstract noun used for the Concrete. *Sinned against*, wronged. *Kindred*, relatives; a Collective Noun. *Punished*, chastised. *Danae*, daughter of Acrisius and mother of Perseus. [An account of her life is given in the text itself and need not be repeated here.] *Bear*, bring forth; give birth to. *By that son's.....die*, that son shall kill you. *Shall* denotes certainty. *Ordained*, appointed. *Come to pass*, happen; take place.

*At that*, on hearing this prophecy. *At*, denotes consequence or effect. *Mend his ways*, reform himself. *Repent-*



a day of absolute observance when no game was played, no theatre was open and no light book was read. The rest of the week fairly hummed with prosperous life. Hansoms and growlers and horse trams bowled along the gaslit streets. Gilbert and Sullivan had commenced their tremendous vogue along with the music-hall and the pub, where oysters, the poor man's dish, were a penny a dozen. The penny-farthing bicycle was going out and a craze for the new "safety" machines was sweeping England. The rich man drank his one or two bottles of port or madeira with his dinner, a dinner of unnumbered dishes of remarkable weight and substance. The poor man, imprisoned in the squalid poverty of the back streets, turned to his Hogarthian gin shop which displayed a notice outside the door: "Drunk for a penny. Dead drunk for twopence." Whistler had won his case against Ruskin without doing much to shake the popular belief that every painting should be a faithful and photographic representation and, if possible, tell a story. Oscar Wilde had arrived on the scene and the forces of outraged morality were soon to break on top of him. It was the age of accepted practices, of solid bourgeois tradition, of righteous commerce and confident self-esteem; the high watermark of placid living between the hurricane of the Napoleonic wars in the nineteenth century and the German campaigns of the twentieth.

Henry and Maud Montgomery in their vicarage overlooking the Oval at Kennington were well and securely launched upon this carefully organized and regulated world. With youth and intelligence and family backing they had only to follow in the predestined grooves of the Church to make a dignified and useful life for themselves and their children. The world stretched out comfortably ahead. Behind them lay generations of worthy but unremarkable ancestors. If the Montgomerys had produced no great crusaders since Roger, no writers or statesmen or soldiers of any great distinction, they had at least done their share in populating England with a solid and respectable community; they were gentlemen.

Henry Montgomery was probably much too modest to have expected any momentous future for himself. In any event his exacting sense of duty to his religion and his immediate work would have chilled any worldly ambition that might have descended to him from his successful father. He devoted himself to his parish. Children were not long in coming; first Queenie, then Harold, then Donald, and still the young mother was barely past twenty. And now in the summer of 1887, in the midst of this world of placid clerical gentlemen,

Alcyone threw herself for grief into the sea, and that the gods, out of compassion, changed them into birds. "It was fabled that during the seven days before, and as many after, the shortest day of the year, while the bird *Alcyon* was breeding, there always prevailed calms at sea." [Dr. Smith]. Hence the phrase *Halcyon days*, i.e., peaceful or calm days. They lasted for 7, 11 or 14 days. *Ruffle*, disturb. *No storms.....sea*, the sea is calm and undisturbed.

P. 4. *You shall hear*, I will tell you. *Shall*, denotes promise. *A fairy maiden*, a fairy girl. *Fairies* were imaginary beings or spirits supposed to assume a human form, and to meddle in the affairs of mankind. *Beach*, sea-shore. *The daughter.....wind*, here is a confusion between *Aeolus* the father of *Halcyone*, who was the ruler of *Thessaly*; and *Aeolus*, the father of the *Aeolian* race, and the god of the winds. Combining both these notions; *Kingsley* calls *Halcyone*, the daughter of the beach and of the wind.

P. 5.—*Wrecked*, shipwrecked. *Swim to the shore*, reach the shore by swimming. *The billows.....up*, he sank beneath the waves. *Drowning*, sinking. *Leapt*, jumped. *In vain*, to no purpose. *Immortals*. Gods. *Floating*, swimming. *Sail up and down*, remain floating upon the waves.

*A long.....Danae*, the day appeared very tedious to *Danae*. *Beside*, in addition. *Faint*, weak. *With*, denotes cause. *No land appeared*, she could see no land. *Quietly*, calmly. *Drooped*, lowered.

*Awakened*, roused from sleep. *Suddenly*, all at once. *Jarring*, making a rattling sound. *Grinding*, making a sound as of rubbing against an object. *The air...sound*, many kinds of sounds were heard. *Mighty cliffs*, large rocks. *All*, wholly; an adverb. *In*, on account of. *All red.....sun*, which looked quite red on account of the red rays of the setting sun. *Breakers*, large waves that strike forcibly against the rocks. *Flakes*, films. *Foam*, froth. *Around her.....foam*, around her were rocks and breakers striking against them and masses of foam flew all around. *Flying flakes of foam*, is an example of Fig. Alliteration. *Clasped her hands together*, pressed her hands close. *Shrieked*, cried. *Stately*, dignified. *Tossing about*, moving to and fro.

## CHAPTER TWO

# THE BOY IN THE BERET

### I

IN 1889 Henry Montgomery was consecrated Bishop of Van Diemen's Land—or Tasmania—in Westminster, and the whole family set off by sea for the other side of the world.

It must have been an extraordinary upheaval for them. Another child, Una, had already followed the birth of Bernard, so that now there were five small children, and Maud Montgomery herself was still little more than a girl. Tasmania in those days was regarded as the outer wilderness, and with all his missionary zeal and his sense of duty Henry Montgomery must have had deep misgivings at abandoning his Irish home, his friends and the formalized life he loved so well in London. His wife, however, seems to have tackled the business with extraordinary determination. She was an exceptional girl, strong-willed, handsome and quite unusually methodical. From earliest girlhood she had been quick and intelligent at her lessons, and she shared her father's gift for precise and fluent writing. The rapid birth of her five children had still left her with abounding vitality. Not for one instant was she daunted by her youth, her lack of all experience in the life that lay ahead; while Henry prayed in his church for guidance, his wife was bundling up the trunks and boxes and keeping a firm hand on the excited children.

To understand Montgomery one has to keep in mind these early relationships, the resolute mother, the gentle father who was twice the mother's age, and the intensely busy "family" atmosphere which was now about to close round the boy in Tasmania.

They embarked on the steamship *Tainui*, and, making the long journey round the Cape of Good Hope, arrived in the harbour of Hobart in October 1889. Hobart of the 'nineties was an astonishingly beautiful place, a neat country town with many brownstone houses and wooden shingle roofs that ran down to the very edge of the clear water. "Victorias", with pairs of white ponies, trotted about the streets. Immediately behind the settlement Mount Wellington soared up, a gay wooded slope just coming at this season of the year into its spring freshness against the sky and the bright sun. Many

progeny. *A monstrous brood*, a large number of monsters. *Which.....you*, which awaits you there ; which you will have to do on your arrival there. *Play the man*, act manfully. *In that*, in the work at your home. *Before I can.....Gorgon*, before I decide to send you in search of the monster.

*Would have spoken*, wished to speak. *Writhing*, twisting ; being distorted. Page 13. *On the floor*, on the ground. *Turning*, moving. *Pass out of*, go from ; leave. *Raging*, violently agitated with passion. *Flew upon*, rushed at. *Mastiff*, a large species of dog, remarkable for its strength and courage. *Villain and Tyrant*, thou wicked and cruel monster. *Respect for*, reverence for. *Is this.....Gods*, is this the way in which you honor the Gods. *You shall die, shall* denotes certainty. *Dash out Polydectes' brains*, to kill Polydectes by knocking out his brains. *Clung to him*, clasped him close. *Fall on*, attack. *Entreated*, requested ; begged. *Brought you up*, maintained you. *Spare.....sake*, do not kill him for my sake.

*Lowered*, dropped. Page 14. *Was in the wrong*, had committed an offence. *Let.....pass*, allowed Perseus and his mother to go away.

*Took*, carried. *Made her one, &c.* here *her* is the Direct object and *one* the Factitive object of the verb *made*. *Safe*, free from molestation. *Dare.....altar*, venture to carry her off from the altar of the goddess. An altar is the place where sacrifices are offered. *To get.....force*, to obtain by force what he desired to possess. *Cast about*, calculated. *Cast ....cunning*, began to form plans as to how he could secure her by art.

*Get back*, recover. *Plot*, scheme. *To rid himself of*, to free himself from. *Now he was.....of him*, being sure that he could never get back Danae as long as Perseus remained in the island he thought of a plan to remove him. *Pretended*, feigned. *Forgiven*, pardoned. *For a while.....ever*, for some time, everything went on as calmly as before.

*Proclaimed*, announced. *Feast*, festivity. *Invited*, called. *Land owners*, landlords. *Homage*, obeisance. *Eat.....hall*, dine with him in his hall. *Banquet*, feast : entertainment.

They had strict instructions to refuse sweets even when they were offered at other children's parties.

Little by little the rules grew up until every corner of the day was organized and disciplined. The children rose at dawn, tidied their rooms, cleaned their shoes and chopped wood for the fires. Lessons began at 7.30, followed by an inspection of the bedrooms (the children standing on parade at the doorways), and then chapel. After chapel, breakfast and then lessons again all morning. At midday the family lunch, with the Bishop at the head of the table. Games in the afternoon for a fixed period. Supper, the children prepared for themselves, and ate in the schoolroom. And finally the day closed at the appointed hour with family prayers.

Saturday was a day of relaxation when the children might perhaps ask a few friends to a party. Sunday was a time when all games and worldly things must be put aside and the entire day devoted to religious readings and services. This was the fixed unalterable rule of the house and Maud Montgomery would allow no breaches of it. A Christian life was a serious and Spartan thing, and if she was firm then it was simply for the children's own good. Minor illnesses were no excuse for being absent from the daily round of duty. The children had to be tough. They learned that if they woke in the night with some possibly frivolous malaise they could not call on her; they must wait for the morning. If they wasted their pocket money they were beaten.

To a world which has had its customs loosened by two major wars this set routine seems harsh and repressive. It may even have been severe by Victorian standards, but it was certainly not exceptional for a churchman's household. The Rule was all. Sin had to be closely watched. It lay across a thin dividing line from virtue, and the safest thing was to observe a very definite code of behaviour from which it would be an effort to escape.

Here and there no doubt Maud Montgomery, in her zeal to do the best she could for her family, made mistakes. Possibly she was too firm in some ways. Possibly the children might have responded to a looser rein and a less guarded affection. But it must be remembered that she had no older relations in Tasmania to guide her in these things. In the absence of friendly advice she simply obeyed the Victorian law to the letter.

Henry was ready enough to hand over the household to his vigorous and capable young wife. He had much travelling to do in his diocese. Often he would be away for weeks tramping in the unexplored bush; he was a passionate walker. And

contact with. *The cliff below*, the rock near the surface of the sea. *It broke and parted*, it was divided into two pieces. *Light limbed*, having nimble limbs. *Whose eyes .....fire*, whose eyes shone like fire. *A young man..... fire*, this is a description of the God Hermes, the messenger of the gods among the Greeks and the Romans. *Scimitar*, a short sword. *Of diamond*, of denotes material. *Sandal*, a kind of shoe; kharaon. *Living wings*, wings which could be actually used for flying.

*Keenly*, scrutinizingly. *Looked.....keenly*, saw Perseus attentively. *They never.....eyes*, their eyes were steadfast. *Stir*, move. *Quivered*, shook. Page 18. *Hangs above*, hovers over (in preparation of swooping down upon it). *More than men*, i. e., Gods. *Bid.....fear*, commanded him to be fearless.

*Overcomes*, conquers. *Trial*, test. *Merits*, deserves. *Sharper*, more difficult. *He who.....still*, he who is the victor at one trial deserves to undergo a severer test. *Braved*, encountered; defied. *Done manfully*, behaved like a man. *Dare you brave*, are you bold enough to encounter.

*Try me*, put me to the test. *A new.....breast*, a new spirit has been infused into me. *Show.....this*, let me know how I can brave the Gorgon. *Think.....attempt*, weigh the matter carefully before you venture. *Repent*, change your mind. *If your.....you*, if you lose courage. *The Unshapen Land*, the abode of the evil spirits in mythology. *Better so*, it is better to die &c. &c. *Despised*, scorned. *Of your great kindness &c.*, out of your great kindness &c. *Of* denotes source. *Condescension*, (L. *Con*, with, *de*, down, *scando*, I climb) kindness towards inferiors.

Page 19. *Be.....listen*, listen to me patiently. *The Hyperboreans*, a fabulous people, who lived beyond the north wind in a region of perpetual sunshine. The poets related that the sun rose only once a year and set but once a year upon the Hyperboreans, whose year was thus divided into a 6 month's day and a 6 month's night, and they were therefore said to sow in the morning, to reap at noon to gather their fruits in the evening and to store all these things up at night; and that they lived for 1000 years. *Beyond the Pole*, on the further side of the North

pride. What was becoming increasingly apparent was that the child had inherited in a very marked degree his mother's strong will. The clash between them was inevitable.

Outwardly there was nothing very dramatic about all this; Bernard's misdemeanours were of the usual schoolboy variety. He spent pocket money on the forbidden sweets, or, worse still, against his mother's strict injunction accepted them at other people's houses—and then went roaming in the fields to clear his breath before he got home. Once, it is true, in a blind rage he pursued a little girl through the house with a carving knife (in after-life the victim said she felt like Rommel). But for the most part his sins were those of simple disobedience—of being late or noisy—of defiance and deliberate forgetfulness. It was not so much the quality of his transgressions: it was the importance which he, even as a small child, attached to them. He seemed incapable of taking life as easily and calmly as his brothers and sisters. Every incident was a challenge. Every row was a personal battle. Neither he nor his mother would give in. He might have accepted the routine but he hated the way it was applied. And in challenging his mother he found himself battering vainly against a will that was just as strong as his own. He was aware that he was being naughty, but he was unable to stop himself; something drove him on to put each issue to the test. And he began far too early in life to know fear. Sometimes, when he knew he had been naughty and that it would not be long before punishment overtook him, he would go coursing through the garden, and then, throwing himself down in the long grass he would whisper; "What have I done? What have I done?"

The problem was equally difficult for the mother. She judged it her duty to be firm rather than indulge him. At times, as it happens with most parents, the boy would drive her to the limit of exasperation. Then, standing at the head of the stairs she would call him, "Bernard, come here". He would walk up staunchly, and having taken his beating, would come down again, still in control of himself but with a trembling lip.

Possibly Bernard would have defied any control that was set upon him, even at so tender an age as this; he was irritable of all restraint. But he was also sometimes lonely and unhappy, and unconsciously felt himself in need of more affection than he found. Somewhere in that dark incommunicable world of early childhood a character was being formed. But to reach it and touch it and guide it—this was no easy thing for an unsubtle age which believed it had already discovered the correct methods for the behaviour and the bringing-up of children. How often do we ourselves look back into our first

warded by being placed among the Stars. *The Aegis-holder*, Zeus. *Aegis* was the name given to a shield which was possessed originally by Zeus, but which he afterwards presented to Athene. *Win to yourself renown*, become famous. *And a place among the heroes*, and be reckoned as one of the heroes. *The peak.....blow*, Mount Olympus, the abode of the gods.

*I will.....going*, I am resolved to go on with this enterprise, even though I do so at the risk of my life. *Scales*, the covering of fishes and reptiles. The word is applied to Medusa's skin because she was more of a beast than a human being. *If.....brass*, if her skin be composed of iron and brass. *The young man*, the young god who had accompanied Athene. *Bear, carry. Dale, valley. Hermes.....Olympus*, Hermes was a son of Zeus, who made him his own herald and the bearer of his commands to men on earth. He is also the god of Eloquence. The legend of his having killed Argus is as follows:—Zeus loved the daughter of Inachus the first king of Argos; but owing to Hera's (the wife of Zeus) jealousy, the poor princess was metamorphosed into a cow and placed under the guardianship of Argus, the "hundred-eyed." Hermes, at the command of Zeus, put Argus to death either by stoning him or by cutting off his head after sending him to sleep by the sweet notes of his flute; and delivered it to Hera who transplanted the eyes of Argus to the tail of the peacock, her favourite bird. *Olympus*, the extreme eastern part of the chain, which borders the Southern end of Pieria. In the Greek mythology, Olympus was the chief seat of the third dynasty of gods of which Zeus was the head.

Page 21. *Guide*, lead. *Divine*, godly. *Stray*, wander, lose their way. *Stroke*, thrust. *Needs...stroke*, its thrust does not require to be repeated. *Gird them on*, fasten them on your loins; equip yourself with them. *Lingered*, stayed. *Bid farewell*, say good bye. *Burnt-offerings*, sacrifices.

*Lest*, for fear that. *Relent*, give way; relax. *Lest...weeping*, for fear that you may change your mind by her weeping. *Comfort*, console. *In peace*, unharmed; uninjured. *Olympians*, dwellers on Olympus; i. e., the Gods. *Trust in.....Immortals*, rely upon the aid of the Gods.



"I remember the first day I saw the family", says the account of a contemporary. "They were walking down a street in Hobart. To us they seemed to have stepped from the pages of a picture-book. The Bishop, with his silky beard and kindly face, was always to us a picture bishop. Mrs. Montgomery was the most beautiful woman I have ever seen, that truly perfect Irish type. Black hair, cream and roses skin, and deep violet eyes heavily lashed. She was more like the eldest sister than the mother of her children.

"Una, the daughter, was very pretty, with a wistful little face, a frail child wearing a Greenaway frock of black velvet half-way down her legs, little white socks and dainty shoes. Then the sturdy Harold, and Donald, so beautiful that he took your breath away, with peat-stream eyes and gold curls lying in flat ringlets against his head. Finally the irrepressible Bernard. Perfectly straight hair and cool grey eyes, exactly as he is now, beret and all, only the beret was a scarlet one. All four wore scarlet berets, and the boys' knickers of black facecloth, with little buttons on the outside seam, and short covert coats, seemed to us the height of elegance.

"We climbed trees and swung down the outside branches like monkeys. We played hide-and-seek all over the roof. We climbed out of upstairs windows and in at others by linking hands. Many times I quailed at the tasks set by Bernard.

" 'Who's afraid?' he shouted once to a line of children before him. 'I'm not', said a newcomer, stepping forward. 'Liar!' shouted Bernard. He tied our hands together, made us climb up a ladder, step on to the roof, walk round it and come down again. I remember fighting against this until the string ate into my skin, but in the end I went under his escort. To my astonishment I found myself back on the grass unhurt. Coolly he whipped out his pocket-knife and freed my wrists. There was trouble after this. Parents on both sides were displeased.

"The last time I saw him was at a Bishop's Court Christmas party. He was standing half-way upstairs with that slight scowl that we see even now in his photographs. He looked the picture of elegance with his white silk shirt, black velvet pants and long, slim, black-stockinged legs."

The scowl evidently was meant seriously. Bernard had just been ordered to bed by his mother for misbehaviour.

It was upon his father that all the boy's pent-up affection flowed from even his earliest days in Tasmania. Here was the essence of patriarchal kindness and justice. Bernard worshipped him. Secretly he began to imitate him.

One night the Bishop called his sons together and read

sun. *Wilds*, uninhabited and uncultivated regions. *Passed* crossed. *The Thracian mountains*, the mountains of Thrace, a large country bounded by the Danube in the north, the Aegean Sea on the south, the Black Sea on the East, and the river Strymon on the west. *Tribe*, race. *Many.....tribe*, many tribes of barbarians, i.e., Non-Greeks. Among the Greeks, a man must be either a Greek or a Barbarian; and *Greek* and *Barbarian* were correlative terms just as *Christian* and *pagan* are at the present day. *Pæons*, a powerful Thracian people, who in early times were spread over a great part of Macedonia and Thrace. *Dardans*, a people in Upper Moesia, who also occupied part of Illyricum, and extended as far as the frontiers of Macedonia. *Triballi*, a powerful people of Thrace, dwelling along the Danube who were defeated by Alexander the Great in B. C. 335. *The Ister stream*, the river Danube. *Dreary*, barren; waste. *Scythian plains*, *Scythia* was the name given in ancient times to the South Eastern parts of Europe between the Carpathian mountains and the river Don. *Moors*, are extensive plains covered with heaths. *Fens*, are low lands covered wholly or partially with water, and overgrown with sedges, coarse grasses &c., *Bleak*, cold and dreary. *Turning*, moving. Page 24. *Came to*, reached, arrived at. *The Unshapen Land* is the name given by the ancients to the regions, lying near the poles. In these regions, it often occurs that some parts of land become covered with ice and look like a frozen Sea; while the ice melts away in some places and shows new land. It was for these frequent changes in the land that it was so called.

*Through it*, i.e., through the Unshapen Land. *Few*, almost nobody. *On.....tell*, by a road which is hardly known to any man. *Trodden*, walked over. *Like*, wish. *Those.....speak of it*, the persons who have seen it do not wish to describe it. *Go...dreams*, dream of those places. The meaning is that the place is so dreary and cheerless that persons who have seen it do not like even to mention it, and even when they dream of it in their sleep, they are very glad if they are roused from their sleep. *Edge*, border. *He came.....night*, he reached the country where eternal night prevails. *Feathers*, feathery scales of ice floating about in the air. *The air.....feathers*, scales of ice floated about in the atmosphere. *Hard with ice*, covered with hard ice. *Nodding*, moving their heads in



*Cruel and proud, pitiless and haughty. I have, i.e., I have got. Swear:.....right, and confirm by an oath that what you have said is the truth. Chattered, prated. Scolded, chid. Forced, obliged. Make out, understand.*

*Ugly glare, disagreeable glow. Atlas the Giant, or properly the Titan, was a brother of Prometheus, and, along with the other Titans, made war against Zeus, and, being conquered, was condemned to bear heaven upon his head and hands. According to Homer, he bears the long columns that keep heaven and earth asunder. Later traditions make Atlas a man who was metamorphosed into a mountain. Thus Ovid relates (and his view has been adopted by Kingsley) that Perseus came to Atlas, while on his way to the Gorgon and, at the special request of the Titan, changed him, by means of the Gorgon's head, into a mountain. Apart, asunder. The Hesperides, see note on p. 19.*

P. 27. *Instead.....it, far from seeing anything with it. Fell fast asleep, began to sleep soundly. Turned, changed. Blocks, large pieces. The tide, is the rise and fall of the water in ocean. The fall is called the ebb and the rise, the flow. Till:.....away. till they were carried along the retreating tide to the wide sea. Icebergs, mountains of ice floating about in the ocean. Weeping:.....joy; the melting of the ice on the icebergs is called the weeping of the Gray Sisters. Meet the sunshine, come into regions where the sun shines. Fruitful summer, the summer season when trees bear fruit. Fill... joy, gladden young persons. The tin isles, Great Britain; for it was known to the ancients as a country producing tin. The Iberian shore, according to Dr. Smith. Iberia was the name of the country between the Balck and the Caspian Seas. It would be proper however to understand by this term, the peninsula of Spain and Portugal. Perseus starts on his journey southwards, and goes past the island of the Hyperboreans, the tin isles (i.e. Britain) and the peninsula of Spain and Portugal in order to reach Mount Atlas. Terns, a kind of sea fowls, having long wings. Swept, flew rapidly. Dolphins, a kind of fish. Gambolled up, jumped up. Passed, went beside them. Offered, proposed. Tritons, demi-gods, sons of Poseidon. Blew upon their conchs, sounded their conchs. Conchs, a kind of marine shell. Sankh. Played, gambolled. Galataea, or Amphitrite, the wife of Poseidon and goddess of the sea. She is represented in works of art*

Then there was the evil day when the banks failed. The coach and the gardeners disappeared. For a time the family travelled second-class in the trains, and the Bishop's wife took some pride in the fact that she was "the worst-dressed lady in Hobart". The Bishop was forced to sell some of the family land at M<sup>o</sup>ville.

In 1897 Henry was summoned home to England for the Lambeth Conference, and he took the family with him. They lived with Dean Farrar, and the boys were temporarily placed at King's School, Canterbury. But soon they were back in Tasmania again, and the round of entertainment and work went on at Bishop's Court.

Just at the turn of the century the children were immensely excited to see a contingent of troops setting off from Hobart for the Boer War in South Africa. Soldiering meant nothing in Bernard's life (he was barely twelve), nor was it much mentioned in that religious and peaceful household. But now the uniforms and the guns fired his imagination, and for some months afterwards he would play nothing but military games. It was a phase that flared up and passed, apparently leaving no trace behind.

Then in 1901, when Bernard was thirteen years old, his father was suddenly asked to resign his bishopric and come home to take charge of the Society for the Propagation of the Gospel, in London. Henry Montgomery was entirely reluctant. The family had grown to love Australia. They wanted and expected to spend the remainder of their lives there—Bernard in fact was already entered for St. Peter's school in Adelaide. But the Bishop in the end decided that he must go, and at the end of the year the family arrived back in London.

They took a large house in Bolton Road at Chiswick, close to the point on the river where Oxford and Cambridge Universities rowed in their annual boat race, and they named it Bishopsbourne. Harold, the eldest boy, at once enlisted in the Army as a trooper, set sail for Africa—and never returned. Eventually he became a colonial civil servant and retired to Kenya. Donald and Bernard were sent off as day boys to St. Paul's School in Hammersmith.

## 3

They were hardly prepared for the life of an English public school. They were "colonials". Neither of them had been to a public school before except for a few months. They were strong swimmers and runners. They had grown sunburnt

*Trembling*, shuddering. *Dreary*, desolate. *He was* .....*gone*, he was very eager to go away. *Boldly*, courageously. *Ugly*, unpleasant ; offensive to behold. *Sight*, spectacle. *Heart*, central part. *Cruises*, sails. *Where...* day, where there is no distinction between night and day. *Rustle*, a quick succession of small sounds. *Glitter*, brightness. *Brazen talons*, claws of brass. *Halt*, stop.

*With himself*, in his mind. *Remembered*, recollected. Page 32. *Huge*, enormous. *Hidden*, concealed. *Sank down* near them, descended downwards till he came close to them. *Terrible*, fearful.

*Foul*, filthy. *Heavily*, soundly. *Out spread*, extended. *Tossed*, moved. *To and fro*, backwards and forwards. *Restlessly*, uneasily. *Plumage*, wings; feathers; a Collective Noun. *Rainbow*, a bow formed by the refraction and reflection of the sun's rays in drops of falling rain. *Like the rainbow*, of variegated colours. *Knit*, twisted. *Clenched*, pressed tightly. *Gleamed*, shone. *Had...strike*, could not be cruel enough to hit. *Ah, that*, I wish that. *Had been*, would have been ; Subjunctive Mood, denoting wish.

*Tresses*, locks of hair. *The viper's heads awoke*, the snakes which had been sleeping up to that time awoke. *Peeped up*, saw. *Fangs*, teeth. *Hissed*, made a hissing noise. *Showed*, disclosed ; discovered. *Venomous*, poisonous.

Page 33. *Steadfastly*, steadily. *Herpe*, the name of the sword of Hermes. *Stoutly*, forcibly ; strongly. *He did.....again*, there was no necessity of his repeating the blow. *Turning.....eyes*, looking in another direction. *Sprang*, jumped up. *Faster*, more swiftly. *Rattled*, made a quick sharp noise. *Sank dead*, fell down and died.

*Yelling*, crying. *Looked for*, searched. *Swung round and round*, circled in the air. *Hawk*, a kind of bird of prey. *Beat for*, search. *Snuffed*, inhaled the air. *Hounds*, a species of dogs. *Draw upon*, advance upon. *Struck upon*, found out. *Scent*, smell. *Checked*, stopped. *To make sure*, to become quite certain. *On they rushed*, they flew on. *The wind.....wings*, the air. beaten by their wings, made a loud hoarse noise. *Horse=rough*.

*Sweeping*, flying rapidly. *Flapping*, bearing the air with their wings. *Eagles*, the largest kind of birds. *Like*



*Flitted*.....*desert*, crossed the desert. *Rock-ledges*, stony crags. *Banks of shingle*, ridges of earth covered over with shingle. A *bunk*, is a mound of earth. *Level wastes of sand*, flat deserts covered with sand. *Shell-drifts*, large quantities of shell washed on the shore by the tide. *Shell*, is the hard substance which forms the skeleton of many animals. *Bleaching in the sunshine*, growing white by being exposed to the sun. *Skeletons*, bony structures. *Sea-monsters*, huge marine animals. *Strewn up and down*, scattered here and there. *The old sea-floor*, the land which was formerly covered by the sea. *Asps and adders*, species of snakes. *Breed*, are produced in large numbers.

*He never knew*.....*long*, not knowing the distance he traversed or the time he occupied in doing so. *Feeding on*, eating. *The hills of the Psylli*, the Psylli were a Lybian people the earliest known inhabitants of North Africa. The hills referred to are those which form the edge of the Great Desert (Sahara), in that part of the country which is now called Tripoli. *The dwarfs*.....*cranes*, these were a fabulous people represented as living upon the Niger. *Cranes*, a species of aquatic birds. *Reeds and rushes*, species of long grasses growing in water. Page 37. *Their homes*.....*cranes*, they lived in the eggshells of the cranes. *Went his way to*, continued to go towards. *Way* is the Cognate object of *went*. *Sparkling*, glittering.

*Came*.....*wind*, a strong wind blew. *Swept him back*, forcibly carried him back. *All day long*, throughout the whole day. *Strove*, struggled. *He...it*, he tried hard to go in spite of the unfavorable wind. *Prevail*, overcome. *Could not prevail*, were not able to carry him against the wind. *To float*.....*wind*, to be carried down by the wind. *Save*, except. *Hateful*, abominable.

*Sand storms*, clouds of drifting sand. *Rushed upon him*, blew forcibly against him. *Blood-red*, red as blood, very red. *Pillars*, columns. *Wreaths*, curly streams. *Pillars and wreaths* are in apposition to sand-storms. *Blotting out*, i.e., concealing from view. *Choked*, stifled. *Burning dust*, hot ashes. *Gale*, a strong wind. *The gale fell calm*, a calm prevailed. *Calm* is complement to *fell*. *Spent*, exhausted. *His tongue*.....*mouth*, he felt very thirsty. *Cleave*, here means to adhere closely. *The roof*



inspiring devotion. He had an inflexible determination and he was tremendously confident. I do not want to portray him as a lovable character because he isn't."

Looking through contemporary papers one comes on many references to Bernard as the star young man in schoolboy sport. Thus in *Wisden* for 1906: "When the full team (St. Paul's) were able to play they gave a good account of themselves and showed their ability to play an uphill game . . . Cooper and Montgomery putting on over 100 for last wicket when severe defeat seemed impending".

This was young Bernard's world and he was deadly serious about it. Work at school did not impinge too strongly on him: he passed and that was all. The whole business of lessons appears to have been rather nonchalant, although he did work rather harder in his final year and passed his examinations without difficulty. On his very first day at St. Paul's an interesting and not altogether explained event had taken place. Scholars who eventually intended to go into the Army were given an opportunity of entering a special group known as the Army Class. When the proposition was put to Bernard he unhesitatingly replied, "Army Class". In later life he could not remember why he made the choice. There is the obvious explanation that he had been stirred by the Boer War and the departure of his elder brother in a resplendent uniform. But the idea of soldiering as a career had never really entered his head. There was no family background for it, and certainly no encouragement from his parents; indeed the very reverse. His mother, he knew full well, would certainly not approve. Already she was planning something very different, the Church for instance. Somewhat defiantly he went off home on this first night to tell his parents. He was met with hurt astonishment.

"But why the Army?" they asked him. "Why did you choose that?"

"I want to be a soldier", he answered stubbornly. That was his decision. He was going to stick to it. Arguments were useless. The more his mother demanded explanations the more he was resolved. Grieved and uneasy, the Bishop left the room. If this was the boy's desire then perhaps it was the will of God. Exultantly Bernard went back to school the next day and started work in Army Class "C", which was the lowest category then offering. When he emerged three years later at the age of eighteen his graduation to Sandhurst was more or less automatic. He left St. Paul's as the best-known boy in the school and a prefect of Army Class "A".

a rivulet ; *let* is the Diminutive Suffix. *Sparkled*. shone  
*Wandered out*, flowed.

*Trickled*, fell gently. *For joy*, on account of joy. *For* denotes cause. *Turf*, the uppermost stratum of the earth, which contains roots of grass, herbs &c. *Will... go*, will not allow me to go. *What if there be*, no wonder if there be. *What if...Hellas*, it should not be surprising if I am called upon to perform another glorious deed before I reach home.

*By*, beside. *Oases*, Plural of *Oasis*, a fertile spot in the midst of a desert. *Fountains*, springs. *Before*, in front of. *A mighty mountain wall*, a lofty range of mountains that looked like a wall. *All rose-red..... sun*, which looked as red as a rose on account of the rays of the setting sun.

*Towered*, rose (by means of the sandals). *His ..... again*, he regained his strength. Page 40. *Day.....dawn*, sun began to rise. *Rosy fingered Eos*, Eos was the goddess of the morning. She was believed to rise at the close of every night from the couch of her spouse Tithonus, and to ascend up to heaven from the river Oceanus to announce the coming light of the sun to the gods as well as to mortals. *Blushing*, reddening in the face: *The long..... Egypt*, the extensive fertile country of Egypt. Egypt is too well known to require any particular description. *The shining stream of Nile*, the bright river Nile. The Nile is a river of Egypt, rising in the mountains of Abyssinia and the Lakes Victoria and Albert Nyanza, and flowing into the Bay of Aboukir.

*Walled up to heaven*, protected by walls reaching upto the skies. *Obelisk*, a tall four-sided pillar gradually tapering as it rises. *Pyramid*, an edifice standing on a triangular, square or polygonal, base and terminating in a point at the top. *Giant gods of stone*, here is perhaps an allusion to the Sphinx of Egypt, which was a gigantic statue erected near the pyramids. At present the head of the statue is alone visible the rest being covered over with sand. *Came down*, descended. *Barley, millets*, are food grains. *Flax*, is a plant, out of the fibres of which, are made various kinds of cloth. *Clambering*, climbing. *Gourds*, a kind of many seeded fruit. The plant is a creeper. *Setting to work*, beginning to work. *Water-courses*, channels of water. *Parting*, dividing. *Cunning-*

of no talent for the minor decoration of life, of no mental brilliance, of little patience and—somewhere in the middle of all this—a vague, nameless hunger for a sense of adjustment, for a feeling of well-being and an acknowledgment that he was succeeding in life. He was much too strong minded to lapse into a state of introspective neurosis. Anyway, his life was made too busy for this. But the lack of affection and fulfilment was very strongly in the background of his mind. By the time he came to St. Paul's he was as sharpened and as ready for combat as a pointed flint. He was asking no quarter and giving none. If he had no charm to win friends and seduce people to his will then he would fight for their obedience. Already, as one sees from contemporary photographs, this conflict was strongly marked in his intent young face. At fourteen there are no humorous or easy-going lines in his cheeks; the mouth is tight, the eyes direct, almost snapping, and the set of the thin young face has no schoolboy carelessness in it. He is as tense as a mousetrap.

At St. Paul's, the second stage, you get almost a complete reversal. He competes; he succeeds. Suddenly he breaks out into the clear intoxicating fields where he leads and the others follow. His mother no longer controls his days. This is the very luxury of life. This time he sets the pace. He makes the routine. He plans the game—and the cheers come very pleasantly across the football field. Fortunately it is still a narrow world wherein you have but to excel in sports to claim the attention—and the obedience—of the others. And young Bernard is very good at sports. St. Paul's is a very happy time indeed. He has found his place in the world. If people will only continue to understand this—to understand that if he is given control then he will be quite happy and everything will be done with the utmost efficiency. It is all quite simple: they—the others—need a captain and he is the man for the job.

But now we have him entering manhood at Sandhurst, and this third stage is much more complicated. Things are not nearly so simple. Sport still plays a strong part, but it is not all. There are many other considerations—such as one's personal manner, one's ability to learn, one's relationships with the officers. There are such factors as money, the family background and the social pleasures of life. The family code he threw off on leaving Tasmania for the freedom of sport at St. Paul's is now replaced by the larger code of adult social behaviour. At nineteen Cadet Montgomery enters into the third main struggle of his life.

cifically the natives of *Ethiopia*, (meaning, "blackness") a district of Arabia Felix including the land of Midian. The student should distinguish it from the large country of Africa on the western shore of the Red Sea, now called Abyssinia, but which was anciently called "*Æthiopia*."

*Flew on*, continued his journey through the air. *Argos* has already been described (see notes on p. 3). *Lacedæmon*, or Sparta, was the chief city of the Peloponnesus. Page 42. *The fair vale of Tempe*, the pleasant valley of Tempe. *Tempe* is a beautiful and romantic valley in the north of Thessaly between Mounts Olympus and Ossa. "Of" has here an appositional force; as in "*The city of Calcutta*," (i.e., the city named Calcutta). *Lowlands*, plains. *Drowned by the floods*, overflowed; inundated. *Highlands*, the hilly parts of the country. *Blasted*, blighted; injured. *Heaved*, rose and fell. *Bubbling*, boiling. *Cauldron*, a large kettle. *But.....cauldron*, but the plains were inundated, the hilly regions blighted by fire, and the hills rose and fell like a boiling kettle. *Before*, through. *Wrath*, anger. *King Poseidon.....earth*, Poseidon was in Greek Mythology the God of water. As the sea surrounds or holds the earth, he himself is described as the God who holds the earth and who has the power to shake it. As the ruler of the sea, he is also described as gathering clouds and calling forth storms.

*Inland*, to some distance from the sea-coast; in the interior of the country. *At.....day*, at sunrise. *Edge*, brink; border. *Barbarians*, people who are not Greeks. *A maiden of flesh and blood*, a living maiden. *Streaming*, waving. *Shrank*, drew back; recoiled. *Shivered*, trembled. *Spray*, drops of water. *Sprinkled.....spray*, threw showers of cold salt drops of water on her. *How she shrank.....salt spray*, is a Noun Clause, Object of "see." *Spread*, extended. *Drooped*, hung down. *Now and then*, sometimes, occasionally. *Wailed*, wept. *The cap...head*, he was invisible on account of the cap of darkness which he wore on his head.

P. 43. *Indignation*, anger. *Full of pity and indignation*, moved by pity for her sufferings and anger with her persecutors. *Looked upon*, attentively saw. *Hyacinth*, an evergreen shrub.

P. 44. *I have.....a maiden*, this is the most beautiful maiden I have ever seen. *No, not in all &c.*, the repeti-

way nonchalantly through the course. Finally one incident brought things to a crisis. An attack was made on a certain cadet, and he was surprised at the moment of undressing. Under Montgomery's directions the youth was pinned from the front with a bayonet while Montgomery set fire to his shirt-tails behind. The victim was badly burnt and sent to hospital. The conspirators were appalled. Although the injured cadet never revealed the names of his attackers the incident sobered them down considerably, Montgomery most of all.

He began to see that he had been wasting his time. If he was to proceed with his expected promotion to the rank of colour sergeant he had better get down to work. But already it was too late; he had been marked down as unsatisfactory. When the promotion lists went up he was passed over. It was a slight that no one at Sandhurst could altogether ignore. Montgomery, full of angry pride, found that he had been reduced to the rank of cadet, and when this occurred he tore the corporal's stripe off his arm and defiantly framed it over his mantelpiece.

Then he began to work. There was a good deal in his temperament and his circumstances to help him to this simple decision. He was far from wealthy. The Bishop spared him two golden pounds a month to put in his sovereign case—not nearly enough to enable him to join the other cadets in their occasional jaunts to London. Nor enough for the cadet drinking parties. Barely enough for tobacco. Certainly not enough to entertain girls to dinners and dances. But none of this was of much importance. He drank very little, and smoked still less. And the matter of entertaining young women was wholly outside his interest. All this was not merely the result of a severely religious upbringing. He was neither prudish nor assertive about his abstemiousness; others could do what they liked. He had no wish to convert them. There was simply a strain of innate asceticism in the boy. It was no effort at all for him to reject the normal minor vices and pleasures of life; he was simply not interested. While all around him his companions were toiling awkwardly through their first calf-love affairs he was not even embarrassed by the presence or the idea of women. He knew them, he had grown up with them, and they were not interesting. The thought of kissing a girl was not so much ridiculous as a waste of time. He began to perceive the existence of a world in which he had no part, and he neither hungered for it nor consciously resisted it. There was a barrier separating him from other people and

with Perseus among the stars. *As long...mine*, as long as I could be called a living being. *Hapless*, unlucky; unfortunate. *Hap*=chance. *For.....food*, to be devoured by the sea-monster. *To atone for*, to expiate. *Boasted of me*, said boastfully about me. *Earthquake*, a shaking of the earth, due to subterranean causes. *Bred*, born. *Slime*, mud. *A monster.....slime*, a huge animal sprung from the mud. *Devours*, (*L. De* down and *voro*, I eat) eats up. *Guiltless*, innocent. *He who never &c.*, fig. Anadiplosis. *Harmed*, injured. *But I gave it life*, which I did not restore to life. *But* (=that not) a negative Relative. *It* is redundant. P. 46. *Blood*, death. *Nothing.....blood*, my death alone.

*Faced*, braved; opposed. *For your sake*, in order to save you. *How.....sea*, how much more ready I should be to face a beast of the sea. *Kindled*, aroused. *New hope.....breast*, she got a new hope of her life. *Round her*; clasping her. *Glittering*, gleaming. *So proud.....sword*, he looked so proud and fair as he stood there, clasping her with one hand and holding the gleaming sword in the other.

*Why will you die*, why do you wish to die. *Is there.....already*, is not the world, as it is, full enough of death and misery. *Noble*, glorious. *A whole people*, a whole nation. *Go.....way*, proceed on your journey. *Way* is the Cognate object of "*Go*." *Lords of Olympus*, the Gods. *Whom I serve*, who are my masters. *Are...of*, befriend. *Help.....deeds*, assist them in the performance of noble actions. *Led*, guided. *Not without them*, not without their wish and aid.

Page 47. *Believe his words*, rely upon what he said. *Pointed to*, indicated. *With the sunrise*, at the dawn of day. *With* denotes accompaniment. *Promised*, foretold. *Endure*, bear. *Piecemeal*, in pieces. *Is it not.....look on*, it is horrible enough to be torn to pieces, without the consideration of seeing you at the time. *Thrust*, push. *Ere*, before; an Adjective in form, (being the Comparative Degree of the Obsolete Anglo Saxon Adjective *Ær*, from "*Ær*, ere, erst;"; here used as a Conjunction. It is also used as a Preposition. *Come back with me*, accompany me. *Fruitful*, fertile. *Seal it with a kiss*, confirm your promise by giving me a kiss.

*Crouched*, lay close to the ground. *Waiting for*, await-

stand quite apart in the family history. Liberated from the streets of London the children ran wild. They tramped off sometimes for twenty miles over the mountains and along the coast. They called on the cottagers and ate teas of Irish pancakes and soda bread and butter. In the evenings hectic games raged through the old house. Shouting and screaming, the children raced round the dark passageways. There were noisy practical jokes, the girls against the boys. Sometimes they played charades, and often when they were tired Mrs. Montgomery would read to them from books of ghost stories and improving novels. She had a very beautiful reading voice. A squash court was built, and the local people remember especially the piercing yells when Bernard was playing.

All this was a heritage from a similar set of rompings and festivities which the children were allowed every Saturday in Tasmania, and now, just for a moment each year, they escaped from the drab life of London into the same exuberance and freedom.

Bernard planned endless expeditions. With his sister Una and a cousin aboard, it was his practice to take an open sailing boat straight out of Lough Foyle and into the Atlantic. When the boatmen refused their boats for these unnecessarily dangerous trips Bernard took the boats just the same. Often they were caught in squalls and Bernard would shout to his sister to loosen her skirt and her shoes and be prepared to jump for it. Once the boat was entirely out of control. As the swell rushed them past the submerged rocks and they were on the point of capsizing, a coastguard caught sight of them. Rushing along the cliff-tops he hurled curses and directions down upon the children, and somehow they managed to beach the boat and scramble ashore to face a six-mile walk in their wet clothes. Of such escapades they said nothing when they got home. It was part of the freedom of their holiday. Next day Bernard would set out again to catch conger eels in the Atlantic.

Sunday was the only brake on their excitements. In the morning all members of the household would troop down to the garden to select their Sabbath buttonholes—a tradition handed down from Grandfather Robert Montgomery. Morning and evening church services followed. The Sunday dinner invariably included six puddings. In the afternoons the Bishop read to the children in his study and answered their questions.

As the years went by the atmosphere of innocence and hilarity persisted in Moville. Even when the children and

*aloud*, feared to express their opinion openly. *Phineus*, was a brother of king Cepheus and uncle to Andromeda, who had been betrothed to his son. *Chafing*, raging, storming. *Robbed*, deprived. *Whelps*, cubs. *Like..... whelps*, as a bear chafes when somebody robs her of her cubs.

*Marry*, give as a wife. Page 50. *Stranger*, foreigner; outsider. *Of whom.....name*, who is known to nobody even by name. *Betrothed*, affianced; promised in marriage. *Right*, title. *Claim*, demand. *Now she.....claim her*, now that she is out of danger, is he not entitled to demand her.

*Is in want of*, requires. *Let.....himself*, he ought to save a maiden from danger for himself. *Helpless*, feeble; weak. *He seems.....bridegroom*, it appears that he is too weak to possess a wife. *Left*, abandoned. *Dead.....him*, she is lost to him. *Ungrateful*, unthankful. *Requite*, reward; recompense. *It will.....you*, you will be sorry for the consequences. *Men at arms*, warriors.

*Unveiled*, uncovered. *Delivered*, saved. *Stiffened*, became rigid. *As he stood*, in the position in which he was standing at the time. *Had drawn.....again*, had again covered the head with the goatskin. *Lever*, a bar of iron or other hard substance to raise weights. *Roll them out*, carry them out of the house.

*Wedding feast*, an entertainment given at the time of marriage. *Lasted*, continued. *So they.....Andromeda*, so a grand marriage feast was held. It continued for full seven days; and Perseus and Andromeda were the happiest of all mortals.

Page 51. *You have played the man*, you have acted manfully. *See*, is the Imperative mood, used absolutely. *Known now*, it must be evident to you now. *Just*, impartial. *Helps himself*, zealously tries to gain his object. *Give me here*, return to me. *Their owners*, those whose property they are. *Need*, stand in need of; require. *Lay it up*, place it. *Wear.....ever*, place it on my shield and keep it with me for ever. *Foes*, enemies. *As for*, regarding. *Appeased*, pacified. *Altars*, places where sacrifices are offered.

*Vanished away*, passed away. *Altogether*, quite; totally. *It was.....dream*, it was not a mere dream; i.e.,





substance, obtained by boiling down tar. *Dowry*, marriage-gift. *Of* denotes material. *Jewels*, precious stones. *Rich shawls*, costly and splendid shawls. *Spices*, aromatic vegetables used in sauces and cookery. *The East*, as employed by European writers, is a vague Geographical term. Sometimes it is applied even to Greece and Turkey; sometimes it extends to Japan and the Philippine Islands in the Pacific. *Great was.....away*, the people expressed their grief loudly when the ship left the shore. *Remembrance*, memory; recollection. *The remembrance.....behind*, his brave deed lived in the memory of the Æthiops for a long time after he had left the country. *Till.....past*, after a period of more than a thousand year.

*Rowed*, sailed. *Sea of Crete*, that part of the Mediterranean which lies around the island of Crete. *His ancient home*, the place where he used to dwell in former times. *Beach*, shore. *As of old*, as he formerly used to do. *Embraced his mother*, clasped his mother in his arms.

P. 54. *Foster-father*, one who takes the place of a father in bringing up and educating a child. *Seven years and more*, more than seven years.

*At the table head*, the head of the table is a position of honour. *Either side*, both sides. *According to his rank*, in respect of his position. *Harpers*, musicians. *Harped*, played upon the harps. *Revellers*, merry-makers. *Shouted*, vociferated; made meaningless speeches. *Rang*, tinkled; sounded. *Merrily*, gaily. *Passed from hand to hand*, went round; circulated.

*Threshold*, entrance. *Knew*, recognised. *He was.....journey*, his long journey had changed his appearance. *He had.....hero*, when he had gone out, he was a boy; but now he was quite a hero. *He stood.....pride*, while standing he looked as magnificent as a wild bull. *Hardened*, made callous. *Hardened.....more*, hated him more fiercely. *Scornfully*, haughtily. *Have.....fulfil*, do you now find it hard to fulfil your promise. *Whom.....help*, who are guided and protected by the Gods. *Fulfil their promises*, perform what they engage to do. P. 55. *Despise*, look down upon; disparage. *Reap. ....sown*, suffer the consequences of their evil actions.

*Drew back*, withdrew. *Held aloft*, raised up. *Pale grew*, turned pale. *Dreadful*, horrible. *Tried.....seats*, attempted to rise from the places where they were sitting.

## CHAPTER THREE

### PROBYN'S HORSE

#### I

LIFE in the Regular Army in Edwardian times was a period piece of a very special *genre*. Sadly, the bloom and the bouquet has blown away. Old soldiers, looking back across the upheaval of two cataclysmic wars, are apt to fumble in their recollections and all that is left are a few remembered names, a mass of English colour, a pageant, a brassy compound somewhere in India, a sense of spaciousness and time. It seems now that the whole period is lighted with a curious feeling of warmth, a sense of theatre, as though one were looking at it across a row of footlights.

There was no war to speak of. Indeed nearly a hundred years had gone by since Waterloo, and none of the subsequent nineteenth-century engagements—the Mutiny, the Crimea, the Sudan and the Boer War—had engulfed the nation or fully engaged the Army. The Army was free to develop in its own peculiar way. Nothing like the American Civil War had occurred to disturb its traditions or its ceremonial. No citizen army had been grafted on to the regular service. No unorthodox amateur had come up through the ranks. The institution was based not so much on the terrible experience of the battlefield as upon the accepted practices of peace or rather of keeping the peace. In the nature of things the emphasis was rather less on fighting and rather more on soldiering.

And yet the spirit was there. The discipline was excellent. The life was healthy and hardy. The drill most professional, the uniforms very decorative. And there was all the Empire to play with, especially India. The one thing really lacking, perhaps, was enthusiasm. For some time it had been the practice for families to send younger and less inspiring sons into the Army. Moreover, one really needed at least a small private income to maintain an officer's status with a proper dignity, and so the Army was a rich man's, a gentleman's, profession. This naturally narrowed down considerably the number of first-class men available for high command. It also meant a dearth of new ideas. One entered the Army because it was an amusing life, a gentleman's life. And there was a pleasing dash

P. 57. *Unknown*, as a stranger; unrecognised. *Curry away*, obtain. *My grandfather.....me*, my grandfather will think kindly of me; my grandfather will begin to love me.

*Threw off*, put off. *Helmet*, a piece of armour, used as a defence for the head. *Cuirass*, a piece of defensive armour covering the body from the neck to the girdle. *Pride*, glory. *They wondered yet more*, they were surprised all the more. *The best man*, the most skilful competitor. *Javelin*, a kind of spear. *Won four crowns*, distinguished himself in four different games. At the games of the Greeks, a crown of bay or laurel leaves was the reward of the successful competitor. *There.....won*, I have to defeat my competitors in one game more. *Lay... grandfather*, present all of them to my grandfather. *Royal staff*, sceptre. Though Acrisius had fled before Proetus, he still bore this mark of royalty. *Kin*, relative; kinsman. *His heart.....kin*, he longed to meet his grand-father. *Kingly*, royal; dignified. *Need.....of*, need not blush at. *Be* is in the Infinitive mood, the sign of the Infinitive being left out after *need*, which, like *dare*, does not require an s in the third person Singular.

*Quoits*, iron or wooden discs, used to be thrown in games of skill. *Hurled*, threw. *Fathom*, a measure of length containing six feet. *Beyond all the rest*, farther than those thrown by all the other competitors. P. 58. *The people shouted.....this land*, turned into the Indirect narration, this sentence would stand:—the people shouted to him to throw further yet, saying that there never had been such a hurler in that land. *There.....hurler*, no one ever threw the quoits so far.

*Put out*, exerted. *Put out.....strength*, employed all his strength. *Gust*, a violent blast of the wind. *Came*, blew. *Carried the quoit aside*, turned off the quoit. *Fell on*, struck. *Swooned away*, fainted. *His life was slow and feeble*, he was a weak old man. *Rent*, tore. *Rent his clothes*, in sorrow. *Cast dust upon his head*, covered his head with dust.

*Ordained*, decreed. *Must be*, shall happen. *Far-famed*, celebrated.

*Prophecy*, oracle. *Declared*, said. *The prophecy had declared*, it had been prophesied. *Made.....Acrisius*,

Montgomery has since expressed what he, on his side, thought of the Army. "The average young officer went to India to drink gin, play polo and have a good time. You were not supposed to show keenness in soldiering. A great number of these officers—and the older men at the top—were useless, quite useless. They were divided into two groups: those who had brains and those who had not. The majority with no brains got, subsequently (after the chaotic experience of the war had intervened) to the rank of major or lieutenant-colonel, seldom more. The minority with brains were divided into two classes: those who wanted to understand war and those who did not. Those who did not bluffed their way up to the rank of brigadier and sometimes major-general before they were found out. The others with brains and enthusiasm shot up to the top at once when war broke out. In 1939 there were not half a dozen good generals in the British Army."

It was just the sort of downright statement which irritated and antagonized the Army, especially the older regular officers. Montgomery was already beginning to deliver such opinions when, as a very junior lieutenant, he was posted to the Royal Warwickshire Regiment in 1908.

## 2

Almost at once he was ordered overseas to join the first battalion of his regiment on the north-west frontier of India at Peshawar. No one especially remarked his arrival; it was the custom to ignore young subalterns for the first few months after their arrival. Montgomery quietly set himself up in his billet. He had his kit, his tropical clothes, his red tunic and his swords. He had his pay of five shillings and threepence a day, or about nine pounds a month. His mess bill alone would amount to eleven or twelve pounds a month, but his mother had warned him that he would have to get along as best he could on his pay; over and above this the family could spare him just a hundred pounds a year. This did not worry him unduly except that, just at this moment, he wanted a horse. It was now Christmas 1908 and the Peshawar Vale Hunt Point to Point was due to be run in January. Montgomery was determined to enter.

Just why, as an indifferent horseman, he should want to do this is not entirely clear. Possibly he wanted to show that he was capable of something. More probably he simply looked on the event as one more field of sport to conquer. In any case

## STORY II.

## The Argonauts.

*Note.*—A Summary of this story will be found at the end of these notes.

*The Argonauts*, (the sailors of the Argo) were the heroes, who sailed to Colchis for the purpose of fetching the Golden Fleece about 1263 B. C. The cause of this expedition was this. At Iolcos in Thessaly reigned Pelias who had deprived his half-brother Æson, of the sovereignty. In order to get rid of Jason the son of Æson, Pelias persuaded Jason to fetch the Golden Fleece, which was suspended from an oak tree in the grove of Ares in Colchis, and was guarded day and night by a dragon. Jason willingly agreed and commanded Argus, the son of Phrixus to build a ship with fifty oars; which was called the *Argo*, after the name of the builder. Jason was accompanied by all the great heroes of the age and their number is usually said to have been 50.

PART I.—HOW THE CENTAUR TRAINED THE  
HEROES ON PELION.

Page 60. *Tale*, story; noun formed from *tell*. *I have a tale*, I am going to tell. *Sailed away*, went by sea. *To win*, to acquire. *Renown*, fame; glory. *Adventure*, enterprise; a hazardous undertaking. *The Golden Fleece*, the fleece or wool of the Golden Ram. See page 62 of the Text. *Now I have.....Fleece*, I am now going to describe the history of the Argonauts who went to a distant country, to acquire eternal fame by undertaking to bring the Golden Fleece. *Whither*, to what place.

*Clearly*, distinctly. *Happened*, occurred. *Dim*, indistinct; hazy. *Why they went*, the object of their going. *It was*, the object of their journey was. *It may be so*, this may be correct. *May* denotes possibility. *The noblest deeds*, the most glorious actions. *For gold*, for the sake of money. *The Lord*, Jesus Christ, the saviour of mankind, according to Christians. *Came down*, was born. *Apostles*, the 12 disciples of Christ sent forth to preach the Gospel. *Preach*, proclaim. *The good news*, the Gospel (=A.S. *God*, good and *spell*, history, tidings) which declares that sinners will be saved if they believe in Jesus. *Looked for*, expected. *Reward*, recompense. *The Spartans..... money*, the Spartans did not hope to gain money. P. 61.

down to the last indent in triplicate for a tent peg that escaped his simple and enthusiastic boy scoutery. He was thorough. He was keen. He was hardworking. And he was honest. The authorities could hardly help noticing him.

As for his life in the mess he progressed unexpectedly well. It was, after all, not much more than an extension of the crowded family board in his own home and the communal atmosphere in which he had grown up at St. Paul's and Sandhurst. If he had no especial friends he had a certain impersonal gregariousness, and he was young enough to adjust himself. He drank a glass of port after dinner. He smoked occasionally. Once again his prowess at hockey and cricket gave him an *entrée*. And if occasionally he was isolated from the others by his religious fervour, his genuine simplicity of habit and his undercurrent ambition, he had at least become an accepted member of the regiment.

The Warwicks was not a fashionable regiment. The great families of England sent their sons to regiments like the Guards, the Hussars or the Rifle Brigade. Nor did the Warwicks offer much opportunity for quick promotion. The turn-over in older officers was slow and the young lieutenant had to wait years for a captaincy. Moreover, it so happened that the north-west frontier was quiet at this time; a spell of fighting against the tribesmen had just come to an end and there was no opportunity for gaining distinction in the field. Steadily and enthusiastically Second-Lieutenant Montgomery plugged away with his little section in a world of dust and mule carts, of boiling heat and leave in the hill stations, of regimental sports and Homeric arguments in the mess. Little by little the family background faded away. The important thing was to pass the Transport Course and qualify at musketry. By now he had grown to his full physical stature, and although he looked a good deal more robust than he did later in life he was no heavy-weight. He was five feet eight inches in height, under eleven stone in weight, his face was thin and pointed and there was already an air of tautness, a curiously quick and bird-like quality in the way he held himself. In the end the word for him, one supposes, was wiry. It was not an intellectual or especially sensitive or good-looking face, but it was interesting if only for the fact that it expressed a certain wariness, and it gave the impression that there was something held back. For a man who had devoted a great part of his life to British sports he was spectacularly lacking in heartiness. In the early regimental photographs he sits among the jutting jaws and the massively folded arms like an alert fox-terrier

own sphere of activity. *Dragons*, fabulous monsters; hence, powerful and strong obstacles. *Ere it be ours*, before we can obtain it. *Each of us.....be ours*, all of us have to seek heaven and pass over the stormy sea of life, and encounter and overcome a thousand temptations before we can reach it. The whole is a sustained metaphor; heaven is compared to the Golden Fleece; our earthly life to a stormy sea; and the temptations that a pious soul has to encounter, to a dragon like the one which guarded the Golden Fleece of the Argonauts.

*Nor cure*, nor am I anxious about the fact. *Hellens*, the old and original name of the Greeks. *Colchis*, the modern Circassia, is a mountainous district on the eastern coast of the Black sea. *Nailed*, fastened by a nail. *Beech-tree*, a kind of tree. *In the war God's wood*, in a grove dedicated to the War-God Ares. *The Euxine Sea*, the Black Sea. *The Cloud-Nymph*, i.e. Nephele. She is so called because Nephele was changed into a cloud. *Athamas*, king of Orchomenus in Bœotia, who at the command of Hera, married Nephele, by whom he became the father of Phrixus and Helle. But he was secretly in love with the mortal Ino, the daughter of Cadmus, by whom he begot Learchus and Melicertes. *The Minyai* were an ancient Greek tribe dwelling in Thessaly. *Famine*, scarcity of food. *Came upon*, visited. *When.....land*, when the country was visited by a famine. There is another version of this story. The children of Nephele were to succeed their father by right of birth. Ino therefore conceived an immortal hatred against her and she caused the city of Thebes to be visited by a pestilence by poisoning all the grain which had been sown in the earth. Upon this the Oracle was consulted, and as it had been bribed by Ino the answer was that Nephele's sons should be immolated to the gods. *Step-mother*, a mother by marriage only. *Sacrificed*, offered. *Altar*, the place where sacrifices are offered. *To turn away*, to avert. P. 63. *Then madness.....Athamas*, then the foolish king Athamas became insane. *Fury*, anger. *Dolphin*, a kind of fish of various colours. *Little one*, offspring. *Clasped*, held close.

*Drove out*, expelled. *Roamed*, wandered. *In his misery*, in a wretched condition. *Delphi*, a small town in Phocis, but one of the most celebrated in Greece on account of the oracle of Apollo. Its prophecies were delivered in Hexametrical verses and exercised a great influence in



watched. As for his seniors, now they reported on him most favourably. He was a little headstrong and argumentative perhaps, a little too apt to take decisions into his own hands, but he did the job thoroughly. He was keen. It was an agreeable thing for a hot and busy captain to hand over the more dreary of his duties to the young lieutenant and know they would be well done. Each one of these crumbs of authority Montgomery gathered up eagerly and cherished. He applied for promotion to captain and began to study in earnest. By mid 1911 he was passing his qualifying subjects with regularity and apparent ease.

Meanwhile the sports went on. He was officer in charge of games. He became secretary of the sailing committee of the yacht club and sailed his own boat, the *Antelope*. *The Times* of India for November 21st, 1910, speaks of his winning a handicap race by unorthodox methods vaguely reminiscent of his boyhood jaunts in the Atlantic in search of conger eels. Furthermore—and this was distinctly erratic for an officer in India in 1910—he purchased a second-hand motor-cycle. In that era of horses and regimental decorum his senior officers were pained to see him, covered in grime and with an air of desperate seriousness, careering through the native quarters of Bombay.

There was also the incident of the *Gneisenau*, which came into Bombay with the German Crown Prince on board. Montgomery formed part of the guard of honour, and then, as games officer, hurried off to field his football team in a friendly match against the Germans. Etiquette counted for a good deal in 1911. Higher instructions were that the Germans should be treated with hospitality and decorum. Since the Warwicks' football team was a notable combination Montgomery was instructed to field only a second-class side. It was apparent, however, as the British and German staffs sat watching the game, that something had gone painfully wrong. The Warwicks won forty goals to nil. Montgomery was summoned to report to his colonel. He confessed that against orders he had fielded all his best players, and he added "I was not taking any risks with Germans".

In November 1911 his three years of service was up, and he sailed in the *Plassy* for six months' leave in England.

Nothing very much had happened at Chiswick. The family life still revolved steadily around Mrs. Montgomery. The Bishop was gently rising to the height of his influence in the Church. One other child, Desmond, had died as a schoolboy at St. Paul's, but the rest of the children were growing up as

proximity or nearness. *Bœotia*, a district of ancient Greece. *Step-brother*, a brother only by marriage, not descended from the same parents on both sides. *Pelias*, son of Poseidon and Tyro. Poseidon once visited Tyro in the form of the river god Enipeus with whom she was in love, and she became by him the mother of Pelias and Neleus. To conceal her shame, their mother exposed the two boys but their life was preserved by shepherds. They subsequently learnt their parentage and after the death of Cretheus king of Iolcos, who had married their mother they seized the throne of Iolcos to the exclusion of Aeson the son of Cretheus and Tyro. After Jason's return from the Argonautic expedition Pelias was cut to pieces and boiled by his own daughters at the instigation of Medea who had promised to restore him to youth by her incantations as soon as his limbs were put into a caldron of boiling water. *Dark*, suspicious; mysterious. *Cast out*, exposed. *Mare*, the female of the horse. *Came by*, came near him. *All blackened*, completely, blackened. *Bruised* injured; contused. *Fierce*, ferocious. *Lawless*, uncontrolled. *Took... himself*, made himself king.

*Leading*, taking. *Vineyards*, pieces of ground devoted to the cultivation of the vine. *Olive*, a kind of fruit bearing tree. *Groves*, collections of trees. *Torrent*, a strong, swift stream. *Anauros*, a river of Thessaly flowing into the Pagasæan gulf. *Pelion*, a lofty range of mountains in Thessaly situated between lake Bœbeis and the Pagasæan gulf. Near the summit was the cave of the Centaur Cheiron whose residence was probably placed here on account of the number of the medicinal plants which grew upon the mountain. *Whose brows... snow*, whose top is covered with snow.

*Went up and up*, climbed up. P. 66. *Marsh*, swampy ground. *Crags*, pieces of rock jutting out from the mountain. *Down*, a tract of barren land. *Tired*, wearied; exhausted. *Footsore*, having painful feet from much walking. *To bear*, to carry. *Came to*, reached. *The mouth*, entrance. *Foot*, base.

*Dripping*, falling in drops. *Cracking*, bursting. *Above*, .....sun wreaths of snow were hanging above the cliff, from which water was dropping as they were melted by the heat of the sun. *Ranged in order*, properly arranged. *Each.....itself*, each variety in a separate bed. *Sort*,

was entrenched. In 1914 Montgomery was not yet 27. All his life he had been surrounded by apparently unshakable institutions; the supremacy of the British Empire, the Church, the Army, the Family, everything moved inexorably forward in its predestined groove. Life, to be sure, could be interrupted in its normal course by sickness, by accident, by debauchery or sudden poverty, but for the rest it was a sane and well-ordered world. No young officer in the Army saw any need to set the Thames on fire. Politics were a thing apart, a slightly unsavoury business best left alone. Because they had no information and no particular interest Montgomery and his friends held no decided views as a rule on the Irish question, Trades Unions, Colonial Government or Britain's foreign policy. They read no controversial books. A dozen heated quarrels about Impressionism in art, or Marxism in the modern state, or the balance of power in Europe might rage over their heads without their ever being aware that such matters existed. The average middle-class boy of the governing class had his ideas of the world in general handed out to him pat and ready made; and usually the Army or the Bank or some other institution swept him along with the tide, evoked and engaged his interest in the existing order of things, before he could branch out and think for himself. If you were in the Army you stuck to that and kept your nose out of other people's business. If you were an officer you were almost automatically Conservative, Church of England and a horseman—or at least interested in cricket. It was "not done" to write, to paint, to engage in business or become exercised over political theory.

Montgomery's struggle had been purely personal. He had rebelled in varying degrees against his family, his schools and the Army, not to establish any abstract idea, nor to alter the order of things, but as an individualist who simply disliked any authority except his own. Latterly he had begun to engraft on to this somewhat anarchistic strain an enthusiasm for soldiering. With this enthusiasm came the obvious desire for experimentation and reform; but it was experiment and reform within the existing rules. He would have been shocked at the notion of abolishing the authority of parents. He would have regarded anyone who called the Army a ruthless imperialistic machine as a dangerous mutineer.

His struggle with the family was now over. He had successfully made his way in the Army. It was a passive and balanced moment in his life, a lacuna in the upward climb. The long scale of promotions stretched inevitably ahead. He was agitated by no love affairs or private worries of any con-

*Siege*, the setting of an army around or before a fortified place for the purpose of compelling the garrison to surrender. *Noble*, glorious. *Plenty*, abundance. *Equal justice*, impartial administration of the law. *Wide eyed*, with his eyes wide open. *Errand*, mission. *Forgot*..... song, he was so allured by the song that he forgot why he was sent there.

*Was silent*, finished his song. Page 68. *Befallen*, happened. *Afar*, at a great distance. *Left the town*, started from the town. *Æson the Æolid*, Æson of the family of Æolus. *Æolus*, was the son of Hellen and the nymph Orseis. He was the ruler of Thessaly and the founder of the Æolic branch of the Greek nation. *Try*, test. *Dare venture*, was bold enough to run the risk. *Entreat*, beseech. *By Father Zeus*, 'by' denotes adjuration. *Let*..... guest, keep the boy with you. *Till better times*, till more favourable times. *Train*, educate. *That* denotes purpose. *Avenge his father's house*, avenge the injury done to his ancestor. *Drew*.....him, called the boy near him. *Laid*.....locks, patted him on the head. *Locks*, tresses. *Are you afraid of*, do you fear. *Will you be*, do you wish to be.

*Sundown*, sunset. *Till sundown*, till sunset. *Worthy to rule*, capable of ruling. *Gallant*, brave.

*Turned to*, addressed. *Go back in peace*, return without any anxiety. Page 69. *Bend before the storm*, bear your misfortune meekly; bow to the will of God. The metaphor is taken from the bending of saplings when a storm blows. *Prudent*, (L. *Pro* forward and *video* I see), wise. *Cross*, go beyond. *A glory*, an object of pride. *The house*, the family or dynasty. *Fancy*, imagination; mind. *So full*.....of, so absorbed was he in the thought of it. *To play*, an instrument is to perform music upon it. *Sank*, went down. *Outside*, at the entrance to the cave. *Æneas*, the son of Anchises and Aphrodite, was born on mount Ida. According to Homer, he was educated, not by Cheiron, but Alcathous, the husband of his sister, at Dardanus. *Heracles*, or Hercules, the most celebrated of all the heroes of antiquity. His exploits were celebrated not only in all the countries round the Mediterranean, but even in the most distant parts of the ancient world. For a further account of his life, see notes on p. 173. *Peleus*, king of the Myrmidons in Thessaly, and father of Achilles.

year would go by before anyone had any time again. Very few of that generation would be able to climb back into the prosperous valleys of the Edwardian days. But an afterglow and a delusion persisted. "At least," Montgomery said to himself as he packed his tennis clothes, "the thing will be over in three weeks."

some special gift by Athene and Apollo. *Worthy*, estimable; excellent. *Each is.....place*, each excels in his own line. *An honor beyond all honors*, the most distinguished position.

*Split it*, broke it into pieces. *Blazing*, shining; bright. *Skinned*, removed the skin from. *Quartered them*, cut them. *Set*, placed. *To roast*, to be fried. *Venison*, (*Venezn*) the flesh of deer. *Was cooking*, was being roasted. This is an example of a Verb Active in form but Passive in sense. *The snow torrent*, stream formed by the melting of snow. *Sweat*, perspiration.

*Ate till.....more*, ate till they had no appetite. *Tasted*, eaten. *The dawn*, the morning. *Remnants*, what food was left. *Put away*, kept aside. *In turn*, one after the other. *With.....heart*, heartily. *A plot of grass*, a small extent of ground covered with grass. *Boxed*, played at boxing. *Boxing* is an active exercise consisting in fighting with the fist.

P. 72. *Joined hands*, took hold of each other's hands. *Played*, performed music upon the harp. *To his measure*, in harmony with the tune he played. *Measure*, is the division of time by which the movements of music are regulated. *In and out*, backwards and forwards. *Round and round*, circularly. *Till the night.....sea*, till it was dark. *Gleam*, lustre.

*The lad*, the son of Æson. *Wholesome*, healthy; refreshing. *Fragrant*, sweet-scented. *Bay, myrtle, marjoram and thyme* are various kinds of aromatic plants. *Rose*, awoke. *Cunning* is here used in its original sense of "skilful." *Keen hungry mountain air*, bracing air of the mountains. *To mount him*, to take him up. *Virtues*, qualities. *Jason*, the celebrated leader of the Argonauts, was a son of Æson who was deprived of his kingdom by his half brother Pelias. For fear of Pelias, Æson carried him to Mt. Pelion where he was brought up by the Centaur Cheiron. When he grew up, he was one day entrapped in conversation by Pelias and promised to bring the Golden Fleece. He went on this expedition with the Argonauts and obtained the fleece with the assistance of Medea, and returned to Iolcos. On his return he found that his father had been slain by Pelias, and asked Medea to avenge the wrong, who thereupon persuaded the daughters of Pelias to cut their father to pieces and boil him in

Minister in London, at the next a commander in the field in Belgium.

On an undated day in October Asquith noted blandly in his diary: "Having, as he (Churchill) says, tasted blood these last few days, he is beginning, like a tiger, to rave for more, and begs that, sooner or later—the sooner the better—he may be relieved of his present office and put in some kind of military command. I told him that he could not be spared from the Admiralty but he scoffs at that . . . his mouth waters at the sight of Kitchener's new armies. Are these 'glittering commands' to be entrusted to 'dugout trash' bred on the obsolete tactics of twenty-five years ago, 'mediocrities' who have led a sheltered life mouldering in military routine, etc. etc.? For about a quarter of an hour he poured forth a ceaseless cataract of invective and appeal and I much regretted there was no shorthand writer within hearing, as some of his unpremeditated phrases were quite priceless."<sup>1</sup>

Along with the rest Lieutenant Montgomery was swept into the cataclysm. He was hustled from Sheppey (where the territorials took over) to Shorncliffe, then up to York (as a minor cog in the 4th Division). Then down to Harrow where the 10th Brigade under Brigadier-General Haldane finally formed up and embarked at Southampton for France on August 22nd. The date is interesting. They had missed the first awful clash with the Germans at Mons and were now plunging into the midst of a retreat.

Early on August 23rd they landed in Boulogne and the 10th Brigade (with Montgomery) raced full tilt to get into the fighting that was rapidly coming towards them. On the 24th they reached Le Cateau and at 2 o'clock in the following morning, barely forty-eight hours after leaving England, they made contact with the enemy outside the town and ran blindly upon him.

There was no plan. Section leaders were simply told, "Attack that hill". Up they rushed waving their swords. At that time the quota of machine-guns to each battalion was two. The casualties were frightful. Montgomery, charging ahead with C Company got on to the hill and presently, along with everyone else, was flung off it again, having achieved nothing whatever. Captain Day, the Company commander, fell wounded and Montgomery decided to go back with two men and bring him in. They found the captain lying with a broken leg on the hillside and somehow struggled back as far as a church where they dumped him with the other wounded. By now their

<sup>1</sup> *Memories and Reflections*, by the Earl of Oxford and Asquith, K.G.

*Arcadian stag*, which had golden horns and brazen feet and which was captured alive by Heracles and carried to Mycenæ, (4). *Destruction of the Erymanthian boar*, which had descended from Mt. Erymanthus into Psophis, and which Heracles captured after chasing through the snow and thus wearing him out. (5) *Cleansing of the stables of Augeus*, king of Elis, which contained 3000 oxen and had not been cleansed for 30 years. (6) *Destruction of the Stympthalian birds*, the voracious animals that had been brought up by Ares. (7) *Capture of the Cretan bull*. (8) *Capture of the mares of the Thracian Diomedes*, who fed his horses with human flesh. The mares were afterwards set free and destroyed on Mount Olympus by wild beasts. (9) *Seizure of the girdle of the Queen of the Amazons*, who had received it from Ares. Heracles brought this girdle for Admete the daughter of Eurystheus, who wished to obtain and wear it. (10) *Capture of the oxen of Geryones in Erythia*. (11) *Fetch the Golden Apples of the Hesperides*. These were the apples which Hera had received from Ge as her marriage present and which she had entrusted to the keeping of the Hesperides and the dragon Ladon, on Mt. Atlas in the country of the Hyperboreans. (12) *Bringing Cerberus from the Lower World*, Cerberus was the three headed dog who guarded the door of Pluto's kingdom of the Lower World. *Peleus had married a Sea-Nymph &c.*, Peleus had involuntarily killed a companion of his in the Calydonian hunt, and fled to Iolcos, where he was purified by Acastus the king of the place. While at Iolcos, where he was accused by Astydemia, wife of Acastus, of having attempted to violate her chastity though it was she herself who had made the proposals which were rejected by Peleus. Peleus was then led to Mt. Pelion by Acastus who left him there in order that the Centaurs might kill him. He was saved by Cheiron; and while on Mt. Pelion, married the Sea-Nymph Thetis by whom he became the father of Achilles. All the gods were present at the ceremony except *Eris*, the goddess of Discord. *Many...him, in the Aeneid*. The time, the time at which Jason was to leave Pelion. P. 74. *Breed, rear. Boibe.* or *Bolbe* is a lake in Macedonia. At present the lake is about 12 miles long and 6 miles wide. *Peneus and Tempe*; *Tempe* is a beautiful and romantic valley in the north of Thessaly between Mounts Olympus and Ossa. *The moun-*



In the morning he led his platoon in a bayonet charge on the village of Meteren. They carried the objective, but the enemy fire still continued from farther back where German sharpshooters were sniping out of the houses. Montgomery was standing up in the pouring rain reorganizing his platoon on the newly won ground when a rifle bullet entered his chest on the right-hand side from the back and passed entirely through his body. As he fell in the mud a man ran to him with a bandage, but he, too, was hit. Mortally wounded in the head he fell across Montgomery's body and the two of them lay there, one on top of the other, while the Germans continued to shoot bullets into them. Montgomery was struck a second time in the knee. He now was entirely unable to move, but he was still conscious and he shouted to the rest of his men to remain under cover. It was barely three in the afternoon and clearly no one could venture into that open space before nightfall. For the next three hours Montgomery lay motionless under the dead man in a welter of blood and mud while the rain poured down and the bullets passed by and life slowly drained out of him. At nightfall two men came out and got him. Hardly conscious, he was slung in a greatcoat, passed through a hedge and got to the forward dressing-station.

He was now in a shocking condition, badly wounded in one lung and scarcely alive. Indeed in that nightmarish place in the midst of the firing, with so many others wounded and dying, he seemed to be dead. Another officer who was brought in just ahead of him had already expired and orderlies were set to work digging graves for both of them. With some slight unconscious movement Montgomery attracted the doctor's attention. He was re-examined and it was decided that since he had a bare chance of living he was worth putting into an ambulance. Montgomery woke up in a hospital in England to find that he had been made a captain and awarded the D.S.O.

Moreover he was surviving. The years of Tasmanian fresh air, of endless sport and his natural hardiness began to build him up. True, one lung was permanently affected. He would have to control his diet. Tobacco smoke would tend to make him cough and his voice was weak. But for the rest he was whole again and fit at least for staff duties in the field. On the whole he rather enjoyed hospital; it was the first period of enforced idleness and rest he had ever known—and perhaps the only

small pieces of melting snow floating on its surface. *Boulders*, rounded pieces of stone. *Rumbling*, moving with a dinning noise. *Tramp*, clatter. *Roll*, circular motion. *Ground...channel*, moved rubbing against the narrow bed of the river.

*Whined...more*, cried still more plaintively. *For Hera's sake*, in the name of Hera. *Scornfully*, in a contemptuous tone. *When...mind*, when he remembered what Cheiron had told him. *Midway*, in the middle of the stream. *Nimbly*, agilely. *Staggered in*, moved forward reeling under the weight. *Waist*, the part above the loins. *The first step was &c.*, the water reached to his knees as he took the first step and up to his waist as he took the second. *Panting*, breathing heavily. *Mantle*, overcoat. *Make game of*, make fun of; jest with.

Page. 77. *Had half a mind*, was half inclined. *By herself*, alone. *Patience*, have patience; be patient. *Stumble*, take a false step. *The beast.....day*, a mistake may be made by anybody. *Needed to have been*, must have been. *Wild water*, raging water.

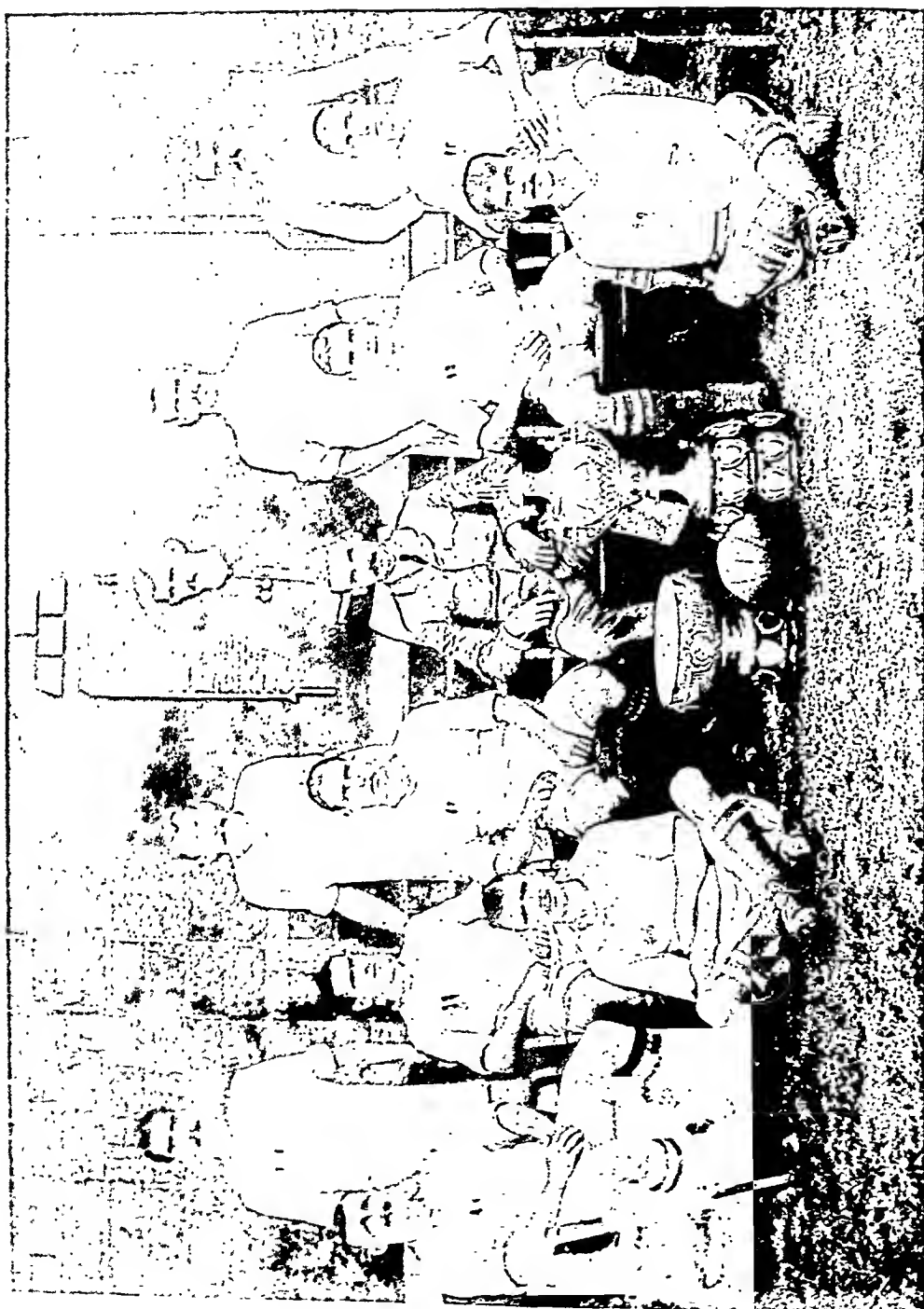
*Garments*, clothes. *Shone*, glittered. *Veil*, a screen of thin gauze to hide or protect the face. *Woven of*, formed by weaving. *Heifer*, the female of the ox. *With.....eyes*, mildly and benevolently.

*Fell...knees*, knelt down. *Hide*, concealed; Past Tense of "Hide," *Done to me*, acted for me. *Call on me*, ask my assistance. *In the hour of need*, when you need help. *Try*, test. *Try.....forget*, test the gratitude of the gods.

P. 78. *Rose*, ascended. *Pillar*, column. *Floated away*, flew away. *Peaks*, summits; tops.

P. 79. *A great.....Jason*, Jason was overawed. *He grew...heart*, he became free from anxiety. *Blessed*, prayed for the happiness of. *Guessed*, knew; surmised. *Come to pass*, happen. *The elders*, the more aged; the seniors. It should be parsed as a noun. *Errand*, business.

*Started*, was alarmed. *The oracle*, the prophecy. *What.....sandal*, what has that to do with my sandal. *Struggling with*, wading with difficulty through. P. 80. *Rush upon*, meet. *Ruin*, destruction. *Unawares*, without being warned. *Lest.....unawares*, or else you might suddenly ruin yourself. *Take*, wrest. *Beware*, be careful. *Most cunning*, most artful.



MONTGOMERY AS SPORTS OFFICER, BOMBAY

After, in search of. You would.....more, he would no longer be able to trouble you. At that, on hearing Jason's words. Bitter, cruel. Came across, crossed. Flash, gleam. At that.....his eyes, on hearing Jason's words, Pelias smiled cruelly and his eyes shone with wicked joy. Warning, advice. Over.. came, he recollected. Was.....trap, had fallen into a snare. Gently, mildly; kindly. Forthwith, immediately.

You mean me? do you mean to say that I am the man who shall be sent to bring the Golden Fleece. Starting up, jumping up. P. 84. Lifted his fist angrily, raised his closed hand in anger, as if he were going to strike a blow. Fist, is the hand with the fingers closed over the palm. Stood up to him, stood opposite to him. At bay, in a state of opposition. Animals are said to stand at bay when escape being impossible they face their pursuers. Bay is derived from the French *aboi* barking, and literally means "the extremity to which the stag is reduced when surrounded by the dogs barking (*aboyant*)," hence, a state of being obliged to face the enemy when escape has become impossible. It would.....tell, it was difficult to decide. It refer "whether.....fiercer."

Why then so rash, why are you rash enough to oppose me. Blame, reproach; find fault with. What.....now, there is no harm if I do as you suggest. To win, to acquire. Immortal, undying. To win ..fame, to become famous for ever. Harmed, injured. That gladly, i.e., he will go gladly. That is a Demonstrative Pronoun used for the clause "he will go." Has.....him, is as brave as a hero. Scorning, despising. To break, to violate. Word, promise.

Entrapped, caught in a trap; ensnared. What.....in that also, what if the Centaur's prophecy be fulfilled in that case also. Keep to, stand by. In return, in exchange. Keep your word, fulfil your promise. Treat, deal with. I am gone, I am absent. For the sake of, in the name of. All-seeing, he who sees all. P. 85. For my own, as my own.

In the midst.....hate, though he hated him so much; inspite of all his hate. A great oath, a solemn oath. Swore .....them, stated on oath that they would keep their promises. Could not sleep, was unable to sleep. For, on account of. Thinking of, pondering upon. His mighty oath, his solemn oath to bring the Golden Fleece. How ... ..it, the way in which he could redeem the pledge. All

right or wrong? Having taken a decision he stuck to it blindly, persistently and, at times, bigotedly. And all his subsequent dealings with the subject were on the same simple level. All the doubtings and misgivings and half interests and desires which lie at the periphery of a normal young man's mind, did not exist here. There was no outer periphery to Montgomery's mind. His mental world, like the world of the geographer of the Middle Ages, was flat. If you went past the edge you fell off. Ruthlessly, calmly and clearly he lopped away all the impedimenta that he judged were without importance to his life. Other things might exist but he was not interested. No point in investigating them. Stick to what you wanted. When it was necessary to advance into unexplored country plan a campaign in advance. Never get beyond the reach of your bases. Clear up the new country entirely before you set out again.

This incisive logic—a logic that sometimes excluded evidence—was already giving him immense advantages over other young men of the same age. He concentrated. He rarely squandered time in the pursuit of hobbies or half-hearted pleasures. Everything in Montgomery's life was done with a purpose and persisted in to the bitter and sometimes barren end. He rarely made conscious emotional judgments. As for the small prejudices he was born with (for example he disliked cats and he did not eat fish), he never investigated them. They existed and that was that.

At twenty-eight he was developing the fixity of mind and purpose of a man ten years his senior and he was far beyond his age in everything except experience. It was this that gave him a bearing that sometimes lacked charm and suppleness and patience—unless by chance you happened to be on the right side of his mental fence; and then he was capable of a precise consideration and indulgence that made him a remarkable friend.

From 1915 onwards there is an irresistible comparison with General Gordon of Khartoum in everything but one major particular. The same compact and wiry frame, the same rigid almost fanatical set of the head, the Bible reading and the stark emotional fervour, the contempt for convention and authority, the self-assurance and the ruthless determination, the quick outbursts of charm and generosity, the restlessness and the misogyny, the physical bravery and the impatience and quarrelsomeness, the indifference to money and the love of praise, the compelling instinct towards leadership, the painstaking study and the asceticism, and finally, sublimating all

the goddess of the sea, who had been brought up by Hera, and given in marriage to Peleus by whom she became the mother of Achilles. P. 89. *Telamon*, a brother of Peleus and one of the Argonauts. He became king of Salamis on the death of his father-in-law, and afterwards married *Euriboea*, by whom he became the father of Ajax the Great. *Oileus*, a king of the Lacrians, and married to *Eriope*, by whom he became the father of the lesser Ajax. *The two Aiantes*, the greater and the lesser Ajax. Aiantes is the plural of Ajax. *Mopsus*, son of Ampyx by the nymph *Chloris*. Being a seer, he was also called a son of Apollo. He was one of the Argonauts and a famous prophet among them. He died of the bite of snake in the desert of Libya and was buried by the Argonauts. *Soothsayer*, prophet; seer. *Knew*, understood. *Idmon*, son of Apollo, was a soothsayer and accompanied the Argonauts, although he knew beforehand that death awaited him. *Phæbus*, another name of Apollo. *To whom...to come*, who was gifted by Apollo with the power of making predictions. *Ancaios*, there were two persons of this name who have been confounded with each other. The one was the son of *Lycurgus* and took part in the Argonautic expedition. The other was a son of *Poseidon* by *Samia* the wife of the king of *Samos*. He was also one of the Argonauts, and is said to have become the helmsman of the *Argo* after the death of *Tiphys*. *Read the stars*, observe the heavens in order to foretell the future. *The circles of the heavens*, the heavens were divided into twelve divisions by astrologers, each of which was called a house or circle. *Argus*, the builders of the *Argo* son of *Phrixus*, was sent by *Aietes*, his grandfather, after the death of *Phrixus*, to take possession of his inheritance in Greece. On his voyage thither he suffered shipwreck, was found by Jason in the island of *Aretias*, and carried back to *Colchis*. *Famed*, celebrated. *Dyed*, colored. *Crests*, the feathers worn on a helmet. *Embroidered*, adorned with raised needlework. *Shirt*, undergarment. *Linen*, a kind of cotton cloth. *Coat of mail*, armor for the body. *Greaves* (L. *gæavis*, heavy) armor for the legs; used only in the plural. *Polished*, burnished. *Guard*, protect. *Fold*, layer. *Tough*, not easily broken. *Hide*, the raw skin of an animal. *Tempered*, reduced to a proper degree of hardness. *Silver-studded belt*, belt thickly set with pieces of silver. *Ash-staves*, poles cut out of the branches of an ash-tree.

writing and the junior planners were left to work out the details of the local tactics. When he went forward Montgomery no longer had personal command or any opportunity for inspirational leadership. Yet he was gulping in experience at a tremendous rate, and now with all his oddities he was regarded as an exceptionally able soldier. Eight times he was mentioned in dispatches. He had no time to argue. No authority to criticize. But the long urgent tide of work ran on and he seemed destined eventually for high command. Then the war stopped, and with it all promotion. As a major with the rank of GSO2 Montgomery went into Germany with the British forces of occupation, their headquarters at Cologne. As the British advanced into the zone the Germans fell back; little or nothing happened to guide the Allies in their future dealing with Germany. The British never penetrated beyond the borders of their zone. Somewhere in the interior of the Reich the German Army, still more or less intact, still resentful, went its own way.

## 3

In all the inevitable repugnance to war and soldiering that swept the world in 1919 Montgomery had no part. The jazz era rose to its height, the world of bobbed hair and short skirts, of cocktails and cars, of cynicism and exhausted disillusionment, of the restless and hysterical clutching at little pleasures, and of dancing, dancing, dancing. Montgomery remained tucked in his little military world, hopelessly out of tune with the times, labouring at a career which was regarded as outmoded and bottomlessly dull. He was that ridiculously anomalous figure, a soldier without a war in a world hating war. While pacificism and disarmament and a Wilsonesque perfectionism and idealism captured nearly every intellectual brain, he went on plodding solemnly at his indents and drills. Furthermore, he was enthusiastic about it.

The reasons for this were neither political nor emotional, nor really prophetic. He was not moved by a blind and unrelenting desire for revenge. He did not clearly foresee that the Germans would rise again. His knowledge of politics was weak, to say the most of it. The idea of mass slaughter appealed to him no more than to anyone else; and his basic Christianity subscribed to all the ideals of a League of Nations and the concept of peace and goodwill to all men.

But something else intervened: he could not bring himself to believe in peace. War, to his mind, was as inevitable as

that he should not look back upon her restored wife, till they had arrived in the upper world. At the very moment when they were about to pass the fatal bounds he forgot the condition and looked round to see if Eurydice was following him. He saw her but she instantly vanished from his eyes. Maddened by the grief of his wife's loss, Orpheus wandered about for a long time, visiting Egypt and the Libyan desert; till at last he settled down in Thrace. *Caliope*, the muse of lyric poetry. *Delivered me*, freed me from my madness. *Among*, surrounded by. *Softening*, making gentle. *Ends*, limits. *Misty*, hazy. *Darkness*, gloom. *To the last wave*, to the boundaries. *To* denotes extent or limit. *The Eastern Sea*, the Black Sea. *Doomed*, destined. *Must be*, shall surely come to pass. *Demand*, request. *A friend's demand obeyed*, I must comply with your request, as you are my friend. *Prayers.....Zeus*, prayers have sprung from Zeus. *Who.....him*, he who complies with the request of a friend, honours Zeus. The antecedent of the Relative *who* has here been omitted.

*Went over*, crossed. *Habacnion*, an important river in Macedonia. *Spurs*, projections. *A spur* is a mountain that shoots from any other mountain, and extends to some distance. *Pindus*, a lofty range of mountains in Northern Greece. *Dodona*, the most ancient Oracle in Greece, was situated in Epirus. It was dedicated to Zens. *The sacred lake*, the lake of Joannina. *The fountain...fire*, there was at Dodona an orifice from which a flame occasionally issued. *The black dove settled in old times &c.*, it was believed that the command to found the oracle was at first brought from Zeus by pigeons. P. 91. *Gave.....round*, prophesied future events to all the tribes. *A bough*, a large branch of a tree. *Beak-head*, the topmost part of the beak. *A beak* is that part of a ship, which is fastened to the stem and supported by the main knee.

*Finished*, completed. *To launch.....beach*, to cause her to move from the land into the water. *She was.....her*, she was so heavy that they could not move her. *Knee* the lowermost part of a ship. *Blushing*, ashamed. *I can.....need*, it can help us in this difficulty.

*A voice...bough*, the bough spoke. *Waited round*, stood round the ship. *Rollers*, a cylinder of wood, stone &c. used in moving heavy objects. *To help her*, to push her. *To ride upon the surges*, to sail over the waves. The surges are



leading rebels were killed or caught; and Lloyd George having got his truce, withdrew the British troops.

From the soldier's point of view Montgomery had added one more valuable page of experience to his now definitely shaping career. The Cork Brigade under General Higginson had been a large affair of nine battalions, and as brigade-major, Montgomery had had a large area of control. His promotion in rank was not affected—indeed it took him sixteen years in the slowly grinding military machine to get back to the rank he had held in the war.

This was the time—the early nineteen-twenties—of ruthless retrenchment in the Service budgets. Disarmament governed all. Regular officers were being “axed” right and left and many felt themselves lucky if they got out with a pension. The hectic backwash into peace had even gone to the point where army officers returning from France were heckled in London streets, called warmongers; and in a world of growing hunger and unemployment, they were accused of hanging on to safe and idle jobs at the public expense. It was the final swing of the pendulum from the days when hysterical women went about offering white feathers to civilians.

Gloom and lethargy pervaded the Army. Sorrowfully brigadier-generals unpicked the red tabs and the pips from their uniforms. There were no longer enough senior jobs to go round. Battalions going out for service in India frequently numbered generals and colonels among their majors and captains; and Montgomery suffered along with the rest.

From Ireland he was shifted to the same duties with the 3rd Division stationed at Plymouth. By now he was becoming known inside the Regular Army as an unusually assertive and busy officer, a little odd, a little too ready to take things into his own hands, but still hard-working and efficient. At Plymouth he had the luck to fall in with a commanding officer whom he liked and admired and, what was better still, a man who would also give him a certain amount of rope to play with. Brigadier-General S. E. Hollond seemed to Montgomery to be full of the right ideas. He had definite theories about the art of war. He also believed that the basis of it all was to whip some enthusiasm into the junior officers. They should be made to see that soldiering was not a long wearisome routine from which one escaped gratefully to the mess at the end of the day. Drill had to be varied, manoeuvres made exciting, a sense of competition spread abroad. While the General planned and encouraged, his Brigade-Major, Montgomery, jumped into

took a solemn oath. *Stand by*, support. *Shrank back*, hesitated to meet a danger. *Turned traitor*, proved faithless. *Minister against*, punish. *Justice...him*, he shall be punished. *Erinnues*, or, as the Romans called them, the Furies, the avenging deities, were originally only a personification of the curses pronounced upon a criminal; but they gradually came to be regarded as divinities who punished men after death. *Track*, follow; pursue.

*Lighted*, set fire to. *Carcase*, dead body. *From..... forth*, ever since that day. *Three thousand years and more*, three thousand years ago and more. This is a peculiar construction. The Argonauts sailed in 1263 B.C. *Come and gone*, flourished and declined. *Many...earth*, many revolutions have taken place on the earth. *Armament*, a body of forces equipped for war. *To which*, compared to which. *To* denotes comparison, *The fame .....ever*, that small ship *Argo*, has acquired an undying fame.

*Past*, along the coast of. *Sciathos*, a small island in the Ægean Sea, east of the Magnesian coast of Thessaly. *Sepius*, a promontory in the south-east of Thessaly in the district Magnesia. *Turned*, bent or directed their course. P. 95. *Up.....shore*, from the south to the north along the coast of Magnesia. *Crawled*, crept; moved slowly. *His caps of summer snow*, the tops of the mountain covered with snow even in the summer. *Yearned for*, eagerly desired to see. *Thought of*, remembered. *Gone by*, passed. *Schooling*, education; training. *Land*, cast anchor. *Climb*, ascend. *Fearful*, dangerous. *Who..... again*, it is not certain whether we shall ever see Pelion again. *Master*, tutor. *Blessing*, benediction. *Ere we start*, before we commence our journey. *Trains*, brings up. *Once*, formerly. *The son.....me*, the son I had by Thetis; viz., Achilles. *Brought*, bore; begot. *Turned*, subdued. *Stately*, magnificent. *I held.....ever*, I never let her go. *Took.....again*, resumed her original form. *Were.....bride*, married her. *Rulers of Olympus*, gods. *Came to our wedding*, witnessed our marriage. P. 96. *It is.....earth*, I shall see him very seldom upon earth. The reason of this is explained in the succeeding lines. *Famous.....short-lived*, he shall acquire much fame but his life will be short. *Flower of youth*, bloom of youth. *Die.....youth*, die while very young.

each case the objective was usually some obvious enemy strong-point like a hill or cross-roads.

It was the steam-roller method. Surprise did not count for much and stealth still less. Most commanders attempted to batter and numb the enemy by the preliminary bombardment and then demolish him with overwhelming numbers of infantrymen. Always the key to the battle was "Who has the greatest numbers, the most fire power?" The individual soldier counted for little. He was one among millions, and if he knew how to pull a trigger and run with his bayonet that was enough.

To Montgomery this was all wrong. The individual soldier, far from being an unconscious cypher among a million others, was the most important person in the battle. The utmost care and attention must be lavished upon him. He must be trained for many months beforehand. Instead of being kept in ignorance, his role in the fighting and the whole battle itself must be fully and clearly explained to him beforehand. He must never be used in the mass, blindly striking against another mass. Morale was everything, and the only way to achieve high morale was to make the soldier feel he was part of a team carrying out an intelligent plan that was bound to succeed. General officers, and especially the commander-in-chief, should mix freely with the men and talk to them frankly. They must stay up forward at the front leaving the working out of details of planning to their subordinate officers.

Under Montgomery's theory the old slogging match was out. Stealth and cunning were far more important than the massing of overwhelming numbers. One must never strike directly at important objectives, but go round them. The cutting edge of the Army must consist of strong highly trained and highly mobile columns, capable of making narrow but deep penetrations and then fanning out in the rear of the enemy line.

Every battle must be preceded by exhaustive reconnaissance to discover the enemy's weakest points. Elaborate deception plans must be drawn up to confuse the enemy on the timing and direction of the main thrust. Everything must be sacrificed to the object of getting in a quick deadly blow at the weak spot while the enemy was not looking. Nothing must be done until the whole operation was supplied and keyed to the last detail and every man perfectly aware of his part. Before the battle began every possible risk must be examined and provided for. To Montgomery a battle was as precise and technical an act as building a house, and no one should go into action until he was absolutely certain he was going to prevail.

Hesiod, in the beginning there was Chaos, then came Ge, Tartarus and *Eros* (Love) the fairest among the gods, who rules over the minds and the councils of gods and men. *Eros* was regarded as one of the fundamental causes in the formation of the world, which brought order and harmony among the various conflicting elements. Plato likewise calls him the oldest god. *Bowed*, bent; inclined. *Cracked*, broke into fissures. *Rang*, resounded. *To listen*, Gerundial Infinitive denoting purpose. *Forsook*, abandoned. *Hovered*, moved to and fro. *Clapt his hands together*, in token of approbation. *Beat*, struck. *For wonder*, being surprised. *For* denotes cause. P. 98. *One by one*, in turn. *Promised...renown*, prophesied that they would become very famous. *Left him*, parted from him. *Pious*, godly. *Watched*, observed. *Locks*, the hair on the crown of the head. *Strained*, exerted to their utmost. *They felt*, it seemed to them.

*Long swell*, large expanse. *Wooded*, covered with woods or forests. *Athos*, the mountainous peninsula that projects from Chalcidice in Macedonia. *Samothrace the sacred isle*, a small island in the north of the *Ægean Sea*. It was the chief seat of the worship of the Cabiri and was celebrated for its religious mysteries. *Lennows*, one of the largest islands in the *Ægean Sea*, was situated nearly midway between Mount Athos and the Hellespont. It was sacred to Hephaistos. *Hellespont*, the strait, now known as the Dardanelles, which joins the sea of Marmora with the *Ægean*. *Abydos*, a town on the Hellespont. The narrowest part of the Hellespont is called the strait of Abydos. *Propontis*, or the Marmora, is that part of the sea which lies between the straits of Bosphorus and Hellespont. *Cyzicus*, son of Aeneas, was king of the Dolions on the Propontis. (For his connection with the Argonauts see pp. 99 and 100 of the Text). *Dolions*, were a Pælasgic people in Mysia who dwelt between the rivers *Æsepus* and *Rhyndacus* and in the neighborhood of the town of Cyzicus. *Homer*, the great epic poet of Greece. His date and birth place are equally matters of dispute. He was the author of the two great epic poems, the *Iliad*, (describing the sieze and reduction of Troy by the Greeks) and the *Odyssey* (describing the wanderings of Ulysses on his return from Troy and way home). *Virgil*, a celebrated Roman epic poet, who lived in the first century B. C. He is the author of *Æneid*, (describing



BISHOP MONTGOMERY  
The Field-Marshal's father

Mysia, Hylas went on shore to draw water from a fountain; but his beauty excited the love of the Naiads who drew him down into the water, and he was never seen again. Heracles endeavoured in vain to find him; and when he shouted out to the youth, the voice of Hylas was heard from the bottom of the well only like a faint echo, whence some say that he was actually metamorphosed into an echo, (Kingsley's account of the disappearance of Hylas is a little different) While Heracles was engaged in seeking his favorite the Argonauts sailed away, leaving him and his companion Polyphemus behind. *Slipped away*, departed secretly. *By stealth*, unknown. *Lost himself*, lost his way. *The water-nymphs*, the Naiads, i.e., the nymphs of fresh water, whether of rivers, lakes, brooks, or springs. *To be their playfellow*, to make him their companion. *Sought for*, looked after; endeavoured to find. *Shouting*, calling loudly. *Rang*, echoed; resounded. *Far.....lake*, (as he was) at the bottom of the bright deep lake. *Sprang up*, began to blow. *The noble Phasian stream*, the river Phasis, which rose in the Moschice mountains, (according to others in the Caucasus, where, in fact, its tributaries rise) and flowing westward through the plain of Colchis into the east end of the Euxine or Black Sea.

*Doleful*, dismal; sorrowful. *Where Amycus ruled*, &c, that is, Bithynia, a district of Asia Minor lying to the east of Mysia. *Amycus*, was a son of Poseidon, celebrated for his skill in boxing. When the Argonauts came to his country, his challenge was accepted by Pollux who killed him. *Cared nothing for*, violated; did not obey. *Challenged*, called to contest. *Polydeuces*, or Pollux was celebrated for his skill in boxing. Page. 102. *Felt*, experienced. *Bosphorus*, the strait which unites the Propontis or Marmora with the Euxine or the Black sea. *The city of Phineus*, that is Salmydessus in Thrace. Phineus was the son of Agenor. He was first married to Cleopatra, daughter of Boreas, by whom he had two children. Afterwards he married Idaea. Idaea jealous of Cleopatra's children accused them of attempts upon their father's life, or, according to some, of attempts upon her virtue, and they were immediately condemned by Phineus to be deprived of their eyes. This cruelty was soon after punished by the gods. Phineus suddenly became blind, and the Harpies were sent by Zeus to keep him under continual alarm, and to spoil the meats which were placed on his

## CHAPTER FIVE

# SWITZERLAND TO BURNHAM-ON-SEA

### I

IN 1925 Montgomery decided quite bluntly and simply that it was time he got married.

All his life he had avoided women; never had he formed so much as the slightest attachment to a girl. He was even regarded as a woman-hater, and he held strong views about their "emancipation from the home". Quite apart from his puritanism, women were to him an impediment to the simple and monastic progress of one's career.

Now suddenly in his thirty-eighth year he decided that marriage was a necessary and desirable thing, and he devoted himself to the project with the same intense concentration with which he usually approached a military operation. An excursion with several friends was organized to Dinard in Brittany—France presumably was the sort of terrain where this business could best be studied. As usual Montgomery made all the arrangements for the party. He got the tickets, struck a bargain with a hotel on arrival. He then instructed the manager of the hotel to procure him a dancing teacher. While the lessons were in progress (they did not proceed very well), arrangements were made to obtain introductions to the eligible young ladies then holidaying in the neighbourhood. A few mixed tennis parties ensued.

These preliminary manœuvres produced no one quite suitable, but at least they constituted a definite opening to this new campaign, and Montgomery proceeded amiably to Switzerland for the winter sports a short time later, choosing an unpretentious place, the Wildstrubel Hotel at Lenk in the Bernese Oberland.

He was scarcely a romantic figure. There was no nonsense about his ski-ing clothes. He wore gaiters, baggy grey sports trousers, a large and shapeless V-necked sweater that hung far below his waist, and all this was surmounted by a black beret which he had bought somewhere in the village (the first appearance of a beret on his head since childhood). Stuck in it was a local ski club badge (third class).

Rising early in the morning he attacked the mountains fiercely on his skis. He was interested less in the finesse of the

time. *Haunt*, frequent ; visit. *Fearful storms*, terrible tempests. *Sweep away*, snatch off, carry off. *In spite of*, notwithstanding.

*Know*, recognise. *Which.....backs*, which we have upon our backs. *Hidden.....terror*, concealed his face through fear. *In* denotes cause. *Not a word*, nothing.

*Have been a traitor*, have proved faithless. *Haunt*, torment. *Whom.....prison*, whom you have imprisoned. *Blinded*, made blind ; deprived of sight. *Whom you blinded*, whose eyes you put out. *Bidding*, order ; command. *Evil*, wicked. *Cast them out*, exposed them. *The rocks*, the mountains. *Right*, do justice towards. *Right our sister*, repair the wrong done to our sister. *Cast out*, drive out ; expel. *Plague*, a malignant disease ; hence, any torment or trouble. *Free.....plague*, deliver you from your tormentors. *Drive*, force to go. *The whirlwind maidens* the Harpies. *Put out your eyes*, blind you ; deprive you of sight. *Oath*, a solemn declaration. *Cured their eyes*, restored their sight. *With*, denotes means or instrument. *Magic herbs*, herbs having a magic or supernatural property.

Page. 104.—*Rose up*, got up. *Farewell*, adieu ; good-bye. *A farewell*, is bid at the time of separation. *Old*, past. *With.....times*, who were formerly our playfellows on Pelion. *Fate*, destiny. *Laid upon*, destined ; fixed. *A fate.....us*, we must meet an inevitable destiny. *Day*, appointed time. *Our day is come*, the appointed time has arrived. *Hunt*, chase ; pursue. *Over land and sea*, everywhere. *Catch*, overtake.

*At that*, on hearing this. *Aloft*, high. *Sprang.....Harpies*, rose high into the air in pursuit of the Harpies. *The battle.....began*, the winds began fighting with one another. *Trembled*, shook. *In silence*, with out speaking the least word. *The shrieking of the blasts*, the loud cries uttered by the Harpies. *Rocked*, moved to and fro. *Were.....crags*, fell from the cliffs. *Hurled earthward*, uprooted. *North.....west*, in all directions. *Boiled*, bubbled. *Boiled.....foam*, was furiously agitated. *Dashed*, thrown violently.

*Screaming*, crying. *Rushed*, flew. *Brought*, produced. *League*, a measure of 3 miles. *The Cyclades* are a group of islands in the Aegean Sea. *The Ionian Sea*, a part of the Mediterranean lying between Italy and Greece. *They*



his experience: a rather tricky proposition with their loose talk and their strange and untidy interests. When he pulled up his car outside Betty Carver's riverside house he would not go inside, he waited on the pavement until she left her odd friends and came out to him.

It must have been an unusual courtship. Betty Carver's friends describe her at this time as "a charming eccentric with a tremendous vitality and zest for life".

"She had", says one, "very light-grey twinkling eyes, no make-up, a large nose and rather untidy dark hair. She was not very tall, and she wore, as we all did in those days, shapeless washing silk dresses with very low waists and strings of beads round her neck. She was excellent with the children—but then everybody loved her. She was always laughing and always full of mental vitality."

By the spring of 1927 something altogether new was happening in Montgomery's life; he was being impelled by a force which he had not evoked or designed himself, and moreover it was a force over which he had no control. He was falling deeply in love. The event had a double psychological importance. Throughout his life things had never "just happened" to Montgomery. He himself had planned each step in advance, he himself had forced every issue. When outside influences sought to take hold of him he resisted and often violently. That was one side of his mentality. But then again, and coincident with this, he had erected a network of prejudices and dislikes in the course of this long struggle from childhood; and one of the strongest of these prejudices was his aversion to women, or at least the idea of a woman controlling his life.

For nearly forty years, therefore, it had been an unbalanced life, even a somewhat unnatural life. All the energy, the interest and the affection which normally would have flowed into a marriage and the rearing of a family had been blocked and diverted towards the Army. Now suddenly, and almost at one stroke, nature reasserts itself. Betty Carver restores the balance. The prejudice makes a violent swing to the opposite direction; the antipathies of years dissolve delightfully.

No doubt during the courtship Montgomery still had the illusion that he was the master of events, since he did all the pursuing in a most masculine way. But the unexpected, unevoked interior passion was there, willy-nilly carrying him onwards.

On Betty Carver's side the same affection had swept away

P. 107. *Clashed together*, struck against each other. *Struck*, detached; tore. *Rebounded*, jumped back. *A part*, away from each other. *At the shock*, by the force of the shock.

*Cheered*, encouraged. *Withe*, a slender twig; a willow. *A stroke* is the sweep of an oar in rowing. *Toppling*, tumbling down. *Ice-crags*, pieces of ice. *Those.....death*, the ice-bound rocks that tumbled down and destroyed any one who passed through them; Fig. Metaphor. *The Black Cape*, the promontory of Calpe on the coast of Bithynia. *Thyneis*, a small island of the Euxine, on the coast of Bithynia, near the promontory Calpe. *Thymbris*, a river of Troas which now falls into the Hellespont, but formerly it fell into the Euxine. *Sangarius*, the second largest river of Asia Minor. *Heaped a mound*, built a grave. *Lycia*, a small but very interesting district on the southern side of Asia Minor, jutting out into the Mediterranean.

*Sinope*, the most important of all the Greek colonies on the shores of the Euxine. *Barbarous tribe*, a tribe which was not Greek. In the Greek phraseology, a man who was not a Greek was a barbarian. "From Gr. *Barbaros*, foreign; *lit.*, stammering; a name given by the Greeks to express the strange sound of foreign languages" (*Skeat*). P. 108. *The Amazons*, a mythical race of warlike females, who are said to have come from the Caucasus. *Clank*, ringing sound. *Anvil*, an iron block upon which metals are hammered and shaped. *Furnace-blasts*, may mean either (1) bellows; or (2) the flames of fire escaping from a furnace. *Forge-fires*, furnaces. *The Chalybes*, an Asiatic people who are generally represented both in the early poetic legends, and in the historical period, as dwelling on the southern shore of the Black Sea. *Smiths*, the blacksmiths. *Never tire*, are perpetually at work. *Forging*, manufacturing.

*Day-dawn*, sunrise; morning. *Midway*, halfway. *Midway.....sky*, at an equal distance from the earth and the sky. *Snow peaks*, mountain-tops covered with snow. *Above the clouds*, higher than the clouds. *Caucasus*, a great chain of mountains in Asia from the eastern shore of the Euxine to the western shore of the Caspian. Its length is about 700 miles; the greatest breadth about 120 and the least about 60 or 70 miles. Its highest summit, Mt. Elburz, is 16,800 feet above the sea. The ancient Greeks had only a vague knowledge of the Caucasus and supposed it

facts down their throats". There was a sharp quarrel with a full colonel who was senior to Montgomery on the Staff.

Indeed Montgomery's mannerisms were hardly endearing at times. Even his kindly gestures tended to be emphatic. Major-General Sir Charles Gwynn, who was in charge of the Staff College, remembers opening his front door one day and finding Montgomery on the threshold clutching a radio set.

"You have no wireless set", Montgomery announced, coming inside. "Here is one and"—glancing narrowly around the room—"that is the place to put it."

The General protested mildly that he did not want a wireless, and if he did have one he would not put it in that particular spot. Montgomery enthusiastically pointed out how wrong the General was about the whole thing. In the end the set was accepted, placed to Montgomery's liking, and he left.

Among a thousand stories of Montgomery which were current at the end of the war (most of them exaggerated or wholly wrong), there are none which give a more accurate flavour of his acquaintance than this passing incident at Camberley with its ingredients of simple kindness, of slight crankiness and the air of convinced rightness with which he went about.

One gathers that many people were slightly frightened of him: one could laugh light-heartedly with Mrs. Montgomery, but when her husband came into the room there was a pause, a slight air of restraint. Once when the Montgomerys were guests at a house party in Italy a fancy-dress dinner party was arranged. Montgomery (as it was expected) refused to put on a costume, but his wife appeared wearing his evening clothes, a moustache painted on her upper lip. With one accord the guests glanced apprehensively at Montgomery to see how he would take it. Betty Montgomery alone appeared to be at ease. Lifting a glass she cried, "The ladies—God bless 'em", and the party relaxed.

### 3

The marriage had astonished Montgomery's friends. Few believed that that dry unrelenting figure was set upon any other course than permanent bachelorhood. If they had chosen a bride for him it would have been some strong country girl wearing sensible rough tweeds, a good horsewoman, and a leader in the local charities.

But this dark vivacious woman with her infectious giggle, her paint-box and her books was something entirely unex-

*Filled*....*fear*, made him afraid. *Lap*, bosom. *Chariot*, a war-car or vehicle, drawn by any number of horses from two to seven. *Appease*, conciliate; win the favor of. *Spirits* departed souls. *Rich and mighty*, wealthy and powerful.

*Reedy river*, the river in which reeds grew abundantly. P. 110. *Sliding up*, proceeding noiselessly; coming silently up. *Like Immortals for beauty and for strength*, resembling the gods in beauty and strength. *Level*, smooth; plain; neither too strong not too weak. *Mist of the stream*, fog that hung over the river.

*Into each other's eyes*; towards each other. *Awed*, struck with fear and reverence; influenced by reverential fear. *Tissue*, texture. *Of rich gold tissue*, of costly cloth interwoven with gold, silver, or with figured colours. *Diadem*, crown. *Rays*, lines of light, formed by the sun shining upon the crown. *The rays...fire*, the light reflected from his crown was as bright as if it were fire. *A jewelled sceptre*, a sceptre inlaid with jewels. *Sceptre*, is the staff or rod carried by kings as a token of their authority. *Sternly* severely. *Under his brows*, from beneath his brows.

*What.....here* what is your business in this country. *Cutaia*, a town in Colchis on the river Phasis, where Medea was said to have been born. *Do.....rule*, do you consider my government to be weak. *Who never.....battle*, who have always been ready to fight. *To face*, to encounter.

*Before the face*, in the presence. *Put.....heart*, made Jason bold. *Pirates*, sea-robbers. *Lawless men*, outlaws; brigands. *Ravage*, pillage; despoil. Page 111. *My uncle.....he*, complement of "is." *Set*, appointed. *Quest*, search. *Comrades*, companions. *No nameless men*, famous men. *Know.....take*, are well versed in attack and defence.

*Aietes.....whirlwind*, Aietes became very angry. *His eyes flashed fire*, sparks of fire appeared to dart from his eyes. *Crushed down*, subdued. *Cunning*, artful. *Speech*, Cognate object of "Spoke" *Worsted*, defeated. *Will be ruled by me*, will take my advice. *You.....far*, it will be much better for you. *Choose*, select. *Fulfil*, perform. *Demand*, order. *For a prize*, as a reward.

*There was.....chance of war*, it was quite out of ques-

two step-sons suited him admirably; he adored this kind of patriarchal responsibility and the two boys responded willingly. The birth of his own son gratified a more than usual hunger for immortality. In every direction his life seemed to have been suddenly transformed. Even his career marched more swiftly ahead, and for the first time since the end of the war he began to glimpse the reality of the vision that never for an instant left him—authority and high command.

He was already a senior major. He was becoming a known man in the Army. More and more people were beginning to listen to him; or rather, as he himself put it, "resistance to my ideas was beginning to die down". Soon, perhaps, someone would die, someone retire, and he would get command of a battalion.

His marriage had broadened him, made him more tractable and more acceptable for promotion. Certainly he had still a long way to go before the men in higher command would docilely accept his acid criticisms. But he was learning patience and gathering followers around him.

Refreshed and exhilarated by three years of terrific work at Camberley he went back to his regiment, then stationed at Woking, and got the important job of acting as secretary of the committee which was to undertake one of the periodic re-writings of the Army's Infantry Training Manual. This was a big jump forward. At heart Montgomery was an infantryman and the focus of his interest in war lay in infantry tactics.

At Camberley he had become a notable lecturer on the subject. Once instead of taking his annual leave he accepted an invitation to go off to manœuvres at Sheerness as an adviser on the infantry side. He had nothing to gain from this except gratification of his own enthusiasm. During the manœuvres he propounded his ideas with such lucidity and vehemence that they were printed and distributed among senior commanders; and subsequently his notes became standard practice for the use and deployment of infantry.

It was a distinguished but not passionately active group of officers who sat on the War Office committee for the re-writing of the manual. Their secretary had not much difficulty in taking over most of the business himself. It was the old Montgomery tactics which he had employed steadily since his schooldays: get into the team and then run it. The manual, which was still current when the war against Hitler broke in 1939, was largely the output of Montgomery's own brain.

When there were postponements in the printing of the book Montgomery protested to the War Office: "Why the delay in

*wise maiden &c.* here Jason artfully requests Medeia to help the heroes.

*Cunningly*, slyly. *Held.....eye*, kept his bright eye fixed upon her. *She blushed*, her face became red on account of modesty. Page 115. *Flattering*, coaxing. *Your, fame.....earth*, you are famous throughout the world. *Enchantresses*, female magicians. *Circe*, a mythical sorceress daughter of Helios by the Oceanid Perse, and sister of Aietes, who lived in the island of Aeaea. *Fairy island*, magic island.

*Would that*, I wish that. *I were*, "were" in the subjunctive mood is used with all numbers and persons alike. *Sore temptation*, severe trial. *Tear*, rend ; harrow. *Thoughts.....heart*, heart rending ideas. *If.....so*, if I must help you. *Ointment*, a soft unctuous substance used for smearing. *Sprang*, issued. *Dreary fields of snow*, desolate ice-fields. *Anoint*, smear. *Harm*, injure. *Virtue*, efficacy. *Lasts*, holds out. *Cast*, throw. *Among their ranks*, in their midst. *A rank*, is a line of soldiers. *Crop*, harvest. *Mow*, reap. *The deadly.....itself*, the warriors that would spring up from the field would kill, each other. The whole is a sustained Metaphor.

*Fell on his knees*, knelt down. *Vase*, vessel. *Rejoiced*, were glad. Page 116. *Bathed*, washed himself. *From head to foot*, from top to toe ; throughout the whole length of his body. *Try*, put to the test. *Spell*, charm. *Try the spell*, test the efficacy of the charm. *Like.....bar*, straight as a rod of iron. *Inspite*, angrily. *Hewed at*, struck at. *Blade*, the cutting part of the sword. *Splinters*, small pieces. *Flew.....face*, broke into small pieces, which struck his face. *Lance*, spear. *Turned*, were blunted. *Stirred*, moved. *Enormous*, immense. *To claim*, to demand. *To claim Aietes' promise*, to ask Aietes to fulfil his word.

*Sent up*, despatched. *Telamon*, a brother of Peleus and father of Ajax the greater. He was one of the Argonauts, and a great friend of Heracles. *Aithalides*, a son of Hermes and the herald of Argonauts. He had received from his father the faculty of remembering everything. *Rage*, anger. *Fulfil your promise*, keep your word. *Blazing*, shining. *The serpent's teeth*, it was said that these were the teeth of the dragon that had not been sown by Cadmus at Thebes. *Let loose*, set free. *Fiery bulls*, the



warriors were crowded. *Blind.....fear*, they became mad and began to suspect, hate and fear one another. *Phantoms*, apparitions. *Fury.....phantoms*, the giants that had sprung from the earth became frantic. *Each ..... rest*, they began to attack one another. *Were never..... ground*, did not stop fighting till they killed one another. *Then the magic.....breast*, the ditches again opened and they were swallowed by the earth. *All*, adverb qualifying "Green."

*From his crag*, from the rock upon the Caucasus where he lay chained. *Lead.....fleece*, show me the way to the place where the fleece is kept. *Goes down*, sets. *The deadly crop*, the giants who sprang up from the earth. *Proof against*, successful in resisting. *Who is proof against all magic*, whom no magic can hurt. *Taking counsel*, consulting. *Every man to his home*, let every man go home. *Speak*, discuss.

*Doing*, work. *False*, treacherous. P. 120. *Brought shame upon*, put to shame. *If.....die*, I will put you to death if the Minnai obtain the fleece.

*Marched*, went. *Growling*, roaring. *Cheated of*, treacherously deprived of. *Meant*, intended. *Mock*, make fun of. *Cheat.....toil*, deprive them of that for which they had toiled. *Devouring one*, eating up one man. *The rest*, the others. *Held them back*, checked them. *While*, time; noun, adverbial, object of time.

*My end is come*, my death is near. *Found out*, discovered. *You he would kill*, 'you' is the object of "kill;" but is placed before its verb for the sake of emphasis. *He will not harm you &c.*, It was one of the rules of hospitality that a host should protect his guest. *Remember*, do not forget. *Fall here*, die here. *Fighting to the last man*, fighting till all of us are killed. *To* denotes limit.

P. 121. *You need not die*, it is not necessary for you to die. *Die*, is in the Infinitive Mood. *Flee*, run away. *Flee.....sea*, accompany us to our home beyond the sea. *How.....fleece*, the way by which we may obtain the fleece. *Can* denotes ability or power. *Else*, otherwise. *Why.....grove*, as you are the priestess of the grove, it is in your power to help us to win the fleece.

*Pressed round*, advanced close to her. *Vowed*, swore. *She should be their queen*, they would make her their



Church. He had risen to the rank of Prelate of the Order of St. Michael and St. George. He had embellished and decorated a fine chapel in St. Paul's. Each year it had been his custom to don his robes (amiably described by the Bishop as "my war-paint") and in a voice growing increasingly frail, read over the entire list of the illustrious names of the members of the Order. In the end he had himself been invested with the K.C.M.G. and now he was about to preach for the last time before his friends, the Duke and Duchess of York.

From Ireland, where he still strode about the country with his stick, the old man wrote letters and watched keenly the progress of his third son Bernard. He made him the trustee of his will. He sent him much advice. Almost alone of everyone in the world the Bishop was determined to believe that some great future was awaiting this boy who had begun life so restlessly and relentlessly in London.

And to Bernard, as he opened his father's letters in Palestine, the years rolled away and the old thunder came back: "Place your faith in God . . . you come of a family of gentlemen . . . remember that you must always be responsible for your actions . . . undiluted hell fire has done me a great deal of good . . . whatever you choose to do place God first in your life." To which Bernard added another phrase he was increasingly fond of using—"The Lord mighty in Battle".

There had been so much between them and so little expressed; in a strange way it seemed that their deep relationship had never been enough fulfilled, that each had a great deal more to give the other. But time and distance and the war and ambition had intervened. And now with that helpless terror and sudden tugging at the heart which one always feels at parting with someone who is dearly loved, Bernard began to realize that it was already too late.

There remained behind them the long stretch of photographic memories; his father striding down the street in Hobart, the white beard, the upright figure, the air of radiating benevolence, and again the same scene in Irish villages where the peasants used to rise and touch their caps to him . . . the readings in the study on Sunday afternoons . . . the robes and the sermons and the music. Everything seemed to have gone by so quickly. His father had been so much the apostle of gentleness and peace and only now, at the very end, it was becoming apparent to Bernard that he might have made the complement to that idea of life by protecting it, by making the Lord mighty in Battle, himself the chosen soldier of the Church militant.

Of late he had been growing very like his father. Quiet

*Warily*, cautiously. *Tore*, detached. *The four*, viz., Jason, Orpheus, Medeia and Absyrtus. *The Argo lay*, the Argo was moored or lay at anchor. *On high*, aloft. *Swift and steady*, rapidly and regularly. *If.....more*, if you like to see Mt. Pelion again. *Drove*, urged; impelled. *Grim*, stern; sullen. *Grim.....all*, all being grim and silent; i.e., sternly and silently. *Muffled oars*, oars wrapped in cloth. *Willow*, a kind of tree. *Groaned*, gave forth a low moaning sound. *The pine wood*, by Fig. Synecdoche, oars. *Till.....strokes*, so strong was the force with which they pulled at them, that the oars bent like slender twigs and a low, moaning sound issued from the *Argo* as it went onward.

*The dewy darkness*, the gloom caused by the fog. *Swirling*, whirling. *Castles*, fortified dwellings. *Sluicemouaths*, artificial passages for water. *Strange*, wonderful. *Marshes*, bogs. *Kine*, old Plural form of *Cow*. *Beds*, plots of ground. *Whistling reeds*, reeds through which the wind rustled. *Surge*, wave. *Bar*, a bank of sand, gravel, or other matter, forming a shoal at the mouth of a river. *The merry...alone*, the pleasant sound caused by the waves striking upon the bar. *Tumbled*, rolled on.

*Breakers*, waves that strike forcibly upon the rocks. *The Argo.....horse*, the *Argo* went forward on the breakers as swiftly as a horse runs upon the land. *Mettle*, spirit. *Honour*, fame; renown. *She knew.....herself*, she was aware that everything depended upon her swift flight, and that it was time for her to display all her spirit and thus make the heroes as well as herself, famous for all time to come.

P. 126. *Stopped*, ceased rowing. *Panting*, breathing heavily. *Slid*, glided; moved noiselessly. *The heroes...broad sea*, the heroes were quite exhausted and could row no more; so they rested on their oars and the *Argo* glided silently upon the unruffled surface of the broad sea.

*Pæan*, (Gr. *Paian*, a religious hymn, originally in honor of Apollo as a healing deity) a song of rejoicing and triumph. *The heroes' hearts rose high*, the heroes were cheered up. *Stoutly*, vigorously. *The darkness of the west*, the dark or unknown sea of the west.

they were full of complaints. They said he was high-handed, ridiculously punctilious and autocratic. The men were uneasy. They were far from smart on parade. Under the eye of that weird heterogeneous population of Alexandria their discipline was lax. There were too many men locked in the guard-house and there was too much slovenliness round the barracks. Morale was bad.

Nor, after the first terse exchange of reports, did things greatly improve. Montgomery was on the telephone to Brigadier Pile at Ismailia: "Can you come down? A difficulty has arisen." The Brigadier began to dread those telephone calls. He would fly to Alexandria and demand of Montgomery, "Well, what is it this time?"

Usually it was some hopelessly involved affair beginning with a zealous but wholly unorthodox order of Montgomery's and ending in a mess that was far beyond the range of the Army text-books. Montgomery was running his battalion as though he were the head of a family back at Bishop's Court. Young officers who were apt to give up their leisure hours to the more earthly and exotic pleasures of Alexandria were suddenly finding themselves on the mat in front of the Colonel, their private lives most rudely exposed and the most unusual punishments forced upon them. This, they contended, was a little too much. A soldier's private life was his own affair. Montgomery usually took the opposite line. A soldier, he argued, was a soldier the whole time. If a soldier's private habits made him unfit for duty then he must be corrected.

Montgomery was also seriously concerned with the incidence of venereal disease among his soldiers. How, he asked himself, can we ever be fit for war if we take casualties behind the line before we start? It was a problem that he was going to meet in a much bigger way later on.

His approach to it was strictly practical and realistic. First, as a long-range strategic remedy, you must build up a sense of morals against the evil. Secondly, as a short-range tactical object, you must act on the best practical expedients available.

The Alexandria of the early nineteen-thirties was not much different from what it is now: a maze of sweltering streets teeming with every nationality in the Levant. Most of the coloured population was gripped by a garish and amoral poverty and immersed in the sordid struggle to escape from it by any method they could. Backsheesh. Piastres. These were the governing inspirations of life. In commerce there were no holds barred. Sell—sell anything so long as you sell—bath-

*Bea* *r*her sin, he punished for her guilt. *Atone*, expiate. *Till*.....*full*, till she has committed all the crimes he is destined to do. *Vengeance*, revenge. *Waits for*, waits. *Vengeance*.....*sure*, she will be punished slowly but surely. *Show you the way*, lead you. *A weary way*, a tiresome journey. *To her*.....*your guilt*, though it will be a tiresome journey, you must go to her and she will purify you from your crime.

*Sentence*, judgment. *Of the oak*, pronounced by the bough. *Dark*, unknown or dangerous. *Bitter*, painful. *Years*.....*toil*, they had to undergo hard labour for a long time. *Years*, is subject to "*lay*." *Upbraided*, reproached. *We are her debtors still*, we still owe her a debt of gratitude. *Bit*.....*silence*, silently suppressed their anger. "*Biting the lips*" indicates vexation, or a struggle to suppress one's feelings. *Feared*.....*spells*, were afraid of the witch's charms.

*Calmer*, less stormy. *Thrust*, drove. *Sand-bank*, a ridge of sand near the surface of the water. *Course*, way. *Guiding*, direction. *Wastes*, wilderness; desert regions.

Page 130. *Whither*.....*tell*, it is impossible to say in what direction they went. *The Ister*, the old name of the Danube. *The Adriatic*, or the Gulf of Venice, a part of the Mediterranean. *The Alps*, a range of mountains, the highest in Europe, running in an unbroken line from the Mediterranean round the north west of Italy to the Eastern side of the Adriatic. They divide Italy from France, Switzerland and Austria. *The Red Indian Sea*, i.e., the Red Sea, which lies between Arabia and Africa. *The sunny lands*.....*grow*, may perhaps be the Hedjaz, Yemen, Palestine, Syria &c. *Aethiopia*, now called Abyssinia, an African country to the south of Egypt. *Libya*; see notes on page 36. *The burning sands*, the hot desert. *Sands*, (in the Plural) means a desert. *Over the hills*, crossing the hills. *Syrtes*, the two great gulfs in the Eastern half of the north coast of Africa. *Syrtis major*, or the greater Syrtis is the modern Gulf of Sidra, a wide and deep arm of the sea on the shores of Tripoli, exactly opposite to the Ionian Sea. *Syrtis minor*, or the Lesser is the modern Gulf of Gabes, between the coasts of Tunis and Tripoli. Both are proverbially dangerous, the greater Syrtis from its sandbanks and quicksands and the Lesser from its rocky shores, and its exposure to the north east winds,

Montgomery's authority? In the end a little quiet and reasonable talking settled the matter; the men were released, the order not enforced—and they bought the magazine.

For the regiment the incident was a little triumph in democracy. For Montgomery it was the sort of experience upon which the whole of his future career really depended. Outside of his own subject, the Army, he was no autocrat. Upon most of the issues of life he was as modest and willing to hear another man's point of view as anyone else. Although he did not drink or smoke he never forced others to conform with himself. They could stay up late, ignore the Bible, get drunk; in fact do anything they liked provided only this—they turned up fit for duty when they were needed. As soon as the Army was affected a rigid iron curtain came down in his mind. Here there must be no untidiness, no shilly-shallying with amateur ideas, no nonsense about the Army marching as slow as its slowest man and conforming to its weakest mind. Democracy in the Army—the stabilizing of things at the average level—this was out. There was a right and a wrong way to do things. Only the right way would do. Running an army and fighting a battle were matters as clearly defined and as technical as mending a bathroom tap. Montgomery felt like the plumber who arrives to find the amateur householder doing the wrong thing and making matters much worse.

It was because there were very few people in the world—still less in the Army—who were as sure of their skill as this that Montgomery ran into ninety per cent. of his quarrels. Very few people, especially at this time, were willing to believe that he was always right. He *said* he was always right. He behaved as if he thought he was always right. But was this not just an incredible conceit? And, anyway, could not the fellow occasionally behave with a little restraint instead of indulging in these outbursts of impatience and bluntness and ridiculous petulance?

For both sides the issue was extremely irritating. It was agony for Montgomery to admit that he was ever wrong—and he was wrong occasionally just as his mother before him had been sometimes wrong. Clearly whatever he had done in life he would have run into these brawls and misunderstandings. But in the Army it was especially so. The Army was still a repository of tradition. As at the turn of the century it still tended to attract the less brilliant minds of the nation. Many a mild drunk and incompetent had remained holding a commission after the war against the Kaiser. There had been no clean sweep through the regiments or the higher command.

of Europe, beyond the region of the north wind, and therefore not exposed to its cold blasts, *Pole-star*, a star near the pole of heavens. The present northern pole-star is the star Alpha, of the second magnitude, in the constellation of Ursa Majoris. *Cronian Sea*, appears to have been the Baltic or the White sea. *Would.....longer*, could not move forward. *Elbow*, the joint connecting the arm and the fore-arm. *Leaned*, supported. *Heart-broken*, depressed; dejected. *Gave.....death*, lost all hope of life. *Cheered.....more*, encouraged them once more. *Haul*, pull up with force; drag. *Mixed*, confused. *Broken*, disconnected. *Cimmerians*, a mythical people mentioned by Homer, who dwelt in the furthest west on the ocean. *Deep*, used for *deeply*. *The snow mountains*, mountains covered with snow. *Hermione*, the country inhabited by the Hermiones, an ancient German tribe, who were distinguished for their righteousness. P. 132. *Endure*, bear up. *The word.....past*, the most dangerous part of the journey is over. *Ruffle*, disturb; agitate. *I can.....water*, I see waves produced by the west wind. *Set the sail*, unfurl the sail. *Raise up.....sail*, sail on vigorously. *Face.....men*, meet manfully what takes place.

*Had perished*, had been destroyed. *Whelmed*, crushed. *The dread blue rocks*, the Symplegades, which were two moving rocks in the Black Sea. As soon as a ship had entered the narrow opening between them, the rocks toppled over and crushed her. *Fierce swell*, the deadly waves. *A swell*, is "a wave or billow, especially a succession of large waves." *Better so*, it would have been better for me if I had perished. *Wander*, roam. *Disgraced*, dishonored. *Guilt*, crime. *Of my princes*, "of" denotes agency. *Tracks me*, follows me; dogs my steps. *Woe.....woe*, I have to bear one misery after another. *Clutch*, seize; gripe. *Isle of Ierne*, *Ierne* or *Hibernia* was the name given by the ancient Greeks and Romans to Ireland; but sometimes the name was also applied to the whole of Britain. In the earliest times, the Greeks and the Romans had only a very imperfect knowledge of Britain. The Phœnicians who wanted to monopolize all commerce jealously kept secret any knowledge they obtained of the country, and spread evil reports, about it. *Cling to the land*, sail close to the land. *I shall wander &c*, the ancient Greeks believed that the earth was a flat circle, which was encom-

held near at hand in the vicinity of the Great Pyramid and Mena House.

Montgomery was not a notable lover of nature. Scenery to him became interesting when it was properly mapped and marked out with possible defensive and offensive areas. There is no record of his responding in any marked way to the limitless spaces and the moving colours of the desert when he first led his men out of Alexandria. Yet something there evoked his special interest, and now, as later, from the moment he set foot on the open sand he stepped forward with absolute assurance.

Probably the desert appealed to him as being the perfect arena for war. Here as nowhere else you could join in a straight-out test of skill. There were no civilians to become mixed up in the fighting, no extraneous political matters to cloud the issue. War in the desert was as technical, as clear-cut and decisive as you could hope to get it.

Once in the desert there was no slackness any longer in the battalion. Both Burnett-Stuart and Pile began to realize that they had here a field commander of exceptional briskness and ingenuity. More than this he had a way of enthusing his men once they were in action which gave him remarkable results.

As for Montgomery himself, he was learning fast. There was one notable exercise against a rival force which was defending the Pyramids. Up to this point Montgomery had been a little chary of night actions; they were untidy, the formations were apt to get out of touch. But now it was essential if he was going to eliminate the enemy that they should be surprised. De Guingand, his old student from York, had now joined him, and the two men planned this, their first mock battle in the desert, together. Aircraft were sent out to discover where the enemy headquarters was lying. The first trip was blank. The time limit for the exercise was running out, but they decided to try again. This time the airmen came back with the news that they had discovered the enemy in a wadi. At once Montgomery gave the order to advance. His men rushed upon the rival encampment in the darkness, and under the light of flares dropped from the air they mopped up the whole position.

It is hardly likely that either Montgomery or de Guingand could have felt the touch of history at that moment. Yet before ten years were out the things they learned on this night were going to engulf a million men in one of the decisive struggles of the world; and all this was to happen in much the same way and not fifty miles from that same valley of the desert.

which was torn into two parts by Heracles. The two mountains and afterwards the strait between them, came to be called the columns or Pillars of Hercules. *Deep's sea*. *Sardinia*, one of the large islands of the Mediterranean. *Ansonian islands*, a group of islands in the Mediterranean off Ansonia, a province of Italy. *Tyrrhenian shore*, Tyrrhenia (called Etruria by the Romans) a country in Central Italy. *A flowery island*, an island covered with flower-plants. *Still.....eve*, a calm, bright evening in summer. *Neared it*, approached it. *Near* is here a verb. *Started*, was alarmed. *The Sirens*, sea-nymphs who had the power of charming by their songs all who heard them. They are called daughters of Calliope or of Gaea). *Channel*, a passage of water. *Lost*, destroyed.

*Match against*, rival. *Charmed*, fascinated. *How... mén*, will it not be easier to charm human beings? P. 135. *Poop*, a deck raised at one the after part of the spar deck.

*Anthemousa*, the name given to the island of the Sirens. *Three fair maidens*, there is no mention of the number of the Sirens in Homer; but some of the later writers say they were two Aglaopheme and Thelxipeia; while the others say that there were three of them, Pisinné, Aglaopé and Thilxipeia. *Beds*, plots of ground. *Poppies*, a kind of plant from one of which opium is collected. *Asphodel*, perennial plant cultivated for the beauty of its flowers. It is of a yellow color hence "golden." *Sleeping*, dozing. *Silver voices*, soft and clear voices. *Stole over*, flew softly over. *Stole into the hearts of*, imperceptibly affected the hearts of.

*Stayed*, stopped in their course. *Gulls*, a kind of web footed sea fowl. *Lines*, rows. *White*, because of being composed of the gulls who are white in color. *Seal*, an aquatic carnivorous mammal. *Basking*, warming themselves in the sun. *Kept time with lazy heads*, nodded their heads lazily in response to the Siren's song. *Shoals*, large numbers. *Silver shoals of fish*, crowds of bright shining fish. *Hearken*, hear. *Broke.....calm*, agitated the calm bright surface of the sea. *Hushed his whistling*, seized to blow. *Shepherded*, guided; carried. *In mid blue*, in the centre of the sky. *The wind over head &c. &c.*, Fig. Metaphor; the wind being compared to a shepherd and the clouds to sheep.

*Fell*, dropped. *Drooped*, fell. *Closed their heavy eyes*.



end of the line. Sometimes, too, guests playing bridge would suddenly find themselves hustled out of the house because some important business was on hand. But Montgomery and his wife understood one another: the Army was sacred. All the rest of his life was hers.

Montgomery was always at his best when he had responsibility, and in many ways it softened him. It was at these times that that streak of patriarchal kindness came out most strongly. Because he loved a younger brother, he was now paying for the boy's education, and this was not an easy thing to do out of a lieutenant-colonel's pay.

In Alexandria, too, many of his dealings were happier. There was the matter of the ceremonial church parade, always an irksome thing with the soldier not overly devout and certainly not anxious to give up valuable leisure time in going to church. Montgomery ordered the ceremonial parade to be cancelled. Irritable men, he argued, were in no condition to meet their God. In future they could go in mufti as civilians. He himself would read the lesson. The service was at once a success, but the inevitable reprimand came down from headquarters in Cairo. Who had given Colonel Montgomery the arbitrary power to do away with the ceremonial parade? Montgomery fought it. And this time he won.

By the time he came to take his battalion off to Poona, in India, he was developing fast as a popular commander "once you got to know him". His troops were a little lacking in spit and polish and they made no great show on the parade ground. But they knew their weapons and they were resourceful on manœuvres. They could fight.

On the whole it was rather bad luck they were going to Poona. In Poona the authorities reckoned on drill. Field experience was well enough, but unless a soldier had his buttons polished and was able to present arms with a certain amount of dispatch he was not much good to the Army. The garrison commander at Poona took one look at Montgomery's men and decided they simply would not do. Clearly the whole battalion would have to be reformed and re-trained. They were lax in their drill. Where was the ceremonial discipline? How could you send men on parade like that?

Montgomery, on his side, took one look at the garrison commander and applied for three months' leave. Poona very definitely was no place for him and he had better get out of it quickly before even worse rows ensued. In all Montgomery's long story this is probably the one prudent personal retreat he ever carried out.

*Zens. Groaning*, moaning. *Turns*, revolves upon. *Quakes*, shakes. *The.....earthquakes*, earthquakes take place. *Cone*, conical peak. A *cone*, is a solid body, generated by the revolution of a triangle about one of its sides. *Ætna*, a volcanic mountain in Sicily. *Charybdis*, and *Scylla*, the names of 2 rocks between Italy and Sicily, and only a short distance from each other. In one of the rocks there was a cave, in which dwelt Scylla, a daughter of Crataies, a fearful monster, barking like a dog, with 2 feet, and 6 long necks and heads, each of which contained three rows of sharp teeth. The opposite rock which was much lower contained a fig tree under which sat Charybdis, who thrice every day swallowed the waters of the sea and thrice threw them up again. *Fearful coils of wave*, dreadful waves. *Most high*, as high as the mast. *Spun*, whirled. *Whirlpool*, an eddy of water ; a Gulf in which the water moves in a circle. *Sucked them in*, swallowed them. *The whirlpool...in*, they sank deeper in the eddy.

P. 139; *Struggled*, strove; labored. *The strait*, the strait of Messina which separates Sicily from Naples. *Stand*, are situated. *Peak*, highest point. *Wrapt round in*, covered with. *Climb*, scale. *Smooth*, polished. *Slippery*, not allowing a firm footing. *Polished*, made smooth. *Halfway up*, in the middle of the rock. *A misty..... west*, a misty cave was situated, with its mouth towards the west.

*Little.....whirlpool*, we shall not be in a better position if we free ourselves from the eddy ; Fig. Metaphor, the whirlpool being compared to a carnivorous animal. *Hag*, an ugly old woman ; a she-monster. *Whelp*, young of a dog ; a puppy. *Warned me of her*, advised me to be ware of her. *Hides*, remains concealed. *Cleft*, cave. *Fishes for*, catches. *The herds of Amphitrite*, sea animals. *Amphitrite*, is the Queen of the Sea. *We must... befalls*, we are doomed to perish under all circumstances.

*The depths*, the sea. *For love*, "for" denotes cause. *Gallant*, brave. *Diving on*, plunging in and out of the sea. P. 140. *Before.....beside her*, on all sides. *Passed.....hand*, gave it from one to another. *Stooped*, bent forward. *Whined*, gave forth a low barking sound. *Shrank into*, went back into. *Affrighted*, frightened. *Shrink*, recoil. *Coral caves*, caves built by the coral in-

leisure in life and he can enter into his fifties watching his family and his career advancing steadily and evenly upwards. At last the unquiet spirit seems to have found a place to rest.

Back from his cherry blossom tour of Japan, Montgomery took his next bound upward with extraordinary ease: full colonel, General Staff Officer of the First Grade, senior instructor at the Military Staff College at Quetta. It has taken him sixteen years, but now he has regained not only the rank but the same authority that he had at the ending of the war. This time his rank is permanent and solidly founded on experience and a widening reputation.

Family, servants, luggage and furniture moved up to Quetta together and his three great years of teaching begins. This time there are no impediments. He has formed his philosophy of war. He has dotted all the "i's" and crossed the "t's" of his theory of training.

With the blackboard behind him, the rows of student-officers sitting in front, he explains tirelessly over and over again; should there be another war you have only to follow these rules and the whole thing will be perfectly simple.

1. Morale. Study the individual soldier. Create the atmosphere of success. Morale means everything.

2. Simplify the problem. Sort out the essentials which must form the basis of all future action; and once you have decided upon them ensure that those essentials stand firm and are not swept away in a mass of detail. As a commander, lay down the general framework of what you want done—and then within that framework allow great latitude to your subordinates. Explain the plan to them carefully and fully and then stand back yourself and avoid being encumbered with unessentials.

3. You must learn how to pick a good team of subordinates, and once you have got them stick to them and trust them. All men are different and all generals are different; so are brigades and divisions. But if you study human nature you will be able to fit them into the right places.

4. Make yourself know what you want and have the courage and determination to get it. You must have the will to win: it is much more important to fight well when things are going badly than when things are going well. Remember that battles seldom go completely as they are planned. Great patience is required and you have to keep on until the other fellow cracks. If you worry you merely go mad.

There is an *ex-cathedra*, an almost Biblical quality about these and all the many other pronouncements. Be wise. Be

*Square*, an area of four sides with houses on each side. P. 144. *Cables*, long ropes. *Yard*, a long piece of timber suspended upon a mast. *Ship rights*, persons whose occupation is shipbuilding. *Twining*, twisting. *Hewing*, cleaving. *Plated brass*, sheets of brass covered with engravings. *Never.....died*, remained immutable. *Lannos*, the largest island in the *Ægean Sea*. It was sacred to Hephaestos who is said to have fallen here after being hurled from Olympus by Zeus. Hence the workshop of the god is sometimes placed in this island. *Guard*, keep watch at. *By night*, during the night. *Crafty*, is used here in its original sense of "skilful." *Pride*, glory. *Molten*, melted down and cast in the mould. *Grinding*, reducing to powder. *Turning the spindle*, spinning cotton. *Spindle*, is the apparatus for spinning cotton into thread. *Loom*, a frame or machine in which the weaver forms cloth out of thread. *Weaving at the loom*, forming the thread into cloth. P. 145. *Twinkled*, flashed at intervals. *Shuttles*, an instrument used by weavers for passing the thread of the woof from one side of the cloth to the other. *Quivering*, shaking. *Aspen*, a kind of plant.

*Walled round*, surrounded by walls. *Bore*, produced fruit. *Fed*, nourished. *Further end*, the remoter corner. *To water*, to supply with water.

*Sculptured*, ornamented with carved work. *Pledged*, drank the health of. *Leaned*, supported herself. *Welcomed*, greeted. P. 146. *Entreat*, beseech. *By Zeus*, 'by' denotes adjuration. *Let me go my way*, allow me to proceed. *Bear my burden*, endure my sorrows. *Have I.....shame*, have I not suffered sufficient punishment and shame already?

*What is.....prayer*, what does your request mean. *To find*, to seek. *Take*, carry. *Frowned*, showed signs of anger. *Décide*, judge her case.

*Whose fame...shore*, who have become famous throughout the world. *After.....before*, after suffering hardships which man never experienced before. *We went.....few*, when we started from home, we were a large company, but now our ranks are thinned. P. 147. *The world*, all men; Fig. Synecdoche, (the container for the contained). *May say*, 'may' denotes wish.

*Stood.....thought*, meditated deeply. *Had.....done*, if what has occurred would not have taken place. *It...Alcin-*

and there was a growing coterie of young men whom he deliberately sought out and befriended and pushed ahead in their careers. It was at this time that he warmly supported de Guingand's appointment to the Staff College at Camberley.

For the most part it was a sedentary life and, since teaching was a form of command, he talking, the others listening, he was happy. Even when disaster almost blotted out that whole community it passed him and his family by.

The Quetta earthquake came in May 1935 almost without warning. It was a sultry night. The horses in their stalls were nervous and restless. Montgomery and the British garrison were quartered outside the town and they heard in the distance a confused and unearthly roaring. After a while the noises stopped and again the night was ominously and unnaturally still. At 2 a.m. the earthquake suddenly struck with prodigious and terrifying force. The worst of it passed by the British encampment, but even here the ground was heaving and shuddering and people ran about in bewilderment in this monstrous insecurity, shouting reassurances and questions at one another. The real blow fell on the mud-hut native town of Quetta itself. As the city collapsed in smoke and dust awful cries and rumblings came out of the debris. Fires began and in the suddenness and completeness of the shock there was utter chaos among the Indian population. Streets disappeared into rubbish. Thousands of people were buried alive under the tumbling walls. Sewers burst, and when the morning came there was added to the appalling wreckage a violent stench and a thick acrid cloud of fumes that made men vomit.

The British soldiers mustered every ambulance and vehicle and climbed into the horrible rubble with their gas-masks on. But even so they could get no farther than the perimeter of the town. Amid so much smoke and dust the centre was in a complete confusion of dead and dying people pinned under the fallen roofs. For days and nights the survivors did what they could, but still they could make no headway among the wreckage and by now all human cries there were silenced. There was danger of disease. In the end the British cordoned off the whole city with barbed wire and left it, a vast mouldering grave, to be cleaned out by the scorching sun, the vultures and the jackals. Some thirty thousand people had died.

*Had ended*, had finished his songs. *They.....out*, all of them went out thinking upon what they had heard. *Sounding*, resounding ; echoing. *Porch*, portico ; portal. P. 151. *Had strewn them*, had placed for their use. *Rugs*, woollen fabrics used for the covering of a bed.

*Pleaded*, interceded. *Hard*, very much. *For Medeia*, in favor of ; on behalf of. *Suppliant*, humble petitioner. *Dare part man and wife*, venture to separate husband from wife. *After all*, after all which. *Endured*, suffered.

*Must remember what is right*, must keep justice in view. *Alter*, change. *Must.....name*, I should not belie my reputation. *Sturdy sense*, strong common sense. *Alcinous.....be*, I will be what I am known to be. *For all that*, in spite of all that. *Won him round*, induced him to comply with her wishes.

*Puzzling*, bewildering. *But, only. Meet*, come across. *Which.....offend*, whom can we offend with greater impunity. P. 152. *Stayed*, reminded *Errand*, mission. *What.....lady*, what are the instructions given to you about this lady ?

*Return without her*, cannot carry her with us. *What.....this*, what is your reply to this. *Bootless* ; fruitless. *They are.....errand*. they have come for a useless purpose. *Follow*, accompany. *Call down on you*, invoke on you the vengeance of. *Plans and wiles*, schemes and stratagems. *Why.....all*, why should you return home at all. *Face*, encounter. *Double all your toil*, go over all your dangers again. *Fair*, fertile. *There is.....like you*, there are many fertile countries round about here that require brave men like you. *Settle*, establish yourselves. *Let Aictes.....themselves*, let Airtetes and Colchis alone.

Page.153. *Roving*, wandering about. *The chief*, the officer in command of the party sent out to recapture Medeia. *Be it so then*, we agree to the proposal. *Plague*, calamity ; evil. *A plague.....us*, she has put us to a very great trouble. *The house*, the family. *Take.....wiser*, you may carry her with you since you do not listen to reason. *Rich presents*, costly gifts. *Breed*, produce ; cause.

*Came down upon*, attacked. *Swept*, carried. *Spent*, exhausted ; worn out. *Blinding rain*, rain which fell very heavily. *Gave up*, lost. *Touched the ground*,

On his brigadier's pay they could afford something pleasant in the way of a house, a car as well. 1937 was a marvellous year in their lives and they came home brimming with excitement at the long profitable days ahead.

There was an exuberant reunion with the boys, a whirl of shopping in London and the meeting with friends they had not seen for six years. Montgomery, with the three pips and the crown on his shoulder, his red tabs, looked over his brigade at Portsmouth. Something like five thousand men under his command now. Well, that was something. He would make them the finest fighting organization in England.

Close to Portsmouth they searched for and found their house. It was a little large for them, perhaps a little too resplendent and expensive, but they liked it, and anyway the future stretched ahead. It would be ideal for the boys as they grew up. Together they worked eagerly on the making of this, their first real home. Montgomery took on this new piece of staff work with exuberance: furniture, carpets, books, garden—all just a matter of smooth organization. By midsummer the place was almost ready for them. Separate bedrooms for the boys, spare rooms for guests, the reception rooms and the study.

While the final touches were being added, Montgomery was called away to manœuvres with his new brigade, an event he was looking forward to with enthusiasm since it would be an opportunity to put some of his ideas into practice.

It was decided that Betty, at the same time, should take her summer holidays with David at Burnham-on-Sea. Then the whole family would unite in the new home at Portsmouth.

On the beach one day Betty suddenly felt unwell. Something had bitten her on the leg—an insect or an animal of some kind; she could not afterwards remember what it was. By the time she got home to her rooms with David the infection seemed to have spread, and she felt weak and faint. A doctor was called. A few hours later Montgomery, on manœuvres, was informed that his wife had been taken to hospital at Burnham-on-Sea. It was nothing seriously to worry about—an insect bite; but his wife had been rather run down with the excitement and the activity of coming home to England and it was thought best to have her in the hospital for observation.

Montgomery hurried over. He found his wife much worse. The infection was spreading fast and nothing seemed capable of retarding it. By now the leg was badly swollen. A second opinion was called in. The maddening thing was that no one could determine just what insect had made the bite or what the nature of the poison. It spread steadily and implacably.

act as a servant. *To guard*, to watch upon. *Furnace*, an inclosed place for maintaining a hot fire. *Flames*, burns,

*Have water*, procure water. *Or*, else; otherwise. *Flesh and blood*, human beings. *Face fairly*, oppose without fear. *They say*, 'they' is used indefinitely, meaning people in general. *Vein*, artery. *Liquid fire*, fire in a liquid or watery state; (as distinguished from ordinary fire which is in a gaseous state). *I know.....placed*, I am not aware of the position of the nail. *Get... ..hands*, once get hold of it. *In peace*, without any danger.

*Bade.....shore*, wished to be left on the shore. *Row off again*, return to the ship. *Unwillingly*, reluctantly. *Were ashamed*, thought it beneath their dignity. *Trust her freely*, let her go confidently. *Windings*, turnings.

P. 157. *Left*, put; placed. *Strode back*, returned with long steps. *From head to heel*, all over his body. *The grass hissed and smoke*, a hissing sound and smoke arose from the grass. *Beneath his tread*, as he walked over it.

*Sweet*, pleasant. *Must die*, are sure to die. *Must* denotes certainty. *Must rust*, shall surely be consumed by rust. *Gnaws*, destroys; devours. *In their turn*, one by one. *But.....ever*, but it is more pleasant to acquire immortality. *Ichor*, on ethereal fluid that supplied the place of blood in the veins of the gods. *Bounding*, joyful.

*Held up*; displayed. *Flask*, bottle; phial. *Crystal*, a variety of glass, more perfect in its composition and manufacture than ordinary glass. *Enchantress*, witch. *Reward*, recompense. *His fame.....lands*, his fame is spread all over the world.

*False*, treacherous. *Simple*, credulous. P. 158. *Dip.....yourself*, make yourself cool by plunging into the sea. *Burn*, scorch. *Tender*, soft. *Secret*, hidden. *Drew out*, took out. *Instead*, instead of it. *Spouted forth*, rushed out. *Betrayed*, deceived. *Sank*, fell down. *Beneath*, through the influence of. *Clanked heavily*, rang with a loud sound. *Herel*, the hinder part of the foot. *Lava*, molten rocks that issue from a volcano in the form of a stream. *Water* is here a verb,=supply with water.

*Fell down*, knelt down. *Inhospitable*, unfriendly. *Adventures*, hazardous events. P. 159. *Purged*, purified. *Guilt*, crime; sin. *Rode away*, sailed away; by Fig. Metaphor, a ship is said to ride the sea. *All worn and tired*,





MRS. B. L. MONTGOMERY

*Still*, up to the present day. *By.....mean*, which signifies Page 162. *Feeble*, weak. *Grows young again*, is renovated. *Through bitter pains*, by means of a painful process.

*Do to, treat*. *Will.....again*, will be restored to youth and vigour. *Half the spell*, part of the charm. *Failed*, did not succeed. *Came to misery*, became miserable. *Cured*, healed

*Wronged her*, insulted her. *He was ungrateful to her &c.*, Jason and Medea were expelled from Iolcos by Acastus the son of Pelias, whereupon they fled to Corinth and lived there happily for some time till Jason deserted Medea in order to marry Glauce, daughter of the king of the country. Medea took a fearful revenge for this. She sent Glauce a poisoned garment, which burnt her to death when she put it on. Her father likewise perished in the flames. Medea also killed her children by Jason, viz., Mermerus and Pheres, and then fled to Athens in a chariot drawn by winged dragons. *Terrible*, fearful. *To speak*, to mention. *Stands*, exists. *Warning*, prohibition. *To seek.....persons*, to ask the help of the wicked. *Ends*, objects ; aims. *Use*, employ. *Adder*, a kind of snake,

*The hunting of the boar &c. Calydon*, is an ancient town of Aetolia said to have been founded by Aetolus or his son Calydon. *Meleager*, son of Œneus, king of Calydon, was one of the most famous Ætolian heroes of Calydon, and distinguished himself by his skill in throwing the javelin. He took part in the Argonautic expedition. On his return home, the fields of Calydon were laid waste by a monstrous boar, which Artemis had sent against the country, because Œneus once neglected to offer up a sacrifice to the goddess. No one could encounter the terrible animal till at length Meleager, with other heroes (Heracles, Theseus, and others too numerous to name), went out to hunt the boar, and slew the animal. *Heracles' twelve famous labours*, have already been mentioned. *The seven who fought against Thebes*; The following is a brief account of this war. *Œdipus*, son of Laius of Thebes and his wife Jocaste, unknowingly killed his own father (as it had been foretold that he would do) and then, having solved the riddle of the sphinx, he became king of Thebes and married his own mother by whom he had 2 sons,

## CHAPTER SIX

# MAD GENERAL

### I

FOR five months Montgomery was alone in the great empty house at Portsmouth. Except for his work he would not come out. Each day he performed his job—precisely, punctually, industriously. Then back to the house.

He had no friends. His sister Una and members of his family tried to argue with him, tried to distract him from his solitude. It was useless. Almost angrily he turned them aside. He wanted simply to be alone. He felt no desire to discuss what had happened with anybody. Even when he returned from Burnham-on-Sea to the manoeuvres he plunged at once into the military affairs on hand with the other officers. He said nothing of his loss, and in the face of that rigid outer indifference no one cared to offer sympathy.

If there is any mystery in Montgomery's life it probably lies here in these dark months in the winter of 1937. No one quite knows what he thought or did during the long hours when he was entirely alone in his house with his son. Clearly it was no ordinary struggle for reconciliation with life.

The marriage had lasted just ten years. He was not fifty. To a deeply religious mind the tragedy could only suggest one thing; the Lord had given and the Lord had taken away.

But this was an active and aggressive mind as well, and now it was opposed by something it had never admitted—utter defeat. There was nothing, absolutely nothing he could do about it.

The struggle dragged on for months. Referring to it later Montgomery said shortly, "My married life was absolute bliss. The death of my wife was a shattering blow from which I recovered with great difficulty, and very slowly."

In the end, as it had to be, the issues with himself were settled. Late in the spring of 1938 he emerged from his seclusion.

Outwardly it seemed as if he had simply chosen the obvious course: he would devote himself to the bringing up of his son and for the rest he would continue his career in the Army. Actually a much more fundamental change had taken place. The balance had gone out of his life. The old im-balance had

that has destroyed all the Centaurs. *Agony*, extreme pain. *Who...immortality*, who will become immortal in my place.

*Set free, liberated.* So Cheiron gave him his immortality &c., the following is an account of Cheiron's death:—"In his pursuit of the Erymanthian Boar (Labour IV.) Hercules came to the Centaur Pholus, who had received from Dionysus a cask of excellent wine. Heracles opened it, contrary to the wish of his host, and the delicious fragrance attracted the other Centaurs, who besieged the grotto of Pholus. Heracles drove them away; they fled to the house of Cheiron; and Hercules, eager in his pursuit, wounded Cheiron, his old friend, with one of his poisoned arrows; in consequence of which Cheiron died." (*Dr. Smith*), according to others, Cheiron, while looking at one of the arrows, dropped it on his foot and wounded himself. Zeus placed Cheiron among the stars. P. 164. *Grand and mild*, majestic and soft.

*In time*, as time went on. *Silver-tongued old man*, the old man who talked very sweetly. *Yet their fame..... day*, yet they also are famous up to the present time. *The ten year's siege of Troy*, Paris, a son of king Priam of Troy, carried off Helen, the wife of Menelaus; in consequence of which Troy was invaded by all the princes of Greece, including Achilles, Agamemnon and others, and reduced after a siege of 10 years. The story is mentioned in the *Iliad* of Homer one of the finest and grandest books in the world. *Achilles' quarrel with the kings*, in the tenth year of the siege, the Greeks captured two Trojan maidens, Chryseis and Briseis; the former of whom fell to the share of Agamemnon while Briseis was allotted to Achilles. On Agamemnon's repulsing Chryses, who had come to stipulate for the ransom of his daughter, Apollo visited the Greek army with a plague and Chryseis had to be given up. Agamemnon then threatened to wrest Briseis from Achilles, who gave her up at Athene's intercession but refused to take any part in the war. This is the quarrel alluded to in the Text. *Odysseus*, the Greek form of Ulysses the prince of the island of Ithaca, and one of the principal Greek heroes in the Trojan War. After the fall of Troy, he had to wander about for 20 years before reaching home. *Ithaca*, a small island in the Ionian Sea. *Penelope*, was the wife of Ulysses, during whose absence,

and to obtain a correct perspective we have to hurry quickly through them until he reaches that point in 1942 when his course at last is definitely set.

## 2

In the 9th Brigade at the beginning of 1938 the soldiers began to feel an iron hand. On Salisbury Plain they swept everything before them.

In one manœuvre after another they were streets ahead of everyone else. Once again Montgomery's men made no great show on parade. There were arguments and difficulties. But in the field they raced in front of their rivals with many unexpected tactics and a most unusual enthusiasm for those peaceful days.

The Brigadier was seldom with the staff and usually with the soldiers. He had absorbed utterly his own teaching that "the soldier is the first weapon of war", and he entered into their lives with a curious persistence. The incident over the Welfare Fund is typical. The funds in the brigade were low, and Montgomery wanted money to provide his men with sports materials and other facilities. Opportunely the promoter of a fair approached him with an offer of £1000 for the rental of the Clarence Football Ground at Portsmouth for ten days over the August Bank Holiday period.

The ground was Government property, normally used by the military. Montgomery had no objection to giving it up for ten days at this rate of payment. He was urged by the Mayor to put the price up to £2000, and eventually a compromise at £1500 was agreed upon. But when the project was laid before the full Portsmouth City Council for approval it was turned down. Montgomery returned to the attack. If the Council would agree he would cut them in on the deal: they should have £500 for local charities. Upon this the Council changed its mind, the ground was let and the money paid over.

All these happy negotiations were put through without particular reference to Whitehall. It was not until everything was settled that the War Office learned with pained surprise that one of its junior brigadiers was going around letting Crown property—letting it, moreover, for the purpose of a common Bank Holiday fair. At once a letter was dispatched to Portsmouth. The proceedings were forbidden. In any event, if money had been collected for the rental of the ground it

tokens of his success ; whereupon Ægeus, thinking that his son was lost, threw himself into the sea. Theseus then ascended the throne in the midst of universal applause. His next celebrated adventure was the expedition against the Amazons. The Amazons in their turn invaded Attica and penetrated into Athens itself, and the final battle in which Theseus overcame them was fought in the very midst of the city. He eventually retired to the court of Lycomedes, the king of Scyros, who carried him to a high rock under the pretext of showing him the extent of his dominions and threw him down a deep precipice. In 469 B. C. the bones of Theseus were discovered by Cimon in Scyros and brought to Athens where they were deposited in a temple (the *Theseum*) erected in honor of the hero. A festival in his honor was celebrated on the 8th day of each month. *But*, except; a Preposition. *Aithra*.....*him*, Aithra was cheerful only when she saw him. *Forgotten*, abandoned. *To go up to*, to climb. *Poseidon*, called *Neptune*, by the Romans, was the god of the Mediterranean Sea. *Sit* is in the Infinitive Mood. Object of "*used*." *Looking out across the bay*, casting her looks all over the bay and on to its opposite shore. "*The bay*" is the Saronic Gulf, a part of the Ægean Sea lying between Attica and Argolis and containing the islands of Ægina and Salamis. *Methana*, a town and peninsula in Argolis, lying between the towns of Troezen and Epidaurus. *Ægina*, a rocky island of volcanic origin, situated in the middle of the Saronic Gulf about 200 Stadia (or 23 miles nearly ; a *stadium*=606 feet 9 inches) in circumference. *Purple peaks*, mountain tops that looked purple because of the mass of mineral substances lying upon them. The minerals ejected in volcanic eruptions are red colored. *Attic shore beyond*, Attica which lay on the other side of the Gulf. *Attica*, a division of Greece, has the form of a triangle, two sides of which are washed by the Ægean Sea. *Looking...beyond*, the meaning is that the range of her vision embraced the Saronic Bay, the peninsula of Methana, the peaks of Ægina and Attica situated on the farther coast. *Thickets*, groups of trees or shrubs. *Temple Yard*, the open ground enclosed by the walls of the temple. *Plane tree*, a kind of large tree much found in North America. *Beneath whose shade*, under which. *Arbutus*, the straw-berry tree. *Lentisk*, a tree growing on islands and coasts of the Mediterranean;

Basically the two professionals were in agreement. And now not only Wavell but a few of the really outstanding men in the Army, like Alan Brooke, began to see a very likely horse and a very useful cat-burglar in the ardent trainer of the excellent 9th Brigade.

In Palestine the Jewish-Arab brawl was flaring strongly. Two divisions were to be sent out under the command of General Haining. One of the divisions was to go to an energetic little Irishman named Richard O'Connor. The other, the 8th Division, fell to Montgomery. It was a tremendous leap ahead. Wavell commented upon the new major-general from Portsmouth: "He will do extremely well".

Hurriedly Montgomery made his final arrangements for his son. For the last time he closed up the lonely house, and with his eyes fixed firmly ahead as though enclosed in blinkers he set sail for Palestine.

## 3

This was the nearest thing yet to war. The situation had got much worse in Palestine since Montgomery was last there in 1931. That rubbery declaration of Balfour's which at once defined and failed to define the British attitude to Palestine was bearing its rich ripe rotten fruit. The problem then was as simple and as insoluble as it is now—two people wanted the same small poor country and there was not enough room for both of them. For years the number of Jews legally entering the country on a fixed quota had been exasperating the Arabs already in possession. The Arabs had dwelt a long time in the hot sun. The Jews coming from Central Europe were educated, efficient, ruthlessly determined and some of them were fired with a holy zeal. They had no difficulty in creating and gaining markets; in ousting the Arabs from the best of the trade. More than this: they were developing a talent for the land. They farmed exceedingly well, they worked hard. Their communal groups were models in social behaviour to all mankind. They began to skim the cream of the dollars from the tourist.

Divided against themselves, relatively lazy and inefficient, the Arabs looked on in dark and helpless anger. They saw the whole of their land slipping away to the invader, and their protests took the form of unreasoning and hot-headed violence. The sniping began, the brawls by night. It was the outburst of the child who feels he is being treated unjustly. Unable to argue their case in high political courts they shot at the first Jew that came along. And the Jews rose to defend themselves.

Said to himself, thought. *The day shall come, I will lift*; shall with the 2nd and the 3rd persons and *will* with the first denote promise or certainty. *In order to grow*, with a view to growing. *Wrestling*, the art of grappling together in which each man tries to overthrow his adversary. *Boxing*, the act of fighting with the fist. *Hurling*, a certain game of ball. *Taming horses*, i.e., reducing them from a wild to a domestic state. *Coursing*, chasing; pursuing. *Phaia the wild sow of Crommyon*, Phaia was the name of a sow which lived at Crommyon, in Megaris, and which ravaged the neighborhood and was slain by Theseus. *Crommyon*, was a town in Megaris on the Saronic Gulf, afterwards belonging to Corinth; celebrated in mythology on account of its wild sow Phaia.

*Theseus...you are*, if you do not lift the stone this day, Theseus, you will never know your origin and the mission you have to perform. *Tugged*, pulled. *His...him*, he took heart; he was encouraged. *If...body*, even if I die. *It shall up*, I will lift it up. *Up* is here used as a Verb. *Rolled over*, turned. *With a shout*, with an exclamation of joy.

P. 168. *Bronze*, a mixed metal composed of copper, zinc and tin, which is used in making statues, common swords &c. *Hilt*, handle. *Sandal*, a kind of shoe consisting of soles fastened to the foot. *Burst through*, rushed through. *Leapt*, came leaping. *Holding them &c.* so that she could see them.

*Wondering*, struck with surprise. It qualifies *Theseus* through the Verb *stood* to which it is complement. *Hide .....bosom*, conceal them in your clothes which you wear upon the breast.

*Sacred* holy. *Outside.....wall*, out of the temple. *At our feet*, lying at the base of the mountains. *Bred*, brought up. It is the Past Participle of *breed*. *Where .....bred*, is an Adjective clause, qualifying. "*Træzene*." The student should note that clauses (i) introduced by *where* and preceded by some noun of place; (ii) introduced by *when* and preceded by some noun of time and (iii) introduced by *why* and preceded by some noun of cause or reason, are Adjective clauses. *But.....land*, only a small country. *But* is an adverb, meaning *only*. *Barren*, unproductive. *Rocky*, covered with rocks. *Looks towards*, faces. *Bleak*, desolate. *Beyond*, i.e., on the other side of of the Gulf. *Where.....dwell*, which is inhabited by the



foundly unprejudiced in their quarrel. Anyone who illegally used a gun was an enemy, to be arrested and imprisoned. All the rest lay with the politicians.

The 8th Division was assigned to the northern half of the country and Montgomery set up his headquarters at Haifa by the sea. He knew the country well. He knew exactly what he wanted to do. And he controlled his division as though, in fact, it was in a state of open war. On his flank he had an equally resourceful commander in O'Connor, and the situation altered from the moment of their arrival. Each outburst from either Jew or Arab was followed by immediate reprisal. An efficient intelligence system began to operate. Villages being used as headquarters by insurgent tribesmen were suddenly surrounded in the night, their houses searched and burned and their illegal stores of arms and rifles seized. Murderers were promptly shot. It was the surgical method, which was probably the least bloody in the long run. For the first time in many a day Palestine came under a strong hand. Trade began to flow again. The basic problem was still entirely unsolved but the rebels were sucked dry, and at least, if general war should come, Palestine would from now on remain a safe base of operations for the Army and the Fleet.

In the midst of these labours Montgomery suddenly fell critically ill for the first time in many years. A spot developed on his lung. Coming on top of his war wound this was an illness that refused to respond to treatment. His temperature stayed alarmingly high. He grew worse. In Palestine nothing more could be done for him and for the second time in a quarter of a century it was expected he would die.

At last, in the summer of 1939, a helpless cot case, he was flown down to Port Said in the care of two nursing sisters and an orderly. He was very feeble and quite unable to stir from his bed. On a Sunday night he was carried on board a P. and O. liner headed for England. Many tourists lined the decks to watch the strange arrival of the sick man. He was so tightly swathed in blankets on his stretcher that he appeared to be in a strait-jacket. As he reached the deck under so many curious eyes Montgomery heard one tourist say to another: "Who is he? What are they making all this fuss about?"

And the answer: "Haven't you heard? It's a mad general. They have to use a strait-jacket to keep him down."

It was a statement with which many people in the Army would have already at this time have found themselves in warm agreement.

At the height of his illness in Palestine Montgomery had

town of the same name upon it. *Hymettus* and *Pentelicus* are mountains in Attica. *Athens*, the capital of Attica, at present of Græce. It was the resort of learned men of all countries in ancient times. *All.....round*, these were Mounts *Lycabettus* in the north east of the city; and the *Areopagus*, the *Pnyx*, the *Museum* and the *Hill of the Nymphs* within the city. *Midway.....sea*, in the middle of the bay; equidistant from Athens and Trœzene. *For purple.....sea*, because his vision was obstructed by the island of *Ægina* which lay in the sea midway between Athens and Trœzene.

*Grew great*, began to swell. *His.....him*, he was inspired with ambition. *If I were*, could I become. This form of Subjunctive Mood is used to denote condition with uncertainty or doubt; e. g. the full meaning of the sentence here is "If I could become king of such a land *but it is not certain whether I can or not.*" *Well.....might*, with a wisely beneficent but strong hand. *That* denotes purpose. *Shepherd*, (by Fig. Metaphor), guardian, protector. [*Metaphor* is a compressed simile, i.e., a comparison between two objects, without the sign of comparison] Here a king is compared to a shepherd : just as a shepherd tends and guards his flock, so does a king support and protect his people.

*Ægeus king of Athens*, was the father of Theseus, whom he begot by his wife Aithra, daughter of Pittheus of Trœzene. *Pallas' hill*, a hill in Athens sacred to the goddess Pallas or Athena. In ancient times the Athenian kings had their residence or palace upon it. *Pledge*, token. *Take*, accept.

*Fated*, destined. *Must be*, must come to pass. *Grief.....grieve*, sorrow has no terror for those whose life has been spent in sorrow. *Full.....womanhood*, my youth and womanhood have been spent in sorrow. *For*, on account of. *Bellerophon*, son of Glaucus, king of Corinth, was originally called Hipponous, and received the name Bellerophon from the circumstance of his having killed his brother Bellerus. To purify himself from the sin he fled to the court of Proetus, whose wife fell in love with him, and on his rejecting her offers, accused him of having made improper proposals to her. Proetus, thereupon, sent him to Iobates king of Lycia with the request that the latter would kill Bellerophon. Iobates sent him to kill.

Chamberlainism was dying hard. A virtue was found for Munich: it had given us "breathing space" (though not perhaps much space for those valuable Czech divisions which had been flung into Hitler's lap). A few serious officers like de Guingand had gone to Germany (at their own expense) and had come back appalled by what they had seen of the weight and efficiency of the Army there.

In England it is probably fair to say that the people were ahead of both their Government and their Army. They saw or sensed the coming cataclysm, and this time there was added to this realization a nameless dread of what war would mean. It was a dread that clogged coherent thought and, along with every other Government department, the War Office seemed to be gripped by a fatalistic apathy.

In tanks and guns and vehicles of every kind it was a repetition of the sad vicious story of 1914. For years professionals like Montgomery had raged and railed but none of them were at the top yet. In every regiment there were officers who had hung on simply because "soldiering was the thing to do". The reorganization and the clean sweep that might have been done twenty years earlier had never happened. To do the Higher Command justice, they had never been given the money to rebuild on a sound footing. But in some ways this small and hopelessly out-of-date professional army was worse even than a disorganized and enthusiastic citizen army might have been; when the money was poured at its feet there was no good machinery for using it and few who had the moral courage to break through the red tape and adopt innovations. The new system had to be encrusted on the old. Nearly everything that had happened in 1914 was about to happen again, with just this exception. By some extraordinary turn of fate three of the very ablest professional officers were actually in command of striking forces when the zero hour arrived.

Neither Brooke nor Alexander nor Montgomery was yet high enough to alter the broad tide of events. But at least they were senior enough to get to France together with a measure of tactical control. When six more years passed, when many others with equal and better chances had vanished from active service, those three were still going to be found together—at the top. After all the justifiable criticism of the Army is made it is only fair to remember that brilliant men did eventually emerge, and no fool or laggard held a high command in an active theatre for very long.

The war had already begun when Montgomery got command of the 3rd Division in October. There was time for

were originally ants who were metamorphosed into men, but still retained their red colour in the hair. *Troy* or *Ilium*, was an ancient city in the north-west of Asia Minor, near Mount Ida, the capital of a kingdom of the same name. *Sack*, pillage. *Set me free*, liberate me. *Thralldom*, slavery. *Tale*, account. *Fame*, glory. *The sons of the swan.....tale of Theseus' fame*, The story alluded to in these passages runs as follows:—Helen, the daughter of Zeus and Leda and sister of Castor and Pollux [see note on “sons of the swan” above] was of surpassing beauty. While yet a girl, she was carried off by Theseus and Pirithous to Attica [see “Theseus” *supra*]. When Theseus was absent in Hades, Castor and Pollux undertook an expedition to Attica, to liberate their sister. They took Athens, delivered Helen, and captured Aithra, mother of Theseus, whom they carried as a slave to Sparta. On her return home, Helen was married to Menelaus; but subsequently she was seduced and together with Aithra, carried off to Troy by Paris, son of Priam of Troy. This led to the celebrated Trojan war, which lasted for ten years and ended in the capture and sack of Troy by the Greeks and the destruction of all the principal Trojans. Helen was recovered, and Aithra set free, by her grandson Demophon. *Beyond that*, after my delivery from Trojan thralldom. *I see new sorrows*, I dream that new sorrows shall befall me. *Bear*, endure.

---

## PART II.—HOW THESEUS SLEW THE DEVOURERS OF MEN.

P. 172. *So*, i.e., after his mother had gone into the temple. *Thought of*, proposed. *Harbour*, sea-port. *Hiring*, engaging. *The bay*, the Saronic Gulf. *That*, i.e., sailing by a swift ship. *That* is here a Demonstrative Pronoun. *Too.....him*, not swift enough to suit his purpose. *Longed for*, eagerly desired. *To fly*, in order to fly; a Gerundial Infinitive denoting purpose. *A while*, a short time; *while* is here a noun. *His heart.....him*, his courage began to fail. *Said.....himself*, thought. *What if*, i.e., what should I do if. *If my father have*, this is the proper form of the Subjunctive, denoting condition with uncertainty. *About*, near. *Receive*, welcome. *Will* denotes simple futurity. *Since*, is a Preposition, governing the clause “I was born.” *Welcome*, receive:

in the quality and quantity of the weapons we were far below the German standard. It was the purest sophistry to say that the B.E.F. was the best equipped force Britain had ever sent out. We had no tank the equal of the Mark III, no gun as deadly and versatile as the 88, nor had we a dive-bomber. But at this stage of the game it was the fashion to boast; boasting kept up morale and impressed one's friends like the Americans.

It was early decided that when Hitler struck, the B.E.F. should wheel into Belgium. This time the Channel ports had to be guaranteed, and Montgomery's division was chosen to perform a preparatory exercise. Under the eye of the Army commanders it wheeled backwards into France. It was a successful and impressive operation carried out by night. Some of the observers felt that the divisional general made a little too much of himself. He seemed to be forever hurrying about the place. He even attached a coloured light to his car, and when he was asked what it was for he replied with aplomb: "So that the soldiers will know I am there".

Then the spring and the invasion of Norway. The British expedition to Norway; the exclamations in London and Paris, "The best thing that could have happened. This time Hitler really has stuck his head out. How can he succeed without command of the seas?" And, immediately afterwards, the horrible awakening; the first of the British evacuations, and the bitter evidence that the British soldiers had been hastily and ill equipped, that they had been out-manœuvred as though they were a mob of leaderless amateurs. And now, before even the realization of all this could sink in, the first monstrous and bewildering shock of the assault on the mainland in Europe.

On May 10th, Montgomery's 3rd Division was in motion. For months they had been trained in quick movement and now they streamed across the border into Belgium. On the following day they made contact, and the long shambles back to Dunkirk began. For twenty days the division kept formation in an arena where everything seemed to have gone mad—no rest, no time for anything except retreat. One after another the pathetic weapons crumbled up under an onslaught of unthinkable power. The air assault alone seemed enough to paralyse all action. In this awful emergency not only were men dying at the front, but a violent reshuffle was going on among their most senior officers in the rear. Brooke was singled out for higher promotion as one of the few clear brains in this madhouse. Alexander had the First Corps. The Second Corps was now temporarily handed over to Montgomery,

*Lowland*, the country lying at the foot of the mountains. *Grew*, became. *Damp*, moist. *Clouds.....head*, clouds struck his head producing a sensation of dampness in him. *Damp* is an Adjective, used as an Adverb modifying "drove."

*Went up.....ever*, continued to ascend for a long time. *For ever*, is an example of Fig. *Hyperbole* or *Exaggeration* (a figure of speech in which things are spoken of as being greater or less, better or worse, than what they actually are; e.g. "They were swifter than eagles. P. 174. *The spider's web of glens*, the valleys that spread out like the web of a spider; Fig. *Metaphor*. *Till he could.....west*, till he reached high enough to command a view of the surrounding gulfs. These gulfs were, on the north the Corinthian Gulf; on the south the Laconic Gulf; and on the east the Saronic and Argolic Gulfs. *Cracks*, crevices; fissures. It is in apposition to *glens*. *Half-choked*, partially closed. *Dreary*, dismal; gloomy. *Down*, low herbage.

*Over.....go*, he must cross that down. *Right or left*, these words should be parsed as Adverbs of place, modifying "Was." *Toiled on*, proceeded with a great deal of difficulty; struggled on. *Bog*, marsh. *Brake*, a place overgrown with shrubs and brambles. *Pile*, heap.

*Wrapt in*, covered with. *Served him for*, answered the purpose of. *Grinned*, looked out horribly. *Tied*, fastened. *White*=whitely; an Adverb. *Glens*, valleys. *Rattled*, resounded.

*Fair fly*, Periphetes calls Theseus by this name because the fly is the natural food of the spider. *And.....web*, this is the question put to Theseus by Periphetes. *Steadily*, without flinching; boldly. *Made no answer*, remained silent. *Has.....me*, shall I have to undertake a hazardous task so soon. *Louder than ever*, louder than formerly. *Finds.....out*, goes out. *Sucks*, draws with the mouth the blood of. *Feast upon*, eat. *Of no use*, useless. *It is.....away*, you cannot fly from me. *Cunning*, ingenuous. *Hephaistos*, (called *Vulcan* by the Romans) is the god of fire, the son of Zeus and Hera. In ancient poetry, he is described as a cunning artist, the workman of the gods. P. 175. *Clefts*, cracks. *Through.....home*, through which no man can return home.

## TELEPHONE FROM WHITEHALL

## I

ON the collapse of the British Army at Dunkirk, Brooke was made Commander-in-Chief of the Home Forces, General Auchinleck was given the Southern Command and Montgomery (largely as a result of Brooke's report upon him) was promoted to the Fifth Corps. He was still a long way down the scale, but at least he had charge of one of the vital sectors where the Germans were expected to land.

This was in September 1940, and a frenzy of digging was sweeping southern England. In an almost religious fervour gangs of men were throwing up earthworks, running trenches along the valleys and the hillsides, excavating anti-tank ditches, making air-raid shelters. Presently every village cross-roads began to sprout dragons' teeth, and millions of yards of barbed wire spread like an evil and surrealist tropical creeper across the countryside. One after another the village tea-shops and the local banks began to disappear behind piles of sand-bags. In tens of thousands mines were sown along the beaches, and a great tide of pillboxes, gun emplacements and barbed-wire entanglements began to spread inland up the cliff-face and across the counties of Kent and Sussex and Hampshire. The Home Guard arose; elderly country gentlemen got down their shot-guns and prepared to defend their land with great fierceness—as they undoubtedly would have done had the emergency arisen.

As usual Montgomery found himself in disagreement with a great deal of this. He said that everybody seemed to have become "concrete-minded". He had no belief in trenches or earthworks or permanent fixed lines of defence. The battle, he argued, was a fluid thing. Mobility was the vital factor in defence. Once men were stuck in garrisons they lost their initiative and they grew over-optimistic about the false security of their trenches. You had to come out and meet the enemy: all defence must be conducted offensively and a commander must have freedom of movement to strike at the best places at the right time. It was fatal to sit still and let the enemy pile up reserves against you. And then outflank you.

He stopped the digging within his command. He began to

of the club and the bearskin which he carried, they mistook for Periphetes. *Dived*, plunged. *Coots*, a species of waterfowl, frequenting lakes and other still waters. *Vanished*, disappeared. *Strange fancies*, whims; fantastic or capricious ideas. *Folk*, people. *Who run away*, since they or because they run away. The Relative Pronoun here denotes cause. *From strangers*, at the sight of or on seeing strangers. *Have no...dance*, dance without any accompanying music. *Tired*, wearied. *Dusty*, covered with dust. *Thought.....them*, forgot them; gave them no more thought. P. 177. *Pool*, fountain; spring. *Sang him to sleep*, lulled him to sleep. *To* denotes effect. The meaning is, "he was so tired that the tinkling of the water appeared to him to be soft music, the effect of which, was to make him sleep." *Tinkled down.....stone*, made a tinkling sound as it fell in drops from one stone to another. *To tinkle* is to make a sharp sound, as by striking on metal. *As*, is a Subordinative Conjunction denoting manner: .

*Whispering*, Verbal Noun. *Peeping*, looking. *Across the fountain*, from the other side of the pool. *Cushions*, pillows.

*He sleeps.....crows*, he is dead. *Leapt across the pool*, came jumping to the other side of the spring. *How.....club-bearer*, Direct Object of "told;" the Indirect being "them". *In peace*, peacefully. *Not.....dance*, fearlessly dance to music. *Match*, equal. *Has.....match*, has found one who was equal to him in strength.

*Brought him*, brought for him. *Begged*, requested. *To stay*, to remain as their guest. *I have a great work to do*, here *work* may be parsed as the object of the Transitive verb "have" and "to do" as the Complement (objective) of the same verb; or "to do" as the object of "have" and "work" as the object of "to do". P. 178. *Be away*, go away. *Must* denotes duty or necessity. *That* denotes purpose, and *may*, possibility. *Will you go*, is it your wish (or intention) to go. In Interrogative sentences. *Will* with the *second* Person and *Shall* with the *first* and the *Third* asks the wish, intention or permission of the person spoken to. *None travel*, no body journeys. Properly speaking, *none*, as a compound of *no* and *one*, should be followed by a singular verb; but some writers use it indiscriminately. *Way*, is the



would wait nervously for their interviews outside his room, and many of them came out later on with a sigh of relief. It was a headquarters without relaxation, and the place was dominated by the chilling and ascetic habits of the General.

Each morning soon after dawn his tea was brought to him. Then for something like half an hour or even longer he lay in bed thinking, planning each minute of the day. Every hour went by on a set routine: morning conference, correspondence (he liked to write in his own hand with a fountain-pen), interviews, round of inspections, evening conference, dinner in the mess, bed at nine-thirty to write his diary, read a little, think, and then to sleep.

Sleep, like everything else, was under command and subject to immediate obedience. He ordered himself to sleep, and sleep he did.

In his presence no one lit a cigarette unless they were expressly given permission. When he spoke the room fell silent. No one coughed, if he could avoid it. If, when addressing a group of officers, he found them unable to control their colds, he paused, ordered a three-minute interval for coughing, and the Staff sat through the rest of the talk in agony lest they should transgress again. Occasionally when a junior officer found himself unable to block a cough, he felt that cold grey eye on him, an appalling silence filled the room—and if he had any sense he rose with a mumbled apology and left.

There were sackings in the Fifth Corps: cold, electric and sudden dismissals. You were out. Degraded, expelled and banished—and there was no appeal. "I am sorry", the General would say. "But you are of no use to me. None whatever." That was the finish.

Very soon it became painfully apparent that the General was a fanatic for physical training. Elderly colonels who rarely stirred outside an office were appalled to receive orders instructing them to appear in suitable raiment on the parade ground, where they were obliged to go through the undignified procedure of marching at the double and jumping over hurdles. No one on the staff escaped. Often enough these proceedings took place at the crack of dawn. It was outrageous, it was ridiculous, it was Fascist. Inwardly and to one another they protested hotly. Montgomery fixed them with his cold eye and reminded them it was much worse for the men.

It was indeed. One division under his command marched forty miles in eighteen hours—and this at the end of ten days' manœuvring and route marching. Another unit was marched fifty-six miles in fifty hours. In frightful weather, without food

*milk*, suckled it. *Challenges*, defies. *Over-throws*, defeats. *Palace-court*, the courtyard of his palace.

*Frowned*, looked sternly. *Ill-ruled*, misgoverned. *Adventures*, subject to the verb "seem" understood. *Tried*, undertaken. *I am...it*, I am to be its king. *Right it*, set it right. *My royal sceptre*, the token of my royalty. A *sceptre* is a staff borne by kings in token of authority. *Clung round him*, closely surrounded him. *Entreated*, begged.

*On...nevertheless*, still he continued his journey. *Both the seas*, viz., the Corinthian and Laconic gulfs. *Citadel*, fortress. *The Citadel of Corinth*, Corinth is a city on the Isthmus of Corinth. In the north and south the country is mountainous but in the centre, it is a plain with a solitary and steep mountain rising from it. The city itself was built on the north side of the mountain. *Towering*, rising. *Past swiftly*, went rapidly. *His heart burned*, he eagerly desired. *Met*, came across. *Where*, a Relative Adverb, having for its Antecedent "Pine-wood." *The road.....rocks*, high rocks bounded the road on both sides. *By the wayside*, beside the way. *For a club*, to be used as a club. *For*=in place of. *Across his knees*, sideways on his knees. P. 180. *Hung*, were suspended. *Shouted to*, cried aloud to. *Holla*, an Interjection, drawing attention of the person addressed. *Valiant*, brave.

*Leapt to his feet*, rose up suddenly. *Pointing to*, indicating with his finger. *Larder*, store-room. *Lately*, recently. *My larder.....lately*, of late, the store of my provisions has diminished. *Rushed on*, attacked. *Lifting*, raising.

*Hammered together*, struck at each other with their clubs, (as a smith hammers at iron). *Greenwoods*, woods covered with green vegetation. *Till.....rang*, till the woods resounded to the noise. *Tougher*, more difficult to be broken. *The metal.....pine*, the club of Theseus (which was made of bronze) was stronger than that of the robber (which was made of pine); Fig. Synecdoche, the material (metal and pine) being used for the thing made (clubs). *Right across*, just through the middle. *The bronze*, the club of Theseus. *Came down upon*, struck. *Heaved up*, raised. *Stroke*, blow. *Heaved.....stroke*, raised the club for another blow. *Smote down*, struck. *Knelt.....back*, bent over his back. This shews that the



Ger. *Malan*, to grind) in pieces. *Trembling*, shaking with fear; it qualifies *Sciron*, through the verb "*Washed*." *It*=washing. *As*, a Relative Adverb, modifying "*Has done*." *Shall*, denotes certainty. *Thyself*, case in apposition with "*Thou*" understood.

*Know*, has for its object "*Whether.....him*." *Some say*, it is held by some. *Some* is an Indefinite Pronoun. *Disdained*, thought it beneath their dignity. *Foul*, impure. *Earth and sea.....sin*, his life had been spent so wickedly that the sea as well the land thought it despicable to let his dust mingle with themselves. *Hurled*, threw up. *In anger*, angrily. *The waves.....anger*, the furious waves threw it up to a great height into the air. *Hung*, remained suspended. *Without a grave*, unburied. *Desolate*, cheerless; lonely. *Surge*, a large wave; it stands here for the sea.

*This at least is true*, so much is true, even if the rest of the story were false. *Which Pausanias tells*, because it is told by Pausanias. The Relative here denotes cause. *Pausanias*, the traveller and geographer, was perhaps a native of Lydia. He lived in 2nd Century A. D. and wrote his celebrated work (the *Itinerary of Greece*) in the reign of Marcus Aurelius. *Porch*, portico. *Figure*, likeness. *Modelled*, fashioned. *Clay*, soft, plastic earth. *Headlong*, with the head foremost; precipitately. *This at least is true, &c. &c.*, It is a fact that Pausanias saw in the royal porch at Athens a figure of Theseus, made of clay in which he was represented as throwing Sciron headlong into the sea.

*Went a long day's journey*, journeyed for one whole day. *Past Megara*, by the town of Megara though not through it. *Into the Attic land*, within the boundaries of Attica. *High....Cithæron*, in front of him stood the lofty Mount Cithæron most of the peaks of which were covered with snow. *Snow-peaks*, peaks covered with snow: an Unrelated Compound. *Cithæron*, a lofty range of mountains which separated Bœotia from Megaris and Attica. It was covered with wood; abounded in game and was the scene of several celebrated legends in mythology. *All* may be parsed as an Adverb modifying *cold*. *Black pine-woods*, forests of pine-trees that looked black when contrasted with snow that lay upon the top. *Where*, Relative Adverb, having for its Antecedent '*Cithæron*.'

meeting of Home Guard officers. Those who arrived sixty seconds late (including one general) found the doors bolted against them. Indignant and hostile, they were admitted at half-time and sat down to hear an hour's brilliant exposition (I quote the indignant general) of defensive tactics. At the end of his lecture Montgomery announced that he would present a play which he had written himself. While the audience waited fascinated, four soldiers dressed in German uniforms entered carrying umbrellas. As they opened the umbrellas a loud report echoed through the hall, and this, apparently, was to illustrate the arrival of parachutists in England. The four soldiers then lined up on the platform and announced solemnly: "We'll cut the throat of that bastard Montgomery". Finish of play.

Even across the years the mind still reels as it contemplates this exhibition. And yet and yet: 1940. Invasion expected at any moment; perhaps there was something in it. At all events few people in that hall forgot the lecture. Or Montgomery.

## 2

One might reasonably have expected that, given time, Montgomery would have become the most unpopular general in England. Yet it was not so. 1940 and 1941 were the years of crisis, and under that unthinkable menace of invasion most Englishmen were willing to follow a strong leader anywhere. His dismissals of officers were not nearly so numerous as they were reported to be, and for the most part his decisions were not unjust. The more intelligent and enthusiastic soldiers—especially those who had come into the Army from civilian life—realized that Montgomery was simply doing something which ought to have been done by the Higher Command long ago. The deadwood had to be cut out: the fools and the drunks, the shirkers and the playboys, had no right to authority at this dangerous moment.

As for the men, the majority liked a colourful and eccentric leader. They liked the absence of brass-hattery and pomposity in Montgomery. They appreciated the fact that the bulk of their work went, not into useless ceremonial parades, but into very definite exercises in the trade of war. Deliberately Montgomery cultivated their friendship.

More and more through these years he was growing into a resemblance of that other "soldiers' general" who was born in Virginia, in the United States of America; some hundred years

and in return the goddess gave him a chariot with winged dragons and seeds of wheat. In this chariot, Triptolemus rode over the earth, and made people acquainted with agriculture. *She, Demeter the kind Earth-Mother* are in apposition to each other. *When all the land lay waste*:—the reason was this:—Demeter was the sister of Zeus, by whom she had a daughter Persephone (Proserpine). Without informing Demeter, Zeus had promised Persephone to Aidoneus (Pluto), who carried her off while the unsuspecting maiden was gathering flowers. Her mother wandered about for 9 days in search of her, when, on meeting with Hecate, she went, with her, to Helios (the Sun) who disclosed to her that her daughter had been carried off by Pluto. The goddess thereupon became so angry that she did not allow the earth to produce any fruits. She remained for some time at Eleusis where all the gods were sent to persuade her to return to Olympus, but she refused to do so unless her daughter was given back to her. Persephone was then brought from the Lower Regions and the mother and daughter met at Eleusis; and Demeter allowed the earth to bring forth fruit again. *Sheaf*, ear. *Plough*, till. *Fallows*, uncultivated tracts of land. *Yoke*, put a yoke on. *Kine*, old form of the plural of *cow*. As a matter of fact, *oxen*, not *kine*, are yoked to ploughs. *Sow*, scatter. *Seed-fields*, fields for raising seed. *Reap*, gather. *Golden grain*, ripe grain. *Whosoever*, is a Compound Relative=He who. *Tills*, ploughs. *All men.....land*, the Verb "honour" is in the plural, and correct if taken with "all men," but if it is taken with "he" (contained in *whosoever*) it is wrong. The construction therefore is "All men honour her, whosoever tills the land honours her." *Beloved*, favourite. *Gave.....men*, distributed corn among labouring classes.

*Went.....Eleusis*, crossed the plain and entered Eleusis. *Market-place*, the bazaar. *Fall*, overthrow. *I must.....today*, I am determined to wrestle with him to-day. *Crowded*, assembled. *Why.....die*, why do you wish to die. *Hasten out of*, go away hastily from. *Piles*, heaps. Page 184. *Hall*, the principal room in a building.

*Whole*, without being cut into slices. *Roasted*, fried; as opposed to *boiled*. *Whole jar of wine*, a large vessel of wine full to the brim. *Lonely*, alone. *Weary*, tired. *The board*, the table. *Ate his fill*, ate till he was satiated.

Of the two men Jackson's is possibly the more saintly and selfless life; but we must place him somewhere in Montgomery's spiritual background. There was much less bitterness in Jackson's career, and fewer complications; but that sense of touch in devotional leadership did not quite go out at Bull Run and in the fields around Richmond. It begins to revive here eighty years later in England.

## 3

In 1941 Montgomery was removed from the command of the Fifth Corps to the Twelfth Corps, and finally in 1942 to the command of the South-Eastern Army with the rank of lieutenant-general. Already in 1940 he had been made a Commander of the Bath and, in the gathering momentum of his life, it was obvious that he was now headed towards greater honours. He had gone beyond the point where he could be set back through minor eccentricities; now he had the power to impose them upon other people. The rocket was nearing the end of its long, laborious climb from the ground to the point where it could become a law unto itself.

He was beginning to come in contact with people who were really in control of affairs. There had already been a first meeting with Churchill shortly after Dunkirk, when Montgomery took him on a tour of the coastal defences. As they watched a group of Guardsmen dismantling Brighton pier, Churchill remarked sadly that they were hacking away the place where he used to be taken to see the performing fleas as a child.

Cabinet Ministers found the new general docile and obedient in all things except military matters. Then he spoke up strongly and sometimes with insubordination. In all the areas under his command he considered himself master. There was the incident of the Archbishop of Canterbury, who came under Montgomery's care when he was given the South-Eastern Command. The Archbishop declared that if the Germans landed in Kent he would not move. Montgomery had air-raid shelters dug round the Cathedral and declared that the Archbishop would certainly move. Brushing all protests aside he issued strict orders that if the crisis came the Archbishop was to be placed on a train and conveyed northwards.

But in regard to the policy of scorching English earth Montgomery would not listen to it. He would not accept the idea that the Germans would succeed in their invasion. Fruit-

to be our king. The Imperative mood here denotes entreaty. *Stepped forth*, came out of the crowd. *Hast thou slain Sinis?* Beware then &c., if you have slain Sinis, you should beware &c. *Beware*, (Be + wary), be careful. *Kin*, relationship. *Near of kin*, nearly related. *Well.....die*, his sins were so numerous that he deserved to be punished with death. *Purge me from*, purify me of. *Rightfully*, justly. *Unrighteous*, sinful ; wicked. *Accursed*, detestable. *As*, though.

*That.....do*, the heroes will purify you. *The sons of Phytalus*, the Phytalids were heroes to whom was given the power of purging sinners. *Aphidndi*, a town and district of Attica. In it Theseus concealed Helen, but the place was taken and Helen rescued by her brothers Castor and Pollux. *Silver*, calm and bright. *Cephisus*, the largest river in Attica. *Mysteries*, secrets. *Thither.....king*, you must go and have yourself purified, and then we will make you our king. The 1st *shall*, denotes necessity and the 2nd denotes promise.

*Took.....Eleusis*, made the Eleusians swear. *Would serve*, were willing to serve. 'Would' denotes wish or consent. *King*, in apposition to "him." *Across*, crossing; from side to side.

*Skirting*, passing along the borders of. Page 187. *Along*, in a line with the length of. *The foot*, i.e., the base. *Parnes*, a high mountain in the north-east of Attica. *Came down*, descended from the mountain. *Dressed.....garments*, richly clad. *Bracelet*, an ornament for the arm worn by ladies. *Round...jewels*, the collar which he wore was inlaid with jewels. *Came forward*, advanced. *Courtously*, politely. *Held out*, extended ; stretched.

*Happy.....you*, I am glad that I met you. *To have* is a Gerundial Infinitive, used as an Adverb. *Entertain*, receive hospitably. *What.....strangers*, a good man derives the greatest pleasure from the entertainment of strangers. *Castle*, fortress. *I give you thanks*, I am grateful to you.

*Wandered*, strayed ; deviated. *You.....way*, you have lost your way. *Many miles of mountain*, i.e., many miles of a mountainous road. *Steep*, precipitous. *Pas-ses*, narrow passages running across a mountain chain. *Night-fall*, evening. *There are.....night fall*, you have



The Gazala Line, with its series of strong-points or "boxes", was in a state of disintegration. This was followed by the abysmal and almost incomprehensible collapse of the stronghold of Tobruk in a single day. All cohesion seemed to have vanished from the British command, and even veterans like General Gott were temporarily out of touch. In one widening and chaotic tide the British Army was streaming in disorder back into Egypt.

This time the pendulum was heavily weighted. It swung past the Egyptian border, past Buq Buq and Sidi Barrani, paused at Mersa Matruh and then came on again. At Alamein, the last defensive box before the Nile, a handful of weary and dispirited soldiers were clinging to their positions in early July without much hope of staying there. In Washington Churchill was asking for—and getting—the immediate dispatch of new arms to Egypt. But weeks would elapse before they arrived and in the meantime it appeared most likely that Egypt would fall. The fall of Egypt could mean anything—the loss of Palestine and the Persian oil; perhaps even the linking of the German and Japanese armies (now advancing through Burma) and the collapse of India.

In Cairo wisps of smoke hung over G.H.Q. and the British Embassy, where secret documents were being burned. Already evacuation had begun. Auchinleck started to devise a plan for splitting his armies—one force to remain at Alamein as long as possible and eventually fight its way back to the Suez Canal through the Nile Delta; other forces to save what they could of the wreckage by marshalling in the far south at Khartoum and in the east in Palestine. In Rome Mussolini got out his ceremonial white horse, and a medal was struck to commemorate the expected Axis entry into Alexandria and Cairo.

For a few days the pendulum teetered at Alamein. Then it stuck, unable to swing farther forward—and there was no power to push it back. British, Australian and New Zealand reinforcements struggling up to the line were just able to hold the position and no more. Auchinleck at this time exhibited a generalship for which he has been given little credit. It was certainly he, more than any other man, who stopped the rot at Alamein. But the Army's convalescence from its crisis was proving alarmingly slow.

Through July a series of indecisive attacks and counter-attacks continued along the Alamein Line; and still the enemy were entrenched in great strength a few hours' drive from Cairo. Worse still, there were reports of enemy reinforcements. Malta was on the point of starvation; ship after ship endeavour-

a series of anything arranged one after the other. *Laden* is the Past Participle of *load*. *Watching*, guarding; protecting. *Ware*, goods, merchandise. .

*Poor souls*, wretched men, Fig. Synecdoche, a part (soul) being used for the whole (man). *Well for them*, they are fortunate. *Well for me too*, I also am fortunate. *The more guests*, a larger number of guests. *The*, is a Demonstrative Adverb (by that degree) and qualifies " more." *Feast*, dinner. *Awhile*, (a + while), for a short time. *Live-long*, long in passing. *The livelong night*, all the night. *Night*, is the Adverbial Object of time. *At once*, at one and the same time. *Ran...hill*, descended the hill speedily. *Waving*, moving.

*Aged*, old. *Drift-wood*, wood floating on the water. *Torrent-bed*, the bed of the torrent. *Bed*, the bottom of a stream. *Faggot*, bundle of wood. *Help.....burden*, help me to raise this burden on my back. *Stiff and weak*, rigid and feeble. *With years*, on account of old age. *With* denotes cause. *Blest him*, wished him joy. *Earnestly*, eagerly ; longingly. *Doleful*, dismal. *Road*, is the Adverbial Object of space. P. 190. *Invited*, called. *I know not .....bed*, upon a wonderful bed the nature of which I do not know. *I know not what*, is a Parenthetical clause.

*Clapped*, struck his hands together. *Clapping the hands*, is a token of joy; but the words of the old man are expressive of sorrow. *O House.....devouring*, O man eating bellish house. Fig. Apostrophe or address; the old man addresses the house of the robber in which the " wondrous bed" was placed. *Hades*, or Pluto, was the god of the Nether-world. and the king of shades (i.e., spirits of departed mortals). According to Greek Mythology, the spirits of men were to be kept in his kingdom and undergo punishments for their crimes till the day of their restoration to peace and happiness. *Maw*, stomach, *Will.....full*, will thy appetite never cease ? Wilt thou never be satisfied. *Are going.....death*, are going to a place where you will be tormented and put to death. *Requite*, recompense ; return. *I will.....another*, I tell all this. to you in return for the favor you have done to me. *Entices*, allures ; decoys. *As for*, regarding. *Fits*, suits. *Off it*, from it; *off* denotes separation. *Save*, except; Preposition. *Too tall for it*, taller than the length of the bed. *Lops*, cuts. *Be short enough*,

On August 7th Montgomery was in Scotland with General Paget watching a most secret force at its manœuvres. This was the British First Army and its mission was the invasion of French Algeria on the North African coast. Already General Eisenhower was in England preparing to take command of the operation. General Alexander, back from his campaign in Burma, had been nominated to serve under him as the leader of the First Army.

An urgent telephone call came through for Montgomery from London: he must report to the War Office immediately. It was a bad flying day and Montgomery took the night train down from Scotland. At the War Office he was told by General Nye, the Vice-Chief of the Imperial General Staff, that there had been a change in the arrangement for the high command. Alexander would replace Auchinleck as C.-in-C. of the Middle East. Montgomery would take Alexander's place as the commander of the First Army on the North Africa invasion. He was to interview General Eisenhower the following morning.

Montgomery returned to his headquarters at Reigate and went to bed. He was shaving at seven-thirty the following morning when his A.D.C. hurried in. The War Office had telephoned. General Montgomery was to disregard the conversation of the previous night. Instead he was to stand by to proceed immediately to Egypt to take command of the Eighth Army.

General Gott was dead. His aircraft had been shot down by the Germans at the moment of taking up his appointment.

Montgomery rushed through his arrangements. He did not see the War Office again, and a Liberator was placed at his disposal to leave England the same night. There was just time to say goodbye to his son David and arrange for him to stay at his old school in Surrey. A bedroll was brought; tropical gear. He did not need very much equipment. One A.D.C. was to travel with him.

Again that night the weather was bad and it was decided to delay another twenty-four hours. At nightfall on August 10th the Liberator took off from England with its strange freight: a roll of bedding, an A.D.C., and a general on probation, a thin and unimposing little figure in battledress and a peaked cap ringed with red, a man unknown to the public and the world—

*Stript*, denuded; deprived. *Stript*.....ornaments, took off his gold ornaments. *Passers-by*, travellers who passed by that way. *Spoiled*, robbed; looted. *Parted*, divided; distributed. *Away*, on his way. P. 193. *Slopes of oak &c.*, slopes covered with oak. *Lentisk*, a low shrubby tree producing a valuable resin. *Arbutus*, a genus of evergreen shrubs resembling strawberry. *Fragrant*, sweet scented; odoriferous. *Bay*, an evergreen shrub, having aromatic leaves. *Mighty*, large. *Elm*, a large shady tree. *Altar*, a table or elevated place on which sacrifices are offered to some deity. *Bathe*, Simple or Noun Infinitive, complement of *bade*, after which the sign 'to' is dropped. *Offer*, present as a sacrifice; (to be parsed as 'bathe' above). *A yearling ram*, a ram, one year old. *Purified*, purged; absolved.

*Acharnai*, the principal demus of Attica. *By*, here denotes approximity. *The silver swirling stream*, the river which shone like silver when it whirled. This is the river called Achelous, which rises in the Mt. Pindus and falls into the Ionian sea. 'To swirl' means to whirl. *Prowess*, strength. *The fame of his prowess*, his renown as a hero. *Wide*, in all directions; used as an Adverb. *Athene*, or Minerva was the tutelary goddess of Athens. According to the general belief of the Greeks she was the daughter of Zeus, and a goddess in whom power and wisdom were harmoniously blended. She is the protectress of agriculture, the patroness of both the useful and the elegant arts, the patron divinity of the state of Athens, the defender of the state from outward enemies and, in general, the guardian of warriors.

*The hill*.....dwells, this is the Acropolis, the city on which the Parthenon or the temple of Athena was situated at Athens.

*Went*.....Athens, walked up the principal street of Athens. *His*.....him people knew how brave and powerful he was before they had seen him *Knew*.....deeds, knew of his success in his struggle with the monsters. *Steadfastly*, firmly; steadily. *Yearned after*, longed to see. *Deliver*, set free; liberate. *Leech*, a worm that sucks blood. *Suck his blood*, are ruining him. *Leeches*.....blood, Theseus is speaking of his cousins (whose account will follow).

*The holy stairs*, the stairs leading to the temple of Athene. *The Acropolis*; The city of Athens was divided

## CHAPTER EIGHT

# FORTY HOURS

### I

AT 9 a.m. on August 12th, 1942, Montgomery's aircraft put down on the desert outside Cairo. One must consider now, quite separately and distinctly, the next forty hours in this life: they contain the expression of a mind working at the limit of its capacity and the consummation of a long career. This was the moment of the flood-tide, and, just as an expert surf-rider will launch himself on a wave at the precise moment of its breaking and ride on with it in absolute assurance to the shore, so now one can watch this adventurer from hour to hour follow his inspiration quite consciously until it brings him to a conscious and inevitable goal.

From the airport Montgomery drove straight to G.H.Q. in Cairo, a large block of flats called Gray Pillars which had been ringed with barbed wire and converted into a military headquarters. Auchinleck was waiting for him in an office on the third floor.

For Auchinleck, the out-going general, it could hardly be other than a bitter moment. He had worked in a frenzy to the point of exhaustion in these last few tragic months, and almost everything had turned to defeat and disaster as soon as he touched it. Having dismissed one general from the command of the desert army he had appointed another. And when this second general had failed he had delayed too long in taking over himself. True, he had succeeded in holding the Alamein Line and restoring the situation, but by then it was too late to save himself. Churchill had been a rigid and somewhat erratic ruler. Twelve months before, he had forced Wavell against his will to go to Greece instead of continuing on to Tripoli. And when the Greek invasion failed, as it inevitably had to fail, Wavell was dismissed. In the Army there had been some bitterness about this, not so much because the soldiers had been compelled by the politicians to go to Greece, but because Mr. Eden, the foreign minister, had grossly misjudged the Balkan situation. Mr. Eden had visited Turkey and had conducted a further meeting with the Turkish foreign minister in Cyprus. On his return to Cairo Mr. Eden had given the warmest encouragement to the idea that Turkey

him and destroying his young bride by a poisoned garment. She then fled to Athens in her chariot drawn by winged dragons, where she married king Aegeus; but when it was discovered that she had tried to poison Theseus, she escaped and went to Asia, where she married a king, whose descendants were called after her Medes, and the country Media. *Watching her eye and hand*, carefully noticing the motion of her eyes and hands. *Turned pale and red again*, changed color; showed signs of embarrassment and fear. *Like a snake*, scrutinizingly. *What .....you*, what have you to do with Troezen. *Hastily*, quickly. *Cleared, freed*. *Came from*, had his home in. *I must go out*, 'must' denotes duty.

*His heart leapt into his mouth*, he was deeply moved. *Fall on his neck*, embrace him. P. 196. *Controlled himself*, restrained his feelings. *Wish for me*, desire to acknowledge me. *After all*, taking everything into consideration. *Try, test*. *Discover myself*, say who I am. *Realm, kingdom; country*.

*Fond*, affectionate; loving. *Heart*, by Fig. Synecdoche (part for the whole), means a man. *What...done*, every affectionate man would have done. This is a question of Appeal. *Worthy of*, deserving of. *It is little..... of you*, I can give you only little but even that little will not be worthy of you. *Mortal*, (L. *Mors, mortis*, death), subject to death. *All I ask*, my only request.

*Bade them*, ordered the servants. *Them*, is used Indefinitely for the servants; as also in "They say &c." (=people in general say &c.) *Set, place*. *Put and Set* are in the Infinitive, the sign.(to) being left out after "bade." *The best of the feast*, the most delicious food. *While*, time; adverbial object of time. *His heart..... Theseus*, he seemed to love Theseus. *Bore himself*, conducted himself; behaved. P. 197. *A pack of curs*, a group of dogs. A 'cur' is a worthless, degenerate dog. *Will.....here*, will assume the supreme authority in this place. *Is nearer to*, is more nearly related to. *Than mere fancy*, than what I imagine him to be. *Will have no.....of*, will not be able to hold their own against.

*Modestly*, quietly.. *Would that he were*, I wish that he were. *Would* is in the Subjunctive Mood, denoting wish. *Presently*, after a short time; soon after. *Decked in*, ornamented with; decorated with. *Rich, splendid*

In the end Harding agreed to go off and find out what he could. It was arranged that he should present his report at six o'clock that night.

Good. That was one hurdle taken. Montgomery turned to the next thing. He met Alexander. Their friendship went back far beyond Dunkirk to the student days in Camberley.

"Hello, Alex."

"Hello, Monty." They were both very much incognito and the meeting was vaguely reminiscent of two elated but slightly guilty schoolboys.

"Let's go somewhere and talk it over."

Montgomery suggested Shepheard's. Their two A.D.C.s should go ahead, select a quiet corner table, and then leave them.

In Cairo at this time there were four main places where officers went to talk, to gossip and meet one another: the Turf Club, the Gezira Sporting Club on an island in the Nile, the Continental-Savoy and Shepheard's Hotel. The terrace and the lounge of Shepheard's were particularly crowded with officers on leave. They stared with great curiosity when two unknown senior generals came walking through the crowds of suffragis and street vendors and passed into the dingy and mosque-like splendour of the inner lounge.

Except for their mutual enthusiasm for soldiering there was hardly a point in common between the two men. Montgomery was at the full stretch of his intensity and unequivocal eagerness: a quivering reed. Alexander remained as he always was: bland, interested, patient. He was one of those very few men who are inevitably destined for the inner and the higher circles of any society in which they move. In many ways it was a charmed life. Born in the midst of wealth and assured position, the younger son of a titled family, he had passed easily through the best schools and the best regiments. As a young man he was full of natural talents, an excellent horseman, an intelligent and ready conversationalist. He was neither lazy nor insensitive (as he might easily have been). He painted well. He had an Irish sense of humour, an easy manner. And, as if it were not enough that he should have had his charm, his naturalness, his health and rather jaunty good looks, something else had been given him as well: an apparent absence of any physical fear whatever. At Dunkirk, in Burma, and again on many days after this meeting at Shepheard's many people marvelled at his entire disregard of personal danger, the poise and balance of his mind at a crisis when all around high explosive was bursting and men were dying.

become excited on account of drinking. *Caught*, grasped. *Sprang forward to*, advanced towards.

*Your blood.....heads*, you are responsible for your death. *Railed him*, taunted him. *Lair*, den.

P. 200. *Hurled*, threw. *Rear rank*, the hindmost part of the crowd. *Past*, flew. *Close by*, very near by. *At that*, when the lance had been hurled. *Beat*, overthrew; defeated. *Were left*, were not killed. *Set on*, chased; pursued. *Nightfall*, evening. *All the town i.e.*, all the inhabitants of the town; Fig. Metonymy, (container for the contained). *Sacrifices*, (L. *Sacer*, sacred, and *facio*, I make), gifts to some god or goddess. *All the night long*, throughout the whole night. *Royal house*, regal family.

*Stayed*, remained. *Winter*, Adverbial object of time. *Equinox*, (L. *Æquus*, equal, and *nox*, *noctis*, night), the time of the year when day and night are equal all over the globe. *Spring equinox*, the equinoxes are two in number:—the one called the Spring equinox falls on the 21st day of March, and the other called the Autumn equinox falls on the 23rd day of September. *Drew near*, approached. *No one.....word*, he could receive no answer. *Would*, denotes wish or inclination. *Beforehand*, previously. *Must happen*, are sure to befall. *Must* denotes certainty. *To have to face*, to be obliged to meet. *When they come*, when they happen.

*Herald*, in ancient times was an officer whose business was to proclaim war, to challenge to battle, to declare peace, and to bear messages from the commander of an army. *Yearly*, annual. P. 201. *Tribute*, a sum paid in acknowledgment of submission. *Where is your yearly tribute*, give your annual tribute. *Lamentation*, mourning; wailing. *Stood up to*, went boldly to. *Dog-faced*, having the face of a dog. *Demand*, ask as a matter of right. *Who.....here*, who are bold enough to ask tribute in this place. *Reverence*, respect. *Staff*, rod. *Your herald's staff*, the staff which you bear as a herald. *Brain*, dash out the brains of. *With*, denotes instrumentality.

*Proudly*, haughtily. *Grave*, reserved; sedate. *Ancient*, old. *Do*, obey. *Bidding*, order. *Minos*, the son of Lycastus and Ida, was a king and law giver of Crete. By his wife Pasiphae, he was the father of Androgeus, Ariadne and 6 other children. He aimed at the supre-



Morale must be entirely revived. There must be a considerable regrouping of the whole Army, probably the replacement of certain commanders. Would Alexander give him a free hand?

Yes.

Would he stand behind Montgomery in Cairo and back him up, endeavour to fulfil all reasonable requests from the desert.

Yes.

Looking across the table Montgomery saw that he was trusted completely. He also saw that this trust and his freedom of action would go on just so long as he was successful. If he failed, he was out. While he was trying, Alexander would support him to the limit; but he would have to try very hard indeed. The bargain between them was never broken.

In the afternoon Harding came with his report: Yes, an armoured striking corps could be got together.

"Then go ahead with it", Montgomery said.

The next thing was to get in touch with one more old pupil. De Guingand was in the desert acting as Chief of Staff to the field force. Already he had been for some time in the Middle East, at first in the intelligence branch and latterly in this new position. It was arranged over the long-distance telephone that de Guingand should rendezvous early the following morning at the "Alexandria cross-roads"—the point where the road from Cairo turned west into the open desert.

Montgomery never saw Auchinleck again. Nor was he again to see Cairo until this, his biggest adventure, was resolved one way or the other. He slept that night at the British Embassy on the Nile, and at 5 a.m. on August 13th he left by car with his bedroll on the five-hour drive to the front.

De Guingand, brown and thin, wearing khaki shorts and an open shirt, was waiting at the cross-roads at 8 a.m. They looked at one another curiously, each estimating the other after this absence of years. Up to this point there had been nothing more between them than a few brief meetings, a warm but not hearty mutual esteem; and de Guingand was still well down in the hierarchy of generals. He jumped into Montgomery's car and as they drove on over that particularly vile stretch of the desert road known as "The Ripples" he outlined the situation.

The line was holding and not much more. All counter-attacks had failed to achieve anything definite. Morale was very definitely low. Rommel was expected to attack again at any moment and it would be extremely dangerous. He might even penetrate to Cairo. In that case the Army was under orders to fall back on to the Delta and, if necessary, abandon Egypt.

by what means or in what place. *Waylaid him*, lay in wait for and killed him. *By Oinoe*, near Oinoe, a demus of Attica. *And some that he &c.*, 'say' is understood after "some." *Sent him against*, despatched him to kill. *Marathon*, a demus in Attica, was situated near a bay on the east coast of Attica, 22 miles from Athens. It is well-known in Grecian Mythology as the seat of the celebrated "Bull of Marathon," which devastated the surrounding country and which was afterwards captured and destroyed by Theseus; and in history as the site of the famous battle between the Greeks and the Persians (B. C. 490) in which the latter were totally defeated. *That*, in order that. *Might*, denotes purpose. *From envy*, out of jealousy. *From* denotes cause. *Would not depart*, was determined not to go away.

*Ground*, gnashed. *Wert thou*, if thou wert. *Wert*, is in the Subjunctive Mood denoting condition. *Of*, concerning. *Blood was shed*, a murder was committed. *Unjustly*, wrongfully. *By* denotes means. *Break not my heart*, do not torment me. *By questions*, by making enquiries. *By* denotes agency. *It is enough*, it is painful enough. *Endure*, bear. *Groaned inwardly*, sighed in his heart. *A groan* is an expression of pain or sorrow.

P. 203. *The light of my old age*, the cause of my happiness in old age. *To whom alone I look*, on whom alone I depend, *To whom.....gone*, who are my only heir. The word *people*, when standing alone, means men in general; but when it has a Demonstrative Adjective qualifying it, (i.e., a, the, this, that, &c.), it means a *nation*. *Thrusts*, forces; drives. *Labyrinth*, an edifice full of intricate windings. *Daidalos*, an Athenian by birth, who devoted himself to sculpture and made great improvements in the art. Being condemned to death by the Areopagus for the murder of his nephew, Perdix, he fled to Crete, where the king, Minos, befriended him on account of his skill. He enabled Pasiphae the wife of Minos to gratify her passion with the bull, and when she gave birth to the Minotaur, he constructed the labyrinth in which the monster was kept. [See note on *Minos*, above]. He was, for this complicity, imprisoned by Minos; but, being set free by Pasiphae, he, together with his son Icarus, tried to fly from Crete by means of wings, Daidalos himself crossed the sea safely, but Icarus was drowned in the

quarters? Where the war rooms, the maps, the offices?—where indeed in the midst of this isolated wilderness was the war?

General Ramsden was acting as Army Commander. Montgomery asked him to return to his corps and immediately sent out a radio message to the Middle East Command saying that he, Montgomery, had from that instant assumed command of the Eighth Army. This was at 2 p.m., August 13th.

He then set out by car to visit the most relentless and redoubtable fighting soldier then commanding in either army in the desert. General Freyberg, V.C., and his New Zealanders were some distance away. Once you left the main road in the desert there were a thousand tracks but none you could trust. The method of proceeding from one place to another was, as at sea, on a compass bearing. The desert was new to Montgomery but he could not help observing after a time as the car bounced and swayed over the rocks that his guide, an A.D.C., looked nervous.

"Do you know where we are?"

The boy was frank—"No, sir". Then after a bit he added dubiously: "I think we are in the middle of a minefield, sir". For the first time that day Montgomery seemed a little restless.

"Then get out of it", he blazed. "Get out of it at once." They drove out over the warning trip-wire without coming to harm, found their bearings and pushed on.

Freyberg eyed his new commander with compassion; it was their first meeting.

"I feel terribly sorry for you," he said kindly. "This is the grave of lieutenant-generals. None of them stay here more than a few months."

Upon the general situation Freyberg was gloomy. This was the atmosphere everywhere Montgomery went that day. When was Rommel going to attack? And where? How were we going to hold him?

Soon after 5 p.m. Montgomery was back at his desert headquarters and he got on to the telephone to Alexander. Two new divisions, the 51st Highland and the 44th, had arrived from England. They were earmarked for the defence of the Delta. Could he have them, instead, in the desert and at all possible speed? "Yes", Alexander said.

In the operations quarters Montgomery asked the staff officers what they were doing. They told him their orders: At all costs the Eighth Army was not to be destroyed *in situ*. If hard pressed they were to make a fighting withdrawal through the Canal and re-establish headquarters south of Cairo. Those were the plans upon which they were working.

*pered*, said in a low tone, so as not to be heard by the herald. *Have hope*, do not despair. *For.....immortal*, because the Minotaur may be put to death. *Immortal*, (L. *In*, not and *mors*, *mortis*, death), one not subject to death. *Comforted*, solaced. *Their hearts.....little*, they were somewhat consoled. *On board*, into the ship. *Board*, (plank) is used for *ship* by Fig. Synecdoche, the material for the thing made. *Sunium*, a celebrated rock promontory forming the southern extremity of Attica. *Rang with*, resounded with. *Voice*, sound. *Aegean sea*, the part of the Mediterranean, now called the *Archipelago*, lying between Thrace and Macedon on the north, Greece on the west and Asia Minor on the east. The name is derived (i) either from Aegeus, king of Athens, who threw himself into it; or (ii) from Aegaea, Queen of the Amazons who perished there; or (iii) from Gr. *Aigis* a squall, on account of its storms.

### PART III. HOW THESEUS SLEW THE MINOTAUR.

P. 206. *Cnossus*, an ancient town of Crete, the capital of king Minos. *Beneath the peaks of*, at the foot of. A *Peak*, is the highest point of a mountain. *Ida*, a mountain in the centre of Crete, said to be 7674 feet above the sea-level. *To whom.....laws*, who was instructed in the laws by Zeus himself. The Reflexive Pronoun "himself" is used for the sake of emphasis. *Mortal kings*, kings of the earth. *Aegean isles*, islands lying in the Aegean Sea; now known as the Grecian Archipelago. *As many as the sea-gulls*, innumerable. The ships are compared to the sea-gulls. *The sea-gull*, is a web-footed sea-fowl. *Like a marble hill*, strong and splendid. *Beaten gold*, burnished gold; or gold made smooth by beating. *Of* here denotes material. *Statues*, images. *Speaking statues*, images that could speak as if they were living beings. *By his skill*, "By" denotes instrumentality. *Cunning* is here used in its original sense of skilful; from A.-S. *Cunnan*, to know. *Invented*, framed for the first time. *Plumb-line*, a line having a weight attached to its end. *Auger*, a carpenter's instrument for boring holes. *Glue*, a kind of gum made by boiling the skins, hoofs &c., of animals. *Tool*, instrument. *With.....wrought*, with which carpenters work. *Wrought*, prepared for use; made into useful articles. *Masts*, poles set upright in a vessel to sustain



MONTGOMERY WITH HIS LIAISON OFFICERS

Major John Poston standing second from the left

take it by scaling the walls, forcing gates or breaches and the like. *Which.....stormed*, which was so strong that even giants could not have reduced it. *Selinos*, one of the most important towns in Sicily. The Baths were the mineral springs which were formerly called *Aquae Seliuntiae*, now known as the Baths of Sciacca. *Took*, collected. *Comes up*, issues. *Aetna*, a celebrated volcano in Sicily. *Fires*, i.e., the fiery region. *Bath*, a place for bathing. *Vapour*, water reduced to an invisible gaseous state. *To cure the pains*, to remove the sufferings. *To cure* is a Gerundial Infinitive. *Honey comb*, bee hive. *Egypt*, a large country in the north east of Africa. *Fore court*, courtyard. Page 208. *Hephaistos*, see note on P. 174. *Memphis*, a great city of ancient Egypt, on the left bank of the Nile. *Britomartis*, was a Cretan nymph, beloved by Minos, who pursued her 9 months till at length she leapt into the sea and was change by Artemis into a goddess. *Dancing hall*, a room used for dancing. The student should note that it is an *Unrelated* or *Juxtapositional* compound and should not be confounded with compounds made up of nouns preceded by qualifying participles; as *Humming-bird*, *spinning top* &c. *Dancing* is here a Gerund. *Carved*, made by shaping into an artistic design. *Fair*; brilliant. *Sardinia*, a large island in the Mediterranean, lying to the south of Corsica. *Iolaos*, was the half brother of Hercules, by whom he was sent to Sardinia, where he introduced civilization among the inhabitants of the island and was worshipped by them. *Many.....beside*, many other countries. *Beside*, in addition to; should be parsed as an Adverb. *Up and down*, here and there. *Cunning*, skill. *With*, denotes possession. *Unlovely and accursed by men*, repulsive and hateful. *Unlovely*, repulsive. *They.....face*, they scrutinized each other. *Each other*, may be parsed as a Reciprocal Pronoun, object of the compound verb "Looked in the face." *Looked*, is itself an Intransitive verb, but it takes a Transitive force when followed by some preposition or prepositional phrase. Or, *each* may be parsed as a Nominative absolute. *Take to take*; the "to" being omitted after "bade." *One by one*, i.e., one at a time.

*Boon*, gift. *A boon*, *O Minos*, i.e., grant me a boon &c. *Very*, same; an Adjective. *Purpose*, aim; object. *For.....purpose*, because I have come here for the same

as though these past two weary years had never happened. And still the thin insistent voice persisted:

"There will be no retreat. We will stand here. This is where we fight. We remain here either dead or alive."

Well, at least this was something definite after the unending indecisions and hesitations and doubts of the past few months. At least everyone knew where he stood. But how could anyone have this colossal assurance?

"It will be quite easy. No doubt about it whatever. We will finish with Rommel once and for all."

Possibly he did have something up his sleeve: the arrival of two fresh divisions was certainly some sort of a guarantee.

Calmly, picking his phrases slowly, Montgomery told them his plan. A new British panzer army would be created. The line would hold until it was ready. There would be a certain regrouping. There would be reinforcement in every department. At the right moment the British would assault in main force—and the panzer corps would follow through.

No one now was missing a syllable. Quite clearly all this was something quite different to anything that had happened before. This was action—clear and uncompromising.

"I will now explain my methods", Montgomery said; and he proceeded to turn upside down half the accepted ideas of running an army command. De Guingand was nominated Chief of Staff. From now on the Army would be managed through the Chief of Staff. He had complete authority. They were to understand that whatever came from de Guingand was Montgomery's order and to be obeyed immediately.

Senior commanders would have the right of coming directly to Montgomery and he would send for them from time to time. At these meetings they would have to be prepared to state their business inside ten minutes. He would listen to no details. All these would go to the Chief of Staff. As C.-in-C. he himself would live apart and devote himself to the study of the general picture. Memoranda and papers were out. From this night onwards they would have to get used to receiving and transmitting orders by word of mouth. Where papers were necessary they must go to the Chief of Staff.

Montgomery himself would lay down the general plan. They and all their men would be thoroughly briefed on it before the Army went into action. But they themselves must handle the details. They would have great latitude inside the general framework laid down by Montgomery. They could do things their own way, provided only this—that they succeeded.

And finally, the one governing, overriding factor they must

*Safe enough*, quite safe. *Fell down*, knelt. *When...* came, at the close of day. P. 211. *Went down*, descended. *Gulf*, a hollow place; a deep chasm. *Winding*, tortuous. *Caverns*, caves. *Galleries*, long narrow corridors. *Dizzy*, giddy; confused. *His head was dizzy*, he felt giddy. *All.....clue*, he kept the thread all the time. *Unroll*, spread out. *It lasted him*, it was not fully spread out. *Chasm*, opening. *Tore*, rent to pieces. *Prey*, victim. *Put his head down*, lowered his head. *Right*, straight.

*Stept aside*, moved away to one side. *Nimble*, with a quick light motion. *Passed by*, rushed beside him. *Cut*, wounded. *Turn*, move round. *Stabbed him*, thrust the sword in his body. *Bellowing*, roaring. *Bellowing*, is the sound of a bull. *Wildly*, frantically. *Felt a wound*, experienced the pain of a wound. *Followed.....speed*, ran after him as swiftly as he could.

*Through cavern after cavern*, through many successive caverns. *Dark*, gloomy. *Ribs*, the arched passages or galleries within a mountain are called its ribs. *Sound-ing*, resounding; echoing. *Under.....stone*, beneath arched passages of stone that sent forth an echo. *Rough*, rugged; not smooth. *Up.....beds*, ascending rugged valleys and ravines. P. 212. *Sunless*, dark. *Roots*, nethermost caverns; the mountain is here compared to a tree. *Among.....Ida*, through the dark nethermost caverns of Ida. *Edge*, border. *Eternal*, perpetual. *To.....snow*, up to the snow-line. *On went they*, they continued to run. *The hunter and the hunted*, Theseus and the Minotaur. *The hills.....bellow*, the hills resounded with the monster's cry.

P. 213. *Came up with*, overtook. *Panting*, breathing heavily. *Slab*, a thin polished piece of rock. *Caught.....horns*, took hold of his horns. *Forced back*, forcibly turned back. *Drove*, thrust. *Keen*, sharp-edged. *And caught.....throat*, and taking hold of his horns, he forcibly moved back the head and thrust the sharp sword into his throat.

*Went back*, returned. *Limping*, walking lamely. *Feeling*, knowing. *Mouth*, door. *Then he turned.....place*, then he returned, walking lamely on account of his weariness, and finding out his way by means of the thread,



soldiers as though he had known them for a long time. No saluting, none of that beefy, red-blooded look usually associated with red tabs. He was constantly getting out of his car and talking in a casual way to anyone who happened to be there. He appeared to have no blood-and-thunder-and-glory attitudes: it was simply, "We've got to hit them for six". He wore an Australian slouch hat and, grinning, he accepted badges from the men and stuck them in the crown. If this was a pre-arranged act to gain popularity then no one felt it was so, and it did not appear to be so to those who were watching at the time. From the Australian 9th Division which had been attacking desperately around Tel el Eisa in the north he had a particularly good reception.

Very soon Montgomery had visited all the important sectors along the line and had told all senior commanders and their staffs the rough outline of how he proposed to make good his promises.

Then back at his headquarters with his own staff he fixed his plan and began issuing a stream of orders which transformed that tranquil place into feverish activity. First, the present site of the headquarters was banned. Austerity and the Spartan life were out. They would move at once to Burg el Arab so that there could be close liaison with the Air Force headquarters already established there. The place had excellent road, rail and air communications.

Officers were to have tents and proper equipment. Clerks and typewriters were to be sent down at once from Cairo with additional vehicles, including a caravan and a bath for the C.-in-C. The staff was to eat in a properly run mess.

Next, certain high officers were forthwith dismissed from their posts and they were to be replaced by new men sent out from England. Signals were to be dispatched asking for General Horrocks to fly out at once to command the Thirteenth Corps, and General Leese to replace General Ramsden in the Thirtieth Corps. General Lumsden was to have command of the Tenth Corps—the new panzer force. General Harding was to have the picked division—the Seventh.

Next, a general programme of training was to be started at once. It was nonsense to say that the soldiers learned all they wanted to know in the actual fighting; their leaders got killed and wounded and the new men had to be trained.

Next, the battle. The three vital points on the line were Tel el Eisa, on the sea in the north; Ruweisat Ridge in the centre and Alam Halfa in the south. Rommel would certainly attempt to strike near Halfa in the south; that was the critical point.

supposed that Theseus had been killed. *So*, for this reason. *To this day*, upto the present time.

P. 215. *Guarded*, protected. *Drove back*, defeated. *Amazons*, a mythical race of war-like females, are said to have come from the Caucasus and settled in the neighbourhood of Trebizonde on the Black Sea. They invaded Attica during Theseus' reign but he defeated them. *War-like*, martial. *Hellas*, old name of Greece. *Broke into*, forced their way into. *Stopped them there*, checked their further progress. *Took.....wife*, captured their queen Hippolute whom he made his wife. *Went out to fight against*, marched against; attacked. *Lapithai*, an ancient tribe who dwelt in Thessaly. *Peirithoos*, was king of the Lapithai, and married to Hippodamia. When he was celebrating his marriage, the intoxicated Centaur Eurytus carried her off. This led to the celebrated fight between the Centaurs and the Lapithai in which the former were defeated. Peirithoos resolved to carry off Persephone the queen of the Lower world. Theseus, though well knowing the risk accompanied him to the Hades; but both of them were seized by Pluto and Theseus was fastened to a rock from which he was released by Heracles when the latter visited the Lower world. Peirithoos was worshipped as a hero in Athens. *Embraced*, clasped in the arms. *Noble*, warm; intimate. *Is a proverb*, has become a by-word. *Gathered*, collected. *Boroughs*, towns. *Knit*, united. *People*, nation. *Parted*, separate. *And he gathered.....weak*, formerly Attica was divided into many districts, (twelve, according to some writers), which were weak principalities on account of their being independent of one another; but Theseus united all of them into one strong nation. *People*, subjects; the Athenians. *Father*, originator; creator. *Van*, front. *And six hundred years &c.*, This would place Theseus in the 11th Century B. C. The battle of Marathon took place in B. C. 490 between the Persians and the Greeks in which the former were very badly defeated. *For the country*, on the side of the country. P. 216. *Scyros*, an island in the Ægean Sea, which was conquered by Achilles to avenge the death of Theseus, who was treacherously destroyed by Lycomedes the king of Scyros. The bones of Theseus were discovered in B. C. 476 by Cimon, and brought to Athens where they were preserved in a temple (the *Theseum*). *In triumph*, with pomp. *A noble tem-*

happened the enemy must never be allowed to fight according to his own plan; always according to Montgomery's plan. Then the result was certain. Montgomery was going to repeat this point a good deal later on.

On one matter the C.-in-C. was especially emphatic. This was to be a static battle. Except in the fluid gap in the south no one was to budge an inch in any direction. It did not matter if the enemy were routed; there was to be no pursuit. Everyone must stand fast. The enemy must be beaten off and then left alone.

The reason for this was that the real conflict with Rommel was going to follow later on when everything was ready. The defensive battle of Alam Halfa must do nothing to dislocate or disturb the building up of the Tenth Armoured Corps in the rear. No reserves must at this stage be committed to a limited and indecisive pursuit. Everything must await the mass struggle which would start some weeks later when Montgomery judged things ready, not before.

Insistently and steadily, hour after hour the orders went out, and a great commotion spread across the desert. Thousands of men and vehicles on the backward trek were suddenly halted and turned round. Tens of thousands of men, new guns, new tanks and new vehicles began to pour down towards the front from the Nile Delta. Liaison officers in jeeps were dashing about from unit to unit; *Cancel the previous orders, here are the new—for immediate action.* Headquarters abruptly began to pack their trucks, strike their encampments and set off across the open sand. Huge columns were preparing to move, some going south, some north, some towards the front and others away from it. Isolated convoys carrying land-mines and signals, tanks workshops and camouflage gear, hospitals and petrol, barbed wire and food, ammunition and tentage, water and clothing, artillery and spare parts—all the paraphernalia of this strange expedition in the sand—began to chart their courses and drive off through the dust. Everywhere men were digging or on the march. Officers in staff cars were constantly careering by.

To a newcomer the scene would have presented an impression of the wildest confusion, a disordered scramble through the waves of heat and blown sand. Indeed, to the majority of soldiers at this stage this sudden upheaval had no logical pattern. But what was apparent to everyone was that something new and dramatic had happened in the desert. It had come up with the suddenness of a storm and just as inexplicably; but it was a storm blowing from the east, from

to God to lend us His helping hand and make us wise and brave enough to do noble deeds; but let us also pray that He may help us to remain humble when we have performed such deeds so that we may not come to grief and be put to shame. *Help, give, and keep* are in the Subjunctive Mood used Optatively.

## APPENDICES.

### A. Summaries.

NOTE.—Introduction and Summary of the first story, 'Perseus,' has been given along with the notes.

### STORY II.—THE 'ARGONAUTS.'

#### INTRODUCTION.

King Athamas ruled in Boeotia. By the Nymph Nephele, he had two children, Phrixus a son, and Helle a daughter. Their cruel step-mother Ino intrigued to have them sacrificed under the pretext of appeasing the gods so that her own children might become kings. The poor children were brought to the altar, but out of the clouds came the Golden Ram, and took them on his back and vanished. Athamas then became mad, killed one of the children by Ino, and wandered about the country; till he came to the oracle in Delphi, who told him that he must wander for his sin till the wild beasts fed him as their guest. He continued to wander for many days till he saw a pack of wolves, who fled away on seeing him and left a sheep that they were tearing at the time; and he ate of it. Thus the Oracle was fulfilled; and Athamas again set up as a king after building a city.

The ram carried Phrixus and Helle till he came to the Thracian Chersonese where Helle fell into the sea called after her the Hellespont. He then flew on with Phrixus to the north east across the Euxine and at last stopped at Colchis, where Phrixus married Chalciope the daughter of Aietes the king and offered the ram in sacrifice; and Aietes nailed the ram's fleece to a beech in the grove of Ares. This was the Golden Fleece which led to the expedition of the Argonauts.

Phrixus died and was buried at Colchis but his spirit could find no rest as he was buried far from his native country. So he used to come in dreams to the heroes of the Minuiai and asked them to go and bring home the

## CHAPTER NINE

# THE LORD MIGHTY IN BATTLE

### I

No ONE ever knows the truth while a war is being fought. Even after a successful battle the high commanders and the politicians have no time to examine what they have learned from the enemy and themselves before they are plunged again into a new situation full of uncertainties and doubts. As for the general public, a wall of enforced ignorance grows up between them and the actual events, and in a world maddened by its own prejudices and hatreds very few people would be capable of seeing the truth even if they had the knowledge. The men in the inner tactical councils and at the hot anvil of the event, they too can scarcely hope to have a complete and balanced view since they are bounded by the harsh and narrow spotlight of their own experience.

Even years afterwards it is not possible to extract the complete truth because by then the falsehoods of war have been repeated many times and become entrenched; documents are lost, the men who together had a special intricate pattern of knowledge at some special place and time become dispersed and memory grows uncertain.

Probably to this day the majority of people believe that Field-Marshal Alexander and his staff planned and conducted the Battle of Alamein and the subsequent march across the desert to Tripoli. But this was not so. Alexander has never suggested it was so; nevertheless the idea grew and persisted, and in England particularly it was felt that while Montgomery supplied the somewhat egotistical heroics and dramatics at the front, Alexander was the calculating and organizing brain behind.

In actual fact Montgomery was never in any really imminent danger of his life at the Battle of Alamein, and from his headquarters behind the line he probably had a more complete and detached view of the fighting than any other man. This was because Montgomery himself and his staff fashioned the entire plan of the battle in the desert many weeks beforehand. They changed their tactics half-way through the battle and organized the ensuing pursuit. And a great deal of this was done without previous reference to either Field-

seeing a malignant and bitter smile on Pelias' lips, he saw that he was caught in a trap; but remembering his second promise to Cheiron he agreed to stand by his word on condition that Pelias should give him up the kingdom when the fleece was brought home. Pelias promised; and Jason asked him to let him have a victim to sacrifice to Hera, and two heralds who might be sent to the different princes of Greece who were his fellow-scholars at Cheiron's residence to summon them to join him. Pelias praised his wisdom and did accordingly.

Part III. The heralds went about the country crying out "who dare come to the adventure of the Golden Fleece." And stirred by Hera, all the princes came from their valleys to the yellow sands of Pagasai. There came Heracles the mighty with his lion's skin and club; and behind him Hylas his young squire; Tiphys, the skilful steersman; Bute's, the handsomest of all man; Castor and Polydeuces the twins; Cæneus the strongest of mortals whom the Centaurs tried in vain to kill; Zetes and Calais the winged sons of the north wind; Peleus the father of Achilles; Telamon and Oileus the fathers of the two Aiantes; Mopsus the wise soothsayer; Idmon who prophesied of all things to come; Ancaios who could read the stars; and Argus the famous shipbuilder; and many other brave warriors. The inhabitants of Iolcos came out to meet them and under the directions of Argus they built a long galley which they called the *Argo*.

Jason went to Orpheus whom he persuaded to accompany him, and he led Jason to Dodona, where they sacrificed to Zeus and Hera, and cut down a bough which they brought to Iolcos and nailed to the beak head of the ship. The ship however refused to move until Orpheus played upon the harp and sang a stirring song:

Part IV. The heroes came to Aphetai where they swore a solemn oath to stand by Jason faithfully in the adventure of the golden fleece. They sailed past the Isle of Sciathos, and turned to the northward toward Pelion up the long Magnesian shore; where they landed to allow Peleus to see his son Achilles who was living with Cheiron. There they rested for a night and in the morning rowed past Olympus, the bay of Athos, and Samothrace till they came to Lemnos. From Lemnos, they sailed to the Propontis.

under the imminent threat of invasion from Italian and German airborne forces in Sicily. They put it to Alexander. Could not the attack at Alamein be launched in September? Alexander sent on the message to Montgomery. No, Montgomery replied, I am not ready yet. Again the Cabinet pressed, and this time it was more like an order. Montgomery finally replied to Churchill through Alexander with these three points:

1. If the attack starts in September it will fail.
2. If we wait until October I will personally guarantee great success and the destruction of Rommel's army.
3. Am I to attack in September?

It was a polite form of blackmail. The Cabinet gave in. In many ways it was an extraordinary truculence in a junior commander, but Montgomery had one solid factor to back his judgment: the Battle of Alam Halfa had begun on August 31st and it had gone precisely as Montgomery had planned and predicted it. Rommel had attacked in the south, had been sucked into the corridor at Halfa, had been mercilessly bombarded while he was in the British minefield, had turned to assault Halfa itself and been destroyed on the new British positions there. Eventually after six days of intense fighting, when wave after wave of the enemy had been beaten off, Rommel had ordered the retreat, and now the gap had been sealed off with a new minefield linking Halfa to the Qattara Depression.

As a curtain raiser, as a promise of his skill and foresight, Montgomery could not have a better start. Many experts regard Alam Halfa as his greatest battle. The swiftness of the planning, the soundness of the dispositions, the intelligence of the anticipation, the clarity of the orders—all these things had an electric result in the desert.

The British troops had not been permitted to pursue, but their elation at standing firm, at wreaking such damage, and now the sight of so many reinforcements pouring into the desert—all this began to fan the spark of morale into a flame.

Then, too, Montgomery had been fortunate. Rommel's attack had come a full fortnight after his (Montgomery's) arrival in the desert. He had had time to get his two new divisions into position. On the other hand, it would be grossly incorrect to say that Montgomery was bound to succeed because of the reinforcements. This is another delusion which has been persisted in since Alamein. It was said that he had the rare good fortune to take over a highly trained army and at a time when two fresh divisions and many extra guns and tanks were being

the Pillars of Hercules, past the Ansonian islands, and Tyrrhenia they reached the sea wherein lay the island of the Sirens, and Orpheus had to strain every nerve to prevent the fascination of the heroes by their songs. Despite all this, Butes swam across, and was about to be devoured by the Sirens when Aphrodite carried him off to heaven. Through Scylla and Charybdis, they were guided by Thetis the sea nymph who came up from the depths below to help her husband, and then sailed on till they reached the country of the Phaeacians where they were received by Alcinous but some of the Colchians were also staying there in search of Medeia. The song of Orpheus stirred the heart of Arete the Queen, who begged her husband not to allow the Colchians to take Medeia with them. It was at last decided that the Colchians should settle there and the Argonauts departed homewards. They wanted to supply themselves with provisions at Crete but Talus the giant who guarded the coast stood in their way. Medeia by her artifices destroyed the giant; and after filling their ship with food and water; and passing the Laconian shore and Sunium; and up the long Eubœan Strait, they reached Iolcos by the sea. They carried the ship ashore but were too weary to move up the beach; and sat down weeping till they were surrounded by a large number of people who, however did not recognise them. Jason and Medeia went to the palace of Pelias, whom they found sitting with Aeson. Jason fell down at his father's feet but the old man did not know him, till Jason repeatedly assured him that he was his own son.

Part VI. The tale concludes sorrowfully. Medeia induced the daughters of Pelias to kill him under the pretext of restoring his youth. So Jason could not love her, but deserted her; and she revenged herself fearfully upon him. The other Argonauts distinguished themselves in various ways and dying, left brave sons behind whose fame lives in the *Iliad*, which describes the siege and reduction of Troy by the Greeks.

---

### STORY III.—THESEUS.

#### ANALYSIS.

The story is divided into four parts, each of which describes a distinct epoch in the life of the hero. Part I.



Once the plan was selected a series of intensive interviews followed with the commanders of the various Army branches and units. One by one the heads of supply, intelligence, artillery, armour and signals were called. The head of artillery, for example, might be asked to reduce things to the simplest form: "How many guns have you got? How long will it take you to bring the total up to a thousand? How many rounds of ammunition will you want to maintain a barrage of two hours' rapid fire?" And to the controller of the armour: "How many tanks? How long to proceed from A to B? How much petrol wanted?" Each man had to be prepared to answer clearly, simply and rapidly—and then make his word good. Very soon commanders learned it was stupid to boast, worse than stupid to underestimate: Montgomery was particularly severe on those who he felt were not doing enough. To everyone it was painfully clear that mistakes and miscalculations were followed by only one thing: instant dismissal.

With his controller of supplies Montgomery went into a careful examination. "When could he deliver? And once the battle became fluid for how long could he keep up delivering and at what rate?"

With the intelligence branch a different game was played. "Imagine yourself the enemy", Montgomery said. "Suppose I did this and this. What would you do?" It was up to the intelligence officer to carry in his head the latest dispositions of the Axis Army, to know its strength from day to day in guns, aircraft, men and tanks, to have information on expected reinforcements. In front of him the dispositions of the coming battle were spread out on a map and he was expected to play against Montgomery a strange and fascinating parlour game, making move for move against the British.

Much of this was, of course, accepted practice in planning. Montgomery's special contribution was that he heightened and centralized and streamlined the whole procedure. Having chosen his plan he discarded the alternatives. All his eggs were put into the one basket. Consequently his orders were very few, very simple and very definite; everyone knew exactly what he had to do. This was the very reverse of what had happened at the fall of Tobruk.

The Air Force was a much more intricate problem, over which the leaders had been quarrelling for years. The air marshals—many of them trained in the old Royal Flying Corps—insisted that for efficiency they must remain a separate unit. Against this the Army argued hotly; Air Force and Army, they said, must be combined as in the Russian, German and

had completed his fifteenth year, she carried him up the hill near Trœzene, and pointing to a particular place, she bade him lift up a large stone which, she said, lay under a tall plane-tree. Theseus tried his best but could not lift it. Aithra sighed; but kept patience. The boy spent much of his time in manly games, but though he became the most powerful man of his time in Trœzene he could not lift the stone for 2 successive years. After his 18th year when he killed Phaia the wild sow of Crommyon, and was universally acknowledged to be the bravest and strongest youth, he was able to lift the stone. Beneath it he found a sword and a pair of sandals and brought them to his mother who thereupon carried him to the top of the mountain whence he could survey Trœzene, the Aegean sea and the shores of Attica. Aithra then asked him to go to Athens to king Aegeus, show him the sword and sandals, and say, "The stone is lifted but whose is the pledge beneath it." Theseus at first was unwilling to leave his mother, but she said that as her life up to that time had been full of sorrow, she could easily bear further sorrows. After this she went into the temple and Theseus began to ponder upon the best way of reaching Athens. At first he thought of crossing the sea in a swift ship; but as he was anxious to distinguish himself in adventures, he resolved to make the journey by land round the Isthmus of Corinth. He journeyed in peace till he came to the Spider mountains where he met Periphetes the robber who used to murder travellers with his brazen club. On seeing Theseus, Periphetes rushed at him, but was killed by the hero who carried his brazen club and bearskin cloak as trophies of victory. He then came to a valley where he saw flocks and herds lying quietly beneath the trees, and shepherds and nymphs dancing on the green but without any music. (The music would have roused the robber and therefore they danced without it). On seeing him, the nymphs dived into the fountain close by and the shepherds ran away. Theseus was surprised at this behaviour but said nothing. He lay down to sleep beneath a shady tree. When he awoke, he saw the nymphs peeping at him across the pool from their caves on the further side and whispering to each other. From what he could overhear of their conversation, he gathered that he had been mistaken for Periphetes on account of the club and the bearskin cloak. He therefore quickly set them right by declaring that he was

determined to attack by night. At this period of the war there was no such thing in use as artificial moonlight, created by shining searchlights into the sky, and so they needed a moon—preferably a waxing moon. The meteorologists told them that this and other necessary conditions would occur on October 23rd.

The advantages of a night attack were obvious: the infantry could find cover in the darkness but it would not be so dark under the moon that they lost contact with one another. For the last few hours before dawn they would be able to pick up mines, dig into the sand and remain there under cover to repel daylight counter-attacks until the following night. Then they would advance again.

Up till now the artillery had been dispersed along the line. Montgomery decided to bunch it together so that it should strike with one concentrated blow. This was part of the general over-all scheme that attack should always be delivered on a narrow front with tremendous driving power behind it.

Further, he discarded the theory that a gap must be made by the infantry in the opposing minefields and fixed defences: the infantry at Alamein would start the gap and then the armour was to blast its way through the remainder. In this case they would be led by the newly invented flails—tanks which exploded mines harmlessly by threshing the ground before them with long chains.

Years before, General Wavell and General O'Connor had established the principle that you must encircle the enemy by penetrating deep into the unprotected desert to the south and then wheeling north to the coast. At Alamein Montgomery temporarily abandoned this theory. He argued that if we attacked in the south—admittedly the weakest part of Rommel's line—then our southern flank would be closed by the Qattara Depression and the thrust would have only one alternative—to wheel northwards. He determined to put his main thrust into the north-centre of the line so that he would be able to wheel either north or south according to how the battle developed.

Finally, there was an elaborate scheme of deception under which tanks were camouflaged as trucks, and fake encampments with fake tanks were secretly built to deceive the enemy reconnaissance aircraft.

For his initial strike Montgomery had upwards of a thousand guns and seven divisions of infantry: the Australians, New Zealanders, South Africans, Indians and the 51st Highland Division. There were also the British 50th and 44th Divisions. With these he would force a "pocket" in the enemy line in the neighbourhood of Ruweisat and Tel el Eisa on the night of

wood, and when he had done so, the old man told him all about the doings of Procrustes ; which made Theseus so angry that he stalked down the glen till he met the robber coming up with the merchants and denounced him before them all. Procrustes showed signs of coming to blows whereon Theseus quickly despatched him, and proceeded on his journey to the vale of Cephissus and the pleasant town of Aphidnai where he was purified by the Phytatids. He then went to Athens, to the palace of his father king Aegeus, where he saw his cousins, the Pallantids, revelling in the hall of the king, who himself however, was nowhere to be seen. He sent a message by one of the servants to Aegeus, who was in the chamber with Medeia the witch, saying that Theseus of Troezen asked his hospitality. At the name *Troezen*, Aegeus' colour changed, but subduing his feelings he came out into the hall where both the father's and the son's hearts opened towards each other. Medeia in the meantime, had watched these proceedings. She prepared a poisoned cup of wine, which she herself brought into the hall and presented to Theseus, but he became suspicious, and insisted upon her tasting of it first. She then dashed the cup to the ground and fled away in her dragon chariot. After that he displayed the sword and sandals to Aegeus who at once acknowledged him, and declared him to be his successor. The Pallantids grew jealous and attacked Theseus all in a body but he killed all of them; while those who fled, were set on by the people and driven out of the city. After that Theseus lived peacefully at Athens till the spring equinox when a herald arrived from Crete, to demand 7 youths and 7 maidens as tribute due from the Athenians to his master king Minos of Crete in revenge for the murder of the latter's son in Athens. Theseus asked to be allowed to go as one of the youths that, he might kill the minotaur (the monster who devoured them) and thus put an end to the matter for ever. Aegeus was at first quite averse to this proposal, but at last he agreed on one condition, *viz.*, that if Theseus returned safe, he should hoist a white sail in place of the black one which used to be displayed on the return of the ship that conveyed the youths and maidens to Crete. Theseus then went to the market-place where lots were being drawn for the youths and maidens, and volunteered to be one of them. When they reached Crete, Ariadne the

and man, should enter the battle with the determination to see it through—to fight and to kill—and finally, to win.

"If we do this there can only be one result—together we will hit the enemy for 'six', right out of North Africa.

"The sooner we win this battle, which will be the turning-point of the war, the sooner we shall all get back to our families.

"Therefore let every officer and man enter the battle with a stout heart, and the determination to do his duty so long as he has breath in his body.

"AND LET NO MAN SURRENDER SO LONG AS HE IS UNWOUNDED AND CAN FIGHT.

"Let us all pray that 'the Lord mighty in battle' will give us the victory."

And then the thick aggressive scrawl beneath this declaration:

"B. L. MONTGOMERY,  
"Lieutenant-General, G.O.C.-in-C.,  
"Eighth Army."

It was the formula which, just as unconsciously and instinctively, he was going to use again and again: the "I" and the "we"; the emphasis—the prophetic emphasis—that this was a battle in which it was worth a man's risking his life, indeed a battle that was going to shake the earth and alter the course of the war; the boisterous and personal reference to the enemy; the comforting reassurance that the soldier was not alone—he had the Air Force behind him and good weapons: the mention of reward in the soldier returning to his family; and finally the commitment of the whole issue to God.

### 3

In general outline the Battle of Alamein was fought according to Montgomery's plan. At no time in that violent fortnight did the enemy regain the initiative.

It was fortunate indeed that Rommel was absent at the outset; fortunate that he did not get back until it was too late to stop the rout. For the result all the credit must go to the planning and handling of the men and more particularly to the men themselves.

Outwardly Montgomery remained entirely unmoved throughout; he went to bed at his usual hour each night and slept well. If he was shaken at the several crises he gave no evidence of it whatever.

When commanders came to argue with him that to con-

## B. SOME RATIONAL EXPLANATIONS OF THE EVENTS MENTIONED IN THE STORIES.

**Birth of Perseus.** The story of the seduction of Danae by Zeus in the form of a shower of gold has been explained by some ancient writers by saying that Proetus had fallen in love with his niece, and that it was he who corrupted the guards of Danae's prison *with gold*, and gained admission into the tower. She became by him the mother of Perseus.

**The Gorgons.** Diodorus Siculus says that the Gorgons were female warriors inhabiting the neighbourhood of Lake Tritonis in Libya. Pausanias explains the story of Medusa by saying that she laid waste the lands of the nations in her vicinity; and Perseus, who had fled from the Peloponnesus with some companions, surprised and killed her by night; and being struck with her beauty, he cut off her head and carried it to Greece where the people were struck with astonishment ("turned into stone") on seeing it. Pliny, Athenaeus and Solinus suppose the Gorgons to have been wild women of savage nature, who committed dreadful atrocities on wayfarers. Ammonius Serenus held that the Gorgons were young women of such beauty as to make a great impression on all who saw them; while Leclerc thinks that the story bears reference to a voyage made by the Phœnicians to the coast of Africa. Alexander of Myndus says that Libya had an animal which the natives called 'Gorgon;' that it resembled a sheep, and killed with its breath all who approached it.

The Gray Sisters are said to have been rich young women who had inherited from their father some islands and a golden statue of Minerva called the "Gorgon." They had only one steward ("one eye and one tooth") who travelled throughout their territory ("banded the eye to one another"). Perseus, a fugitive from Argos, having heard of the statue, determined to obtain it; and on being refused, he captured the steward ("took the eye in his hand") and kept him in custody, till he had obtained possession of the statue, which he broke in pieces, and placed the head upon the beak-head of his ship. As the sight of this, and the fame of Perseus' exploits, spread terror everywhere and caused passive submission to him, the fable of his turning people into stone with Medusa's head, originated.



C. SIXTY MODEL QUESTIONS WITH  
ANSWERS.

THE PREFACE.

Q.—1 *Describe the influence which has been exerted by the ancient Greeks on the Literature, Arts, and Sciences of Europe.*

A.—Page 218 of the Text.

A.—(1) Greek names, words, and proverbs, are used in almost all well-written books.

(2) Greek buildings are seen in every large town.

(3) Greek statues, and ornaments are found in every well-furnished room.

(4) We owe the beginnings of our Mathematics, Geography, Astronomy, Politics, Logic and Metaphysics to the Greeks. (This may be true of Europe but certainly not of India).

(5) Greek became the common language of educated people all over the old world.

Q.—2. (a) *By what name did the Greeks call themselves?* (b) *Who gave them the name of Greeks?*

A.—(a) Hellens, (b) The Romans.

Q.—3. *Mention those places where the Greeks were formerly found.*

A.—Greece; the Archipelago; the coast of Asia Minor; Sicily; South Italy; the shores of the Black sea; Egypt; Syria; Persia; and the whole east.

Q.—4. *What did the Greeks learn from (a) the Phœnicians, (b) the Assyrians (c) and the Egyptians.*

A.—(a) Shipbuilding and some say letters beside. (b) Painting; carving, and building in wood and stone. (c) Astronomy and many other things.

Q.—5. *To what does Kingsley attribute the fall of the Greeks?*

A.—Kingsley says that at first they believed in one God, but afterwards they began to worship other gods. This brought about their ruin.

Q.—6. *Describe the religious and social condition of the Greeks at the time of which Kingsley speaks in his tales.*

A.—They had not fallen very low in religion. They worshipped no idols and believed that without the gods men were sure to come to ruin. They lived in a simple way. Their kings and heroes cooked their own meals and



paradoxically, was nearly captured a day or two later. Riding in the van in an open car he sent his A.D.C.s down the coastal road to Mersa Matruh to site a new headquarters, and was about to follow when shooting broke out. The A.D.C.s (who included Montgomery's stepson, Richard Carver) were ambushed by a German rearguard and were captured. Montgomery himself turned back just in time.

And now at the moment when the British were about to snatch the entire prize, fortune suddenly swung to the Germans. A violent and unseasonable storm began. The rain streamed down. Presently the pursuing columns were reporting back that their tanks were bogged. Vehicles heavily laden with petrol and ammunition were delayed for days. Pursuing aircraft were grounded. Hour by hour the momentum slowed down. At this news Montgomery revealed the first sign of weakness he had shown since his arrival in the desert. Discussing the matter later he said: "I nearly burst into tears in front of my staff".

But the prize if diminished (and lacking the capture of Rommel) was still immense and still the pursuit struggled on across the seaboard of northern Africa for hundreds of miles. Tobruk was avenged on November 11th. Martuba fell on the 15th. Racing across the base of the Cyrenaican bulge the British tanks and armoured cars arrived in Benghazi just too late—the Germans had slipped in and slipped out again on their desperate journey south and west around the Gulf of Sirte.

The taking of the Martuba airfields was probably the most vital date in this headlong race. Montgomery had been told that the plight of Malta was now critical: either a convoy with oil and food had to get through from Alexandria or it was the end of the island. To give the convoy any chance it had to be protected by land-based fighters, especially through the narrows between Crete and Africa, and the only place on which the fighters could be based for the task was at Martuba. On November 17th the convoy set out from Alexandria, and simultaneously fighter maintenance crews, working at speed at Martuba, got their aircraft off the captured airfield. More fighters came out from Malta for the last stage of the journey. The convoy got through and the island was never again in danger.

On the land the Eighth Army streamed on to that critical point at El Agheila, south of Benghazi, where two British armies before them had been halted and flung back. General Miles Dempsey had flown out from England to take over the

Q.—(3) *“Because you have risen up against your own blood, your own blood shall rise up against you.” Against whom is this prophecy directed and why? How was it fulfilled?*

A.—This prophecy is directed against Acrisius, who fought with his brother Proetus. The prophecy was fulfilled in this manner. Acrisius had a daughter named Danae, who bore a son named Perseus. Acrisius was killed by a quoit, hurled by Perseus.

Q.—(4) *Give in the form of a narrative the substance of the conversation between Danae and Dictys at the first interview.*

A.—Dictys asked Danae what strange chance had brought her to his island in a chest. He asked her who she was, and whence she came. Danae wished to know the name of the land and asked among whom she had fallen. Dictys replied that the island was called Seriphos and he was a Hellen and the brother of Polydectes, the king. Danae fell down at his feet and entreated to be allowed to live in his house as a servant. Adding however that she should be treated honourably and that she would not eat the bread of idleness. Dictys called her his daughter and said that he feared the gods and would treat her as a daughter to himself and to his wife and the babe as their grand-child.

Q.—(5) *Briefly enumerate the circumstances under which Perseus vowed a rash vow.*

A.—Refer to the Analysis of Chapter II. as given in the key.

Q.—(6) *Summarise the instructions given to Perseus by Athene, when the former undertook to bring Medusa's head.*

A.—The following were the instructions :—(1) Perseus was to go to the country of the Hyperboreans till he found the three Gray Sisters, who had but one eye and one tooth between them. (2) He should ask them the way to the Nymphs, who would tell him the way to the Gorgons. (3) He should not look at her, but at her image in the polished shield. (4) Having struck off the head he should wrap it in the folds of the goat-skin, on which the shield was hanging.

Q.—(7) *What were the places through which Perseus had to pass while going to the Unshapen Land?*

so long as there was fast action, they were willing to accept this kind of war as well as any other.

The problems of sex, of neurosis, of *cafard* did not often arise. In the absence of nearly all the ordinary amenities and pleasures of life most men developed personalities which were at least superficially new. There were no cinemas, no advertisements, very few radios and newspapers to remind them of women, and women themselves were never seen from one month's end to another. To a great extent sex was sublimated in the intense comradeship of the men, a thing that is almost wholly unknown on this scale in peace. There was no alcohol, but the soldiers talked endlessly over their thick and sticky tea, and the desert gave the mind a sense of spaciousness so that the talk, like the talk of undergraduates, ranged endlessly and experimentally over heaven and earth unfettered for the most part by taboos, by special knowledge, by custom or by superstition or fear.

Very soon the Eighth Army became a private expeditionary force, a crusade, remote from all the world. The men *felt* different to other men. The atmosphere was that of a boys camp: physical, communistic, exuberant and determined. They developed a new argot of their own, a new style of dress (among the officers it was desert boots, coloured scarves, corduroy trousers). Like chameleons, the Army—the men and their vehicles too—turned the colour of the desert; red-browns and whitish-browns. They grew lean and hard. In this life there was no money and no commercial value upon anything, no scheme of social grades, not very much personal ambition. All the real values rested upon the man himself, upon human life, upon the daily accomplishment of some practical thing. By this you were assessed, not upon your background, and each man felt himself to be a separate individual fulfilling an essential part in the machine.

All this Montgomery encouraged strongly. He had great shrewdness in reacting to an atmosphere and the emotions of men in the mass, but it was largely an unconscious shrewdness, more a sense of touch. And thus occurred the matter of the black beret.

One day during the Battle of Alamein he climbed into a tank in order to go up nearer the fighting. A member of the crew offered the General his beret as something more comfortable and convenient to wear in that confined space. Montgomery added his general's badge to the Royal Tank Corps insignia already on the beret, and he continued wearing it throughout the battle. By this time the soldiers everywhere

(P. 20 of the Text). The hat of darkness was brought from Hades (See Q. 10).

Q.—(13) *On what occasions did Perseus make use of the Gorgon's head?*

A.—(1) He turned the Atlas into a stone; (2) He turned the sea-monster into a long black rock; (3) He turned the men who attacked him to take away Andromeda into stone; (4) He turned Polydectes and his guests into stone when the former contemptuously treated him after he had brought the Gorgon's head.

Q.—(14) *How did Perseus kill his grand-father? Of what prophecy was this a fulfilment?*

A.—See pp. 57-58 of the Text, and Q. 3.

Q.—(15) *Explain the following:—*

(a) *These are the days.....summer sea* (p. 3).

(b) *This boy is somewhat more than mortal* (p. 6).

(c) *I will not be a charge to you or eat the bread of idleness* (p. 7).

(d) *Perseus had need of all his wit to defend his mother and himself* (p. 8).

(e) *From the souls of clay I turn away, and they are blest but not by me.*

(f) *Better to die in the flower of youth.....die unloved and unrenowned* (p. 11).

(g) *Wisdom is the daughter of old age* (p. 25).

(h) *At last they struck upon the scent of blood and they checked for a moment to make sure* (p. 33).

(i) *Bear me well now, brave sandals, for the hounds of Death are at my heels.*

(j) *As yet he seems but a helpless bridegroom* (p. 50).

A.—Refer to the key.

## STORY II.—THE ARGONAUTS.

Q.—(16) *Who were the Argonauts?*

A.—Refer to the key.

Q.—(17) *Give a short account of the Argonautic expedition.*

A.—Refer to the key.

Q.—(18) *Write short notes on* (a) *The Centaurs* (b) *The Golden Fleece* (c) *Æson* (d) *Heracles* (e) *Castor and Polydeuces* (f) *Orpheus* (g) *The Hades* (h) *The Harpies* (i) *Medeia* (j) *Jason* (k) *The Sirens* (l) *Alcinous.*

A.—Refer to the Key.

Rommel affected by it all? Maps were brought in and they began to fight the battle over again, two professionals discussing a championship match. Montgomery explained his plan; von Thoma responded. By the time the meeting broke up the British general was in possession of a great deal of information about how the enemy fought; more than this, he had discovered something of the mystery he was always probing—the mentality of his opponents, especially the arch-opponent Rommel's. To Montgomery the rumpus over his talk with von Thoma was sheer nonsense. He felt he had done well out of it; he had gathered a number of valuable points for the next battle.

The incident gave him one other thing as well—a stronger awareness of the role of the Press and propaganda in warfare. As with most British generals the Press and the Radio had been to Montgomery a closed book: they fulfilled somewhat the same functions as the strolling troubadour in olden days who, after the battle was over, sat by the camp-fire with his guitar and wove pleasant and romantic stories around the heroic deeds of the soldiers. They were the light appendages of civilization but not to be confused with the serious business of making war.

Latterly as a general he had shifted his ground somewhat: the Press was valuable in maintaining morale. It could be used. Of itself the Press had no validity, no entity, no mission any more than the Morse Code had a mission: it was simply a signalling set for transmitting news to the people at large according to the desires and requirements of the commanders and the leaders. Accordingly it was necessary for the Press to function efficiently. He issued orders that the war correspondents must be kept fully informed and given all possible facilities.

Thus at one stroke, without any real sympathy with or understanding of the Press (as the Press regarded itself), Montgomery cut straight to the heart of the matter. He never questioned the loyalty or the goodwill of the Press. Again it was his Socratic approach: the Press had only to report the activities of the Eighth Army and morale would improve and all would be well. And in point of fact this turned out to be so. By an altogether foreign method of reasoning the General had arrived at the conclusion that pleased everyone. The dangerous question of the freedom of the Press, the right of the Press to criticize and publish conflicting points of view, never arose because the issues in war are simple, one-sided issues and Montgomery was always winning victories.

A.—He who would win the fleece was required to do the following things. (a) The two brazen-footed bulls were to be tamed. This was done by the spells of Medeia.

(b) With them four acres had to be ploughed in the field of Ares. Medeia had given Jason an ointment which made him as strong as seven men.

(c) The fields must be sown with serpent's teeth of which each tooth was to spring up into an armed man and the seeker of the Golden Fleece must fight with these men. Under Medeia's advice Jason cast his helmet among their ranks and they fought with each other and perished.

Q.—(27) *How were the Argonauts punished for Medeia's murder of Absyrtus?*

A.—Pages 128 and 129 of the Text.

Q.—(28) *Give the modern geographical names for the following: (1) The Ister stream (2) Mæotid lake (3) The Rhiphaian hills (4) The Cronian sea (5) The Isle of Ierne (6) Aiaia.*

A.—(1) The Danube (2) The sea of Azov (3) The Ural mountains (4) The Baltic (5) Britain and (6) The Azores.

Q.—(29) *What was the end of Butes?*

A.—Pages 136, 137 and 138 of the Text.

Q.—(30) *By what stratagem did Medeia kill the giant Talus?*

A.—Pages 157 and 158 of the Text.

Q.—(31) *"We are the sons of your princes, who sailed out many a year ago." When was this said? by whom? and why?*

A.—Page 159 of the Text.

Q.—(32) *How did Medeia punish Jason's uncle, Pelias?*

A.—Page 161 of the Text.

Q.—(33) *Describe the end of Cheiron.*

A.—Pages 163 and 164 of the Text.

Q.—(34) *"Prayers are the daughters of Zeus" mention two instances where this was said by different persons under different circumstances.*

A.—Pages 90 and 151 of the Text.

Q.—(35) *Explain the following.*

team with him wherever he went. Thus he was never a "one-man" general such as the public imagined him to be. His word was law at his headquarters, but at the same time he was entirely dependent on his subordinates and he was intensely loyal to them to the end. As they followed his star upwards he saw to it that they shared the honours and the promotions.

In one other respect this headquarters was a break with tradition. For a very long time up to and including this war it had been the practice of British generals to appoint to their staffs wealthy and influential young men, the sons of dukes and earls and baronets. And sometimes these young men, especially when they entered politics, were useful to the generals in later life. One does not suggest that there was any bribery and corruption about this, but the fact remained that many generals were to be found in the fashionable houses of England after their wars were done. It was simply an extension of the "old school tie" system, the system of a social class looking after its own.

With this business Montgomery would have no truck at all. No one with a title got on to his staff. Pure merit was the only way of getting there and staying there. He was entirely devoid of snobbery, entirely uninterested in money and not at all concerned about his future career outside the Army.

About the time the Eighth Army reached Benghazi, Montgomery decided on one more innovation. He created a Tactical Headquarters where he lived quite apart from and some miles forward (*i.e.* nearer the front) of his Main Headquarters where de Guingand presided.

The object of this was to give the C.-in-C. "time to think". He already possessed unusual powers of mental detachment and this was a move to take this meditative process one step further. Tactical and Main Headquarters seldom linked up until the Army reached the Baltic in Germany at the end of the war.

Tactical Headquarters was a tiny camp. Montgomery lived there with his cook, his batman, his chauffeurs and a small group of young men who were his aides, his secretaries and his liaison officers. Together they formed a kind of personal body-guard and information corps. No one approaching Montgomery's own age, no other general or commander, ever lived with him; he was entirely surrounded by very young men. No one without previous authorization was allowed within the precincts of the camp. All visitors except Royalty and those of Cabinet level were usually forbidden. If any general wished to see the C.-in-C. he had first to go to de Guingand. It was

Q.—(44) *How did Medeia attempt to kill Theseus, How was she frustrated in her design? what then became of her?*

A.—Pages 197 and 198 of the Text.

Q.—(45) *Give the history of the tribute which Ægeus promised to Minos.*

A.—Page 201 of the Text.

Q.—(46) *How did Ariadne help Theseus in killing the Minotaur and on what condition? What happened afterwards to her?*

A.—Pages 210 and 214 of the Text.

Q.—(47) *Describe some of the exploits of Theseus after he had become king?*

A.—Page 215 of the Text.

Q.—(48) *“And one thing worst of all he did, which brought him to his grave with sorrow.” Fully explain the allusion in this.*

A.—Pages 216, 217 and 218 of the Text.

Q.—(49) *What is the moral that may be derived from the story of Theseus?*

A.—Page 218 of the Text.

Q.—(50) *Explain the following:—(v) Lift the stone this day or never know who you are (P. 167)*

(b) *If I were king of such a land.....shepherd of his people (P. 179)*

(c) *Grief is easy to those who do nought but grieve (P. 171)*

(d) *My larder has grown empty lately; so, I have two fir trees ready for thee (p 180)*

(e) *Blood was shed in the land unjustly and by blood it is avenged (P. 202)*

(f) *But if men grow proud.....may be his alone (P. 218)*

A.—Refer to the Key



of view the scheme was most valuable, since each evening he was put in possession of the latest first-hand news from the entire front.

The commanders of the soldiers in the field might not have looked upon the arrangement so favourably. These young men had the ear of the C.-in-C. They were his agents. They had *carte blanche* to travel everywhere and see everything. They were on nodding terms with all the senior generals and even some of the politicians who visited Montgomery's camp. Clearly the system was open to abuse.

In actual practice nothing of the sort occurred. The men were very junior, they were modest and they did not gossip; Montgomery drove them hard, at crises tremendously hard. In their jeeps each day they often had to chart their courses through no-man's-land in order to get to the outlying pickets and they were constantly in danger, which is probably the final purifier of venality and materialism.

They lived in a world where they had to expect death, and as time went on a shockingly high percentage of them did die.

All of them were utterly devoted to Montgomery. They accepted the paternal arrangement as a thing quite natural and spontaneous, and presently there grew up in the camp an atmosphere of curiously monastic obedience and affection, the atmosphere of a large Victorian family house, such as, let us say, Bishop's Court in Tasmania or Bishopsbourne at Chiswick. It was the final keynote in this latest pattern of Montgomery's life.

Five years had now elapsed since the death of his wife: years for the most part of bitterness and private grief, the years of renouncement and isolation and defiance; and also the years of professional disappointment in Palestine and Dunkirk; the years without kindness or a home.

But now at the Christmas of 1942 he had pitted himself in an immense gamble and won. He had vindicated in front of all the world the ideas of a lifetime. After Alamein he had been made a Knight and created a full General. Honours had flowed upon him in an avalanche. Messages had come from his King, from his Prime Minister and from all over the Empire. The struggle for recognition was over.

True he jeopardized his reputation in the risk of each new battle, but now he was more certain of himself than ever and now he had the power and the freedom. And something else had arrived, possibly the most important thing of all. The balance was coming back into his life again: the lost affection was



succeed, and at Christmas Montgomery sent out a message to the troops :

"It is wonderful what has been achieved since the 23rd October, when we started the Battle of Egypt.

"I have received a Christmas greeting from Hull, in Yorkshire. It is quite the nicest I have ever received: 'Dear Sir, to wish you and our lads of the Eighth Army a very happy Christmas. Good health. Good luck. And by the Grace of God, VICTORY in 1943. Keep 'em on the run, Monty. Best wishes from a Yorkshire lass with a lad in the Eighth Army.'

"What better Christmas greeting can I send on to you than the one from the Yorkshire lass?"

And again he urged them to hasten on towards Tripoli. But now, for the second time, in the first week in January the weather came in on the Axis side. An immense storm flooded and sank the British ships in Benghazi harbour, the principal, indeed the only supply port of the British. By now they were six hundred miles from Benghazi and the Nile was another six hundred miles farther back; Tripoli was two hundred miles in front of them. Montgomery admits that this was the moment in the campaign when he almost lost heart. The risks were immense. War in the desert could react like an electrical storm. Overnight a victory could be turned into complete disaster. In this exposed position thirst and the lack of petrol could wipe out the soldiers by the tens of thousand. Either Montgomery had to get to the port of Tripoli quickly or turn back. He demanded ten days' supplies from his quartermasters. They said it was impossible; Benghazi was useless. He suggested Tobruk, two hundred and fifty miles farther back, as a supply port. Too far, he was told, no transport to bring the supplies on overland—a week's drive for an army truck. Montgomery abandoned half his Army. The entire Tenth Corps was grounded at Benghazi and its vehicles were handed over to the supply corps for the long haul between Tobruk and the front.

The General waited until he had just ten days' supplies and then on January 15th attacked Rommel's position at Wadi Zem Zem. It was realized that if it failed to get through to Tripoli by January 25th the Army was finished. Concealing his anxiety Montgomery raised another battle-cry to his soldiers. "Nothing has stopped us since the Battle of Egypt", he exclaimed. "Nothing will stop us now. ON TO TRIPOLI."

Again it was a battle of the left hook followed by the punch along the coast. While half his slender force made an inland wheeling march across fantastically difficult country where

vehicles had to be jacked across ravines and quicksands, Montgomery himself took command on the coast. Both forces broke through to Tripoli on January 23rd with just two days to spare.

It was a victory to stretch the imagination. After years of defeat Alamein had turned the course of the war. And now that success had been sealed with a desert march of 1400 miles—a march that no general in history had ever accomplished before. The casualties were extraordinarily light, although some of the best leaders like Harding were wounded, others dead. Tripoli fell precisely three months after Alamein. Montgomery had been in the desert just under a hundred and fifty days. From Tripoli he spoke to the troops—"Once again I thank you from the bottom of my heart".

Back in August, Churchill, then staying for the night at the headquarters at Burg el Arab, had written in Montgomery's autograph book: "May the anniversary of Blenheim, which marks the opening of the new command, bring to the Commander-in-Chief of the Eighth Army and his troops the fame and fortune they will surely deserve".

Now, flying down to Tripoli from England in the first week of February to congratulate the Desert Army, the Prime Minister added another page which he headed "Chapter Two".

"On this night in Tripoli the Desert Army reported the completion of all its tasks hitherto set them, the enemy being driven out of Egypt, Cyrenaica and Tripolitania and all his establishments captured or destroyed.

"These memorable events fulfil the wish I expressed on an earlier page and are, I trust, the prelude to a still more glorious chapter."

## 6

The chapter followed almost at once. With Tripoli in his hands and rapidly opening up as a supply port, Montgomery headed straight for Tunisia where the British First Army and several American divisions were already fighting. By now he had the measure of Rommel and the technique of desert fighting. Four months earlier (before Alamein) he had told Wendell Willkie that he admired Rommel but that the German commander had one grave fault in that he "tended to repeat his tactics". This was true enough since there are not many novel tactics one can employ when one has lost the initiative and is in retreat.

Up to now war in the desert had fallen into a neat and comprehensive design. For the most part the armies were very evenly matched and battles tended to repeat themselves. There was even a certain equilibrium in the swaying mobility of it all.

In that vast and empty space commanders moved their forces as though they were playing some monstrous game of chess; and Montgomery emerged as the successful player, not because he broke the rules of war or invented new ones, but because he paid the most painstaking attention to the rules and because he had that kind of professional patience which never gives way to an emotional impulse, but waits for the eventual loosening of the will in the opponent. While Montgomery was enjoying at home the reputation of being a daring and unorthodox commander, he was pursuing his campaign in Africa in the most practical and level-headed way.

The outward appearance was showy and dramatic; the core was unromantic logic. And now the pendulum of the desert war was about to be swung back forever.

Rommel (who had achieved a parallel reputation in Germany) was an entirely different sort of leader. Unlike Montgomery, he could never leave the details to his subordinates. He was forever jumping into his car or his tank and driving from unit to unit at the height of an engagement, altering his orders, trying experiments, shifting his ground. It was to a great extent an emotional leadership based on flair, an *ad hoc* inspiration. He was not really an Army general: a Corps command was nearer his level and at that level he was extremely resourceful and dangerous. But he was ill-equipped for this long waiting game, and a set-piece battle with all its hundred complications was foreign to his temperament. Even more than Montgomery he was a worshipper of mobility and he had a gambler's instinct for daring innovation. And now as both Allied Armies ground down upon him—the First from Tunisia and the Eighth from the desert—the opportunities for innovation became less and less. He was ill with desert sores. His *will* was wounded. Sooner or later he was bound to commit some act of folly.

About a month before the fall of Tripoli, Montgomery's staff began to plan the battle of Mareth. It was foreseen that, if Tripoli fell, Rommel would no doubt continue his retreat directly to the Tunisian border and there entrench himself in the old French fortifications. Except that this time it was the British who were at the end of a long line of communication, the situation resembled Alamein, and the ensuing battle





AT ALGIERS, 1943

*Left to right : Mr. Anthony Eden, Sir Alan Brooke, Air Chief Marshal Tedder, Admiral Sir Andrew Cunningham, General Alexander, General Marshall, General Eisenhower, General Montgomery. Mr. Churchill in centre*

followed roughly the same course. All February went by in preparation. Then, on March 6th, Rommel committed his act of folly: as at Alam Halfa he struck first, and precisely at a moment when Montgomery had got his reserves into the line. The Germans came on in a massed charge of tanks.

Montgomery was almost conversational in his address which was read out to the troops:

"I did not expect for one moment that the enemy would attack us", he said. "It seemed absurd. But he has done it and we must show our gratitude in no uncertain way."

Yet the moment was critical, and he insisted, "There must be NO WITHDRAWAL anywhere, and, of course, NO SURRENDER". Let the Army just stand firm; Rommel would be crippled and "THEN IT WILL BE OUR TURN TO ATTACK HIM". Once again there was to be no pursuit of the enemy after the assault was beaten off. By this time Montgomery had a magnificent instrument to play with in the Eighth Army. Morale was at its zenith. In an extraordinary outburst of courage the gunners withstood the charge, demolished fifty German tanks outright and the whole attack was flung off balance.

Then a fortnight later the British released the coiled spring again: a heavy direct punch to involve the enemy on the coast and then a circular flanking movement through the inland desert. It looked at first as though things were going wrong. The coastal attack was rolled back. General Leese came to the C.-in-C. at two in the morning with the alarming news that the soldiers had foundered in a wadi; there had been no time to get the anti-tank guns across before the enemy counter-attacked with tanks. Relentlessly Montgomery dismissed the general in charge, plugged the breakage with reserves and sent forty thousand men and two hundred tanks round on the left hook. At the time it seemed a hazardous move to fling all the weight into the left while the right was being hard pressed, but Montgomery was determined to fight the battle according to his own plan and not Rommel's. Success was almost instantaneous. In many ways it was due to the Air Force. Although Montgomery had achieved a closer liaison with the Air than any commander before him, there had been some bickering over the question of whether or not the fliers should come down low to blitz the ground in front of the advancing troops. One group of Air Force leaders believed that low flying was too expensive in pilots and machines and opposed Montgomery in the matter. Air Vice-Marshal Broadhurst, however, was on the spot and was persuaded that the risk was worth while at Mareth—and so it turned out. Nevertheless



the happy issue of the affair did not endear Montgomery to his opponents.

The pursuit streamed on again, this time heading northwards up the coast towards Tunis. Within a fortnight the Eighth Army had reached Gabes Gap, the last defensive position in the south. Again the coiling of the spring, again the sudden strike. This time the assault went in under a black moonless night. Rommel by now had given up. Sick and disillusioned he had flown off to Germany, and there remained in Africa no enemy commander of sufficient calibre to delay the onrush of the Allies. Gabes was a snap success against a collapsing foe. The Eighth Army raced across the battlefield and on past Sfax and Sousse, another hundred miles to the north. And there at last in the spring, within six months of their departure from Alamein and after a march of nearly two thousand miles, they struck the mountains. Of the original German Afrika Korps virtually nothing remained. It was the first decisive victory of the British in the war. It was the last time the British were to be asked to fight alone.

## TOWARDS THE GATES OF ROME

## I

IN the late spring of 1943 Montgomery flew home to England for a few days to discover that, after a lifetime of anonymity in the Army, he had become a national hero.

His family and his intimate friends who had known him since he was a young man were astonished at his success. It almost seemed as if some trick had been played. Whatever could have happened to Bernard? Whoever would have dreamed that he had it in him? He had been rather difficult at times and very keen on his job, but there had certainly been nothing remarkable about him before this. Very definitely he was not a prodigy as a child. He was never really brilliant at school and he never seemed to take much interest in books or politics or making speeches.

They were even more astonished when they observed the aplomb with which Bernard accepted all the honours and the assurance with which he moved in his new exalted circles. Here he was making speeches. Visiting Buckingham Palace to receive his Knighthood, paying calls at Downing Street. Whatever could have happened to Bernard?

A few leaders in the Army, like Wavell, who had appraised Montgomery's military ability long ago, could say they were not surprised. A few, like Burnett-Stuart, could remark sagely: "Genius never shows itself until it is given the opportunity"; or perhaps more aptly, "Genius is the capacity for taking infinite pains, and that is the one thing Montgomery has done all his life". But for the rest, Montgomery's sudden rise was a startling piece of evidence that many of us pass through life without making any real contact with the people around us, even those by whom we are intimately known and loved. It might seem to us that we pass on to others all our hopes and fears, that they understand us and accept our own valuation of ourselves, or at least a valuation that is fair and reasonable; and that, at the end of life, we have said nearly all we had to say, and done nearly all that we could have done within the scope of the luck allotted to us. But then, in the course of things, some tragedy or disappointment intervenes and suddenly we discover then how much we are alone and unable to communicate. A vague and frightening loneliness ensues when

nothing in the world seems of interest, and this persists until we are rescued by routine habits and the little hedonistic pleasures of life.

Perhaps this despair presses most heavily in adolescence when we have so few habits and when the vision of what we might do in life is strongest and our capacity for disappointment is most acute. But then the adolescent dream is thrust down by the material necessity of making a living. It is appeased a little by a love affair or the distraction of pleasure or the illusory sense of power as we advance in our careers or even in our hopes for our children, and in the end it is forgotten: all that we might have been, all that we really hoped for and all our inmost desires in life become as strange to us as they would be to other people. And we accept what we have become as inevitable and true to ourselves. Yet might it not be that we are no more than a mass of habits and adjustments to society, that we have imprisoned our real individuality which nevertheless goes on living somewhere in the background, growing weaker and weaker until we die? Just occasionally and with a few people the true individuality suddenly bursts out, and because we do not know the intimate and secret history in these people's lives we are amazed at what they do.

Montgomery, far less than most people, had revealed himself to the outside world. His life had been lived in very definite separate compartments. His family saw him as the strong-willed and boisterous little boy. They knew very little of the military side of his career where he exhibited a quite different character. To his wife again he showed another side of his nature, something analogous perhaps to his relationship to his father. And, remote from his family, the Army and even from his marriage, there was clearly something else which he had never been able to share with anyone, a certain intensely serious determination to impose his will on other people.

These four attributes, his capacity for struggling, for working, for affection and for power, like an unruly team of horses, had been pulling for a long time in different directions or unequal combinations, never achieving a balance. Now in his middle fifties, by a combination of persistence and good luck, the whole team pulls together and Montgomery alone was unastonished by what was happening to him. This was one of the easier parts of the road.

His visit to England was a military secret, but it was soon learned that he was staying at Claridge's Hotel in London, and crowds began gathering round the doors to watch him pass by.

Ever since the beginning of the war the people had been hungry for a military hero to balance the political hero they had found in Churchill. Here was one ready-made and, moreover, a general full of delightful idiosyncrasies, a man who responded to admiration. When he went to the theatre in his beret he stopped the show. When he appeared in the streets, people rushed forward to shout "Monty". The usual number of witless women wrote letters offering marriage. In the desert Montgomery had personally answered his letters in his own handwriting (except the marriage offers which were not answered at all). Now the correspondence became overwhelming and his A.D.C.s were forced to struggle with it each day.

It had only to be known that he wanted something—a dog, an article of clothing, a car—for gifts to come pouring in from all over England. Many people eagerly offered to replace the books he had lost in his bombed house at Portsmouth. Oceans of bad verse were written about him. Publishers offered him large sums for his memoirs (one offer from America was for £25,000). Charities besieged him to make personal appearances, or confer his patronage. Many millions of words were written about him in the newspapers. His mother and his family were interviewed. Every day his photograph appeared somewhere and presently all Britain and the Empire knew that thin ascetic face. He was a public character and the accent was on the character.

Numberless funny stories about him went the rounds of the pubs and the clubs, most of them variations on the theme of his abstemiousness, his severity and his overwhelming self-confidence. Anyone who had known him from any distance in the past raked up some yarn, some colourful tit-bit. There was the time he had ruthlessly flung civilians out of their houses in the Southern Command and filled the windows with cement. There was the officer whom Montgomery had court-martialled for speaking to his wife while he was on parade. There was the description of the lives of his staff who were forbidden to smoke or drink alcoholic liquor or consort with women, a chastened and fearful little group of prisoners who were compelled to attend morning and evening prayers and dared not cough while Montgomery read the lesson. There were the oppressed Army clerks who took one puff of their cigarettes—and then kicked the butts under the mat when Montgomery came into the room. There were the stories of the sackings, the stories of rows between Montgomery and Alexander.

"How is the battle going?" someone is reported to have asked. The reply: "According to schedule. It started at six and Monty sacked the brigadier at ten."

To Churchill was ascribed the line about him: "In defeat unthinkable, in victory insufferable". And it was related with glee how Montgomery had been appalled at the billows of cigar smoke and alcoholic fumes with which Churchill had filled his tent in the desert. Montgomery's "You and I will see this thing through together" became a catch-line for the wits, and there were half a dozen after-dinner stories of how he had ascended to heaven to dethrone the Almighty.

Montgomery was now "placed" irrevocably in the public mind as a martinet, an eccentric and something of a braggart of the Cyrano de Bergerac variety. Yet perversely he was liked and admired for these qualities, and no one ever questioned his honesty, his piety, his simplicity or the palpable facts of his military success. There was something in this make-up, perhaps the absence of snobbery and military formality, which appealed strongly to the crowds and they loved him. The slight touch of malice in the funny stories tended if anything to increase his popularity.

The genuine opposition came almost entirely from the top and from Whitehall and the West End of London. Uneasy politicians scented an autocrat, a military dictator who was getting too big for his boots. What would happen if he entered politics? The General returning home at the head of a successful army had been a menace since the days of Rome. In the Regular Army there were dark misgivings. Elderly generals saw in him the upstart, the bombastic and reckless wrecker of tradition. In the Navy and the Air Force too there were many who regarded him as vulgarly flamboyant, a film-star commander who was all too ready to seize the credit. Was not Alexander really the man? Was not Alexander the actual brain behind the success?

From the top of the American command there was also some slight coldness. This guy seemed to think he knew everything. It was felt that too much limelight was being grabbed by the British Eighth Army and its unblushing commander.

For the moment this antagonism was not strong; the facts of Montgomery's extraordinary success could hardly be brooked. In the face of the cold and pressing danger of the war it was seen in the Cabinet Defence Committee that this horse must be allowed to gallop on a little longer, although from now on the curb might be usefully applied from time to time.

For the next nine months, from the spring of 1943 until the end of the year, Montgomery was principally engaged in fighting the Sicilian and Italian campaigns. Throughout this period he was acting under orders: the plans for the most part were not his own. Consequently it was a period of argument and dissension. He believed neither in the strategy nor in the tactics as laid down by Allied Headquarters. Sometimes he got his own way; sometimes he failed. Outwardly he continued in the same way, an inspirational general leading his men to the conquest of one city after another, always advancing, always successful in the battle. Unknown to the public and the Army itself he was carrying on with some gusto a guerrilla campaign against his superiors. There was nothing very personal or acrimonious about it, but great issues were at stake and the memoranda flew thick and fast between Eisenhower's base at Algiers and Eighth Army Headquarters.

After the fall of Tripoli and the successful landing of the Allied Forces in North Africa, an entirely new and experimental chain of command was set up, and it persisted until the end of the European war. One must recall it briefly to clarify Montgomery's position. It was a three-decker structure. On the first stage sat Roosevelt and General Marshall in Washington and Churchill and Field-Marshal Alan Brooke in London. Theirs was the world to play with. Assisted by their retinues of experts they decided such momentous questions as where the United States should first commit her main effort—in Europe or the Pacific. On the next stage sat Eisenhower and Alexander at their combined Anglo-American headquarters, and theirs was the responsibility of carrying out the strategy in Europe. Upon the third stage were the operational generals like Patton and Montgomery whose duty was to fight the actual battles.

Inevitably the three stages overlapped. Hardly anyone was willing to stay in his place. Churchill particularly (as in the previous war) was apt to go shooting up and down the scale at a bewildering rate, at one moment urging on the soldiers at the front, at the next carrying out delicate negotiations with the ambassadors in London. Both Eisenhower and Alexander also were prone to step down from the strategy and take a hand at the tactics. Patton and Montgomery, having no convenient stages below them, reversed the current and expressed strong views on the general conduct of the war.

Unavoidably, since they lay in the centre, Eisenhower and Alexander became sandwiched between the upper and the nether layers. While Washington and London kept tugging them this way and that for political reasons, Montgomery and Patton were demanding more power and greater freedom of action in the field. Fortunately both Eisenhower and Alexander had the ideal temperaments to withstand this two-way barrage, but they walked a thin tight-rope at times. They stood between the politics and the battle. They were the governors who simultaneously regulated the driver and the motor. They were the translators who explained the politician to the soldier and the soldier to the politician. On the whole it is remarkable that there were so few quarrels. It was only when Eisenhower and Alexander stepped off the dividing line, when they encroached on the actual fighting (as in Italy) or on the politics (as at Algiers), when they abandoned the generality for the detail on either side, that, occasionally, the results were not so happy.

Montgomery's first contact with the Americans had passed off very well indeed. At Tripoli he had lectured a group of visiting generals on how he had won the desert war, and since the generals were new to war he made a considerable impression.

At Gabes Eisenhower had flown down to spend a night at Tactical Headquarters, and the charm, the modesty and the honesty of the Allied Commander-in-Chief had done its work. There followed the incident of the Flying Fortress which, though it irritated the Allied Command at the time, was not very serious. In a light-hearted moment General Bedell Smith, Eisenhower's Chief of Staff, had promised Montgomery a Fortress for his personal use if he got to Sfax on April 15th. Montgomery arrived five days ahead of schedule and demanded his prize. This was embarrassing to the Americans; they were hardly entitled to go betting with Flying Fortresses, and in any event every machine was wanted at that moment for the subjection of Tunis. This was pointed out to Montgomery. He replied that a bet was a bet and insisted on the delivery of the plane. Understandably nettled, the Americans paid up eventually and the Fortress with its crew of eight (to be maintained at the expense of the United States) arrived at Tactical Headquarters. For some months Montgomery flew about in it between Africa and England. At Allied Headquarters one or two people began to put Montgomery down as a pretty tough dealer.

The bad feeling between the British Eighth and First Armies went a good deal further. For months, while the Eighth Army was making its prodigious advance across the desert, the First



The Armorial Bearings of  
 FIELD MARSHAL the VISCOUNT MONTGOMERY  
 of ALAMEIN, GCB, DSO.

The broken spear is the old Montgomery crest commemorating the ancestor who rode in a tourney against the King of France. The knight in chain armour recalls "Crusader", the code name used by the British Army in the desert. The other supporter is described: "on the sinister side a soldier in battle-dress all proper".





Army under General Anderson had been stuck in the mud and the mountains of Tunisia. In addition, the desert soldiers were veterans, while many of Anderson's men were new to fighting. Inevitably Montgomery's Army captured the headlines in the Press, and a few of the Eighth Army soldiers no doubt behaved a little arrogantly when they arrived at Tunisia. It was bitterly galling for the First Army soldiers who had had so much hard fighting and so many casualties in the mountains. A good deal of this bad feeling was directed against Montgomery himself, indeed it took him many months to overcome.

Some of the First Army units like the 78th Division were very fine formations, but until Alexander arrived to take command there was a lack of cohesion in Tunisia. With all its tremendous experience and morale the Eighth Army itself found the mountains a formidable obstacle when at last it arrived at Enfidaville to the north of Sousse. A useless battering against the heights began and, with a good deal of grim satisfaction, the First Army saw the desert soldiers turned back.

But Enfidaville was, in fact, an impossible proposition. Montgomery and de Guingand very soon suggested that they should desist and instead divert four of their best divisions to the First Army command where they could be used for the easier assault upon Tunis along the Majerda Valley. Time was pressing. The remainder of the Eighth Army was due to regroup for the landing in Sicily. The offer was accepted and Tunis fell on May 7th.

Meanwhile the first real difference of opinion between Montgomery and the Allied Command had arisen over the Sicilian invasion. In April, while his Tactical Headquarters were still at Enfidaville, Montgomery sent de Guingand back to the Nile Delta with a planning staff to work out the details of the operation. De Guingand, on receiving the Allied Headquarters' plan, quickly made up his mind that it would not do. It was proposed to make two separate landings: Montgomery with the Eighth at Gela on the southern coast, and the Americans under Patton far away to the west near Palermo. To Montgomery (who warmly agreed with de Guingand) the whole essence of a landing was concentration. If you sent your armies ashore at different places they were in danger of being destroyed piecemeal before they could link up. He believed that during the early critical period you must make one concentrated blow. The two armies should land side by side at Gela; then the Americans could wheel north-west to the capture of Palermo and the British north-east to seize Catania, the second biggest city. Signals and messages began to flow briskly

back and forth between Montgomery and the Allied Command. Things were running fast towards a deadlock when Eisenhower wisely decided that he would listen to the rival arguments in Algiers.

De Guingand, deputed as Montgomery's spokesman, set off by air from Egypt armed with his dossier—and crashed in the desert near El Adem. Weakened by months of overwork, injured in the crash, he was taken away to hospital. Hurriedly, General Leese was put into his place and flown to Algiers. For some time the arguments flowed back and forth, but in the end, in this first contest with the Higher Command, Montgomery won his point: the two armies would land side by side.

On July 11th, under the full midsummer heat of the Mediterranean sun, the adventure began.

### 3.

In Sicily the oranges were on the trees. The street barrows were laden with melons and peaches and vivid flowers. In the crumbling villages and among the unending olive groves the peasants were driving their ox-carts, spreading out their tomatoes to dry in the brilliant sun, gossiping in the shade of the church, gossiping round the water wells. There was ice-cream for sale, chickens and eggs and wine. Girls in gay colours were hanging out of the upper windows among the flowering creepers; on the cobblestones below priests trotted by on dusty donkeys. All the ox-carts were painted with allegorical pictures full of bright and bulbous angels and swarthy shepherds.

Like the Israelites coming out of the desert the Eighth Army gazed on the scene with delight. And Montgomery, like a prophet, kept riding among the soldiers urging them to keep their eyes off these pleasures and get on with the battle. The first landing had come through with a rush but a choppy sea was running and the boat commanders were protesting that they could not get the heavy equipment ashore. Montgomery sent for the commanders on the beach. They *had* to get their cargoes ashore. He did not care how they did it but the equipment had to be delivered within twenty-four hours. That was the deadline. No excuses would be acceptable. Angrily he went off in search of others who needed bullying.

It was usually the same during a critical moment: he would listen to no arguments; he seemed oblivious of any losses he took and he was quite capable of dismissing anyone—even a general—on the spot. Then when the peak of the crisis passed

most of his irritation and unreasonableness passed as well. These outbursts were reserved for the senior officers; the soldiers knew nothing of them and quite possibly, as they cheered him along the road, they would have relished the information that he had just been extremely insulting to one of their commanding officers.

And now, as they pitched the Germans off the Primasole Bridge and ran on across the malarial plains of Lentini to Catania, that same crusading atmosphere of the desert came back into the Eighth Army. There were many newcomers, the Canadians, the 5th and the 78th Divisions and the French Goums who cheerfully went about behind the enemy lines cutting people's throats without particular reference to whether or not the victims were enemies. The combining element of the Army staff remained the same. In addition to de Guingand there were Richards who controlled the armour, White the signals, Graham the supplies, Williams the intelligence, and Belchem and a group of others the operations. It was growing into a large headquarters now and there were many young colonels and majors and captains who had become avid disciples of the Montgomery technique. General Dempsey was among the new commanders who had come out from England, and a particularly able young Canadian, General Simmonds. Of the old desert divisions the Australians had gone out to the Pacific, and the New Zealanders, South Africans and the Indians were due to arrive later, but General Graham of the British 50th had come in with the assault along with the 51st Highlanders. These were a *corps d'élite* who, with such commanders as Horrocks and Dempsey, were going to persist with Montgomery until the end of the war.

The Eighth Army was an extraordinarily water-tight combine, almost a private club. Here and there it fell on bad days and bad country in bad weather. Occasionally for short periods it came up against better combinations of soldiers and from time to time it grew tired. But it was forever renewing itself with new members, and by the end of 1943 nearly every part of the Empire had sent contingents into its ranks. To wear the Africa Star, to carry the Eighth Army Shield on one's jacket, had become a matter of some pride; and when General Graham came to write to Montgomery at the end of it all he said simply: "Under your command I have never been asked to do anything but advance".

In the last resort the Eighth Army (and subsequently 21 Army Group) succeeded not perhaps so much because it contained such ruthless and determined leaders as Freyberg,

but because of its continuity under the one command, its one continuing purpose.

Essentially it was a professional army with an elaborate network of empirical habits. To be a member of it gave one a sense not only of security but a sense of privilege as well. Montgomery described it as "a family", and in the simple acceptance of that idea he went about administering blame and punishment, encouragement and damnation, as though he were a feudal Irish landlord.

It was an extraordinary experience to go riding out with him along the dusty Sicilian roads. He would set out in an open car soon after breakfast with one of his A.D.C.s, either Poston, Henderson or Chavasse. His pennant fluttered on the bonnet and a large parcel of cigarettes was perched beside him on the back seat. Motor-cycles ran ahead to clear the road of the ox-carts and incredible numbers of Italian children. High on the left rose the stupendous jet-black peak of Etna, smoking quietly, all around spread the vineyards and the orchards rising tier on tier to the overhanging villages; and here on the coast itself the vivid colours of the sea, the ancient fishing hamlets, the flowers and the mouldering churches in the hot sun.

Montgomery had eyes for none of these things. A group of soldiers mending a bridge would catch his notice and as they looked up and shouted to one another, "There's Monty", he would order the car to stop.

"What unit is this?"

Such and such a company of field engineers.

"When will the job be finished?"

To-morrow night or the night after.

"Why not to-night?"

Because they were waiting for a load of girders to come up. Then, to the young officer who had hurried up perspiring as he gripped himself to attention, "Got to hurry on with the job, you know. Keep these fellows' eyes off the girls."

Grin from the soldiers, who were now joined by many others running across the fields.

"Do they smoke?"

"Yes, sir."

"Better hand some of these out."

A dozen hands reach up to take the parcel and the car drives on again. The chances are that the bridge will be finished when Montgomery returns that night.

It was not difficult to do this once. But to do it thirty or forty times in the course of a day was something even beyond

the strength of a seasoned politician. The smallest things caught his attention. A sudden ululation of school children standing on the steps of the village church; at once Montgomery whips round in his seat and waves. As he rides past a convoy of lorries on the road he stands up in the car acknowledging the cheers from every vehicle. More cigarettes at the river-crossing. More again at the regimental aid-post. An exuberant Italian mayor comes rushing out from the *Municipio* scattering *benissimos* and *ben venutos* as he advances. Great God, the British General! A crowd comes running, children and asses and fruit-vendors. Poston tries to head them off. Montgomery delivers a two-sentence speech through his interpreter and passes on again through an outburst of *vivas* and clapping hands. Always, at every turn in the road, the staring faces, the shouts, the clapping, the cries, "There's Monty", the salutes and the reaching hands.

Wherever the Eighth Army goes, in the desert or here among the orchards, it creates a village atmosphere where every sign means something to the members of the club and everyone knows everyone else. You have only to proceed along the Army's line of march to gather all the day's news and see everyone you want to see.

From time to time Montgomery holds up his hand as he looks ahead into the traffic. "Stop that car." It is General Smith or perhaps Brigadier Brown. They pull into the side, Montgomery jumps out and the maps are spread across the bonnet of the car. While the Italians look down delightedly from the housetops, there is a rapid conference: half a dozen questions from Montgomery, two orders, a flurry of salutes and the cars move on again.

In the divisional and Corps headquarters there is no fuss as the C.-in-C. drives in. He spends half an hour in the commander's caravan, another half hour at an observation post overlooking the enemy lines across the vineyards, ducks for shelter there when stray shells come by, and then comes back to the rearward areas to address a parade. The men sit round in a circle on the ground while he stands up in a jeep: "We are going to have a bit of a party . . . good party too . . . hit them for six this time. . . . I would say that this division is second to none . . . one of the very finest members of the team. . . . Americans on our left putting up very good show . . . no doubt about the result, no doubt whatever. . . . I would say the end is in sight . . . not over yet, got to keep going . . . but the score is adding up our way . . . got to finish the match. . . . Now, I don't know if you fellows smoke . . . some cigarettes

here will be handed out afterwards . . . very good luck to each one of you."

One could never really analyse a Montgomery speech. Perhaps it was what was left out, perhaps it was the very banality and simplicity of the words, perhaps the way they were spoken, or perhaps merely the fact that he was Montgomery the commanding general who held powers of life and death over everyone who heard him. Yet the effect was always the same, the same breathless interest that had nothing to do with discipline. Just for a moment of time here in the orchard or on the beach the General and the soldiers were completely at ease with one another, and all the frightening chances of war were reduced to a simple and sane community of friendship.

In the afternoon Montgomery drove back to his camp, sometimes a distance of fifty miles, and again it was the same spontaneous parade. At home at four or five o'clock (he had pitched his headquarters near Lentini) he took his tea with his visitors and the A.D.C.s and then got down to the planning of the next day's or the next month's fighting.

This routine seldom varied. It was an extraordinary ebullition of sustained effort, and in this atmosphere at once parochial, feudal, exciting and dangerous, one was irrevocably drawn in so that after a few weeks one felt that this life was the only life, that it was exact and correct and that it well might continue for ever.

## 4

By August 1st the Italians were negotiating for a general surrender and the Germans were driven into the north-east corner of Sicily. By the middle of August—five weeks after the beginning of the campaign—the Germans had been ejected entirely from the island.

Montgomery moved now to a lavish palazzo high on the cliffs of Taormina where he could look directly across the Straits of Messina on to the mainland of Italy itself. It was a moment of hiatus in the war and his feelings were a sharp mixture of black and white. On the credit side he could look back on one more campaign that had been planned, launched, fought and won. On July 30th he had noted in a message to the troops: "The enemy is now hemmed in . . . we have knocked Mussolini off his perch. We will now drive the Germans out of Sicily."

On August 17th he had added: "In February last the

Italian Overseas Empire had ceased to exist. To-day we have captured our first slice of the Italian home country.

"It is difficult to find words to tell you my true feelings. Since I assumed command of the Eighth Army, in August 1942, exactly one year ago, you have given me your confidence and you have never failed to respond to all the calls I have made on you. . . . Well done. Well done indeed."

And now he was writing in his round clear hand another message: "The time has come to carry the battle on to the mainland of Italy.

"To the Eighth Army has been given the great honour of being the first troops of the Allied Armies to land on the continent of Europe.

"There can only be one end to this next battle, and that is: ANOTHER SUCCESS.

"Forward to Victory. Let us knock Italy out of the war."

The Allied Headquarters' plan for the invasion of Italy was a curious mixture of over-insurance, over-confidence and political ignorance. To understand it at all one has to cast back one's mind to the summer of 1943 when it was planned in Algiers. There were three possible places on which to assault the "soft under-belly" of German Europe: France, Italy and the Balkans. The Balkans route was discarded because no one was able to foresee either the success of the Russian drive through Rumania or the extent of Tito's partisan movement in Jugo-Slavia. It was also judged that the ports and roads were not adequate. The French route was negatived because we lacked sufficient ships and the necessary air cover.

Everything seemed to beckon us on to Italy. It was near—you could even look at the place with the naked eye across the Straits from Sicily, and see the enemy vehicles moving about in Reggio. Mussolini was on the point of collapsing. And the Air Forces were clamouring to gain control of the vast air-fields around Foggia, so that they could bomb Germany from the south. No one envisaged the necessity for fighting a protracted campaign against the Germans during the coming winter (let alone the succeeding winter as well). Negotiations for an armistice with the Italians were already far advanced in August, and it was confidently hoped in Algiers that as soon as this armistice was announced the Italian Army would turn round and assist us in ejecting the Germans from Italy. In the face of the general opposition it was hoped that the Germans would withdraw at once to the Po Valley in the north. This was the error of over-confidence.

As for the landing itself the utmost caution prevailed. The



Montgomery's creed of a deception plan backed by one concentrated thrust was discarded: it was decided that we should have several landings so that we would split the enemy concentrations: Salerno on the ankle of the Italian foot, Reggio on the toe and Taranto on the base of the foot were the selected points.

Even after the landings had taken place it was not judged necessary that we should concentrate the forces: the Fifth and the Eighth Armies were to make their way separately northwards on either side of the Apennines, presumably until they reached the Plain of Lombardy.

The objects then were threefold—

1. To knock Italy out of the war.
2. To seize the Foggia landing-fields with the adjacent ports such as Bari and Naples.
3. To pursue the enemy through Rome to the Plain of Lombardy.

The Salerno landing was to be called "Avalanche", and the Reggio landing "Baytown".

Montgomery's small role was defined thus: "Your task is to secure a bridgehead on the toe of Italy to enable our naval forces to operate through the Straits of Messina. In the event of the enemy withdrawing from the toe you will follow him up with such force as you can make available, bearing in mind that the greater the extent to which you can engage enemy forces in the southern toe of Italy the more assistance you will be giving to 'Avalanche'."

From the beginning Montgomery was opposed to both the general plan and his own part in it. Quite apart from his temperamental dislike to carrying out an operation which he had not designed himself, and in which he did not have a leading part, he believed his own forces were too small for what they were being asked to do. Two of his best divisions—the Fiftieth and the Fifty-first—were going home on leave. Others, like the Seventh Armoured, which normally lay in the Eighth Army command, had been taken away from him and given to the Americans. The curb was on.

Brooding darkly on all this in his palazzo at Taormina he saw that on this occasion he was not going to have much choice: he was bound to obey orders. Nevertheless he was determined to raise what opposition he could, and in this spirit he crossed over to the conference of the commanders-in-chief in Algiers on August 23rd. First he asked for—and got—additional forces and landing-craft for the Baytown operation. He then expressed the view that it was by no means certain that the

Italians would turn round and help us once the armistice was announced. There were some fifteen German divisions in Italy. The splitting of the Allied forces laid us open to serious counter-attack.

But by now it was far too late to consider any such sweeping changes in the plan. Forced to be satisfied with the reinforcement of his own front, Montgomery flew back to Sicily and went out to rouse the men. At least he would be the first to put his foot on the mainland—and this on the anniversary of the beginning of Germany's war against Britain. Tactical Headquarters was moved down to a convenient spot among the olive groves on the coast, and a launch with the General's pennant was ordered to stand ready.

There was an unreal, almost a pantomime atmosphere about that day of the landing on September 3rd, 1943. When Montgomery called for his early cup of tea and the first reports, the assault troops had been ashore for some hours. There had been a heavy bombardment across the Straits by the British guns the night before and when the first soldiers grounded their boats on the shingle they were met by nothing much more than a few terrified Italian peasants and disorganized soldiers whose one thought was to surrender. The German rearguard bolted rapidly to the hills, blowing up the bridges behind them.

Montgomery read through the reports, issued a few orders, made a broadcast for the B.B.C., and called for his boat much as one would set out for a picnic on the Thames. Indeed the scene was like some monstrous naval regatta. On the Sicilian beaches Italian girls were offering fruit and flowers to the soldiers as they clambered on board.

Hundreds of boats of every kind, from motor launches to steamers and warships, were swarming back and forth on the placid water of the Straits like so many gnats on a pond. The sun streamed down on the beautiful scene but the smoke of many fires and bursting shells still obscured the mainland around Reggio.

There were only three or four miles to steam. Montgomery stood on the prow of his launch taking coffee and biscuits, discoursing on the art of making war and admiring the view. Every few minutes a boat laden with soldiers passed by and they roared their greetings across the water. Only once the idyllic atmosphere was shattered when a German aircraft dived out of the clouds scattering bombs and Montgomery flung himself full length on the deck.

A few hundred yards off the beach he transhipped to a duck (which was already loaded with cigarettes) and motored

ashore. A thousand men rose to meet him with yells and shouts. And behind them another thousand. And another and another. Appearing suddenly like this, on the heels of the successful landing, Montgomery seemed more than a successful general—it seemed as if he was inspired and that everything he touched was bound to turn into a victory.

In actual fact Montgomery was beginning to wonder whether he was running into his first failure. True enough the initial landing had been carried off with barely a casualty, and on the evening of September 8th the armistice with the Italians was duly announced. But there was no sign whatever of the German Army turning tail and running for the north. The Salerno landing was meeting with the bitterest resistance. Indeed, on September 10th, barely twenty-four hours after it had gone in, Montgomery received a message from Alexander urging him to maintain all pressure in the south so as to relieve the strain at Salerno. Later these messages become more pressing. Could not Montgomery make an immediate junction to strengthen the Salerno bridgehead?

It was a crisis for which we had hardly bargained. Apart from the eight thousand men now landing at Taranto (where they had their hands full) Montgomery commanded barely three divisions. They were separated from the Salerno battle by some two hundred miles of immense ravines, rocky coasts and mountain passes many thousands of feet above sea-level. As the Germans retreated up the toe they tore away the railway tracks, they laid in ambush for the British bridge-builders, they exploded the viaducts and the culverts. Furthermore, no resources had been granted to Montgomery for a forced march of this nature. The lack of petrol alone made it impossible for any but the lightest forces to press forward.

Despite these difficulties it is possible that Montgomery might have effected a link-up more rapidly than he did. Possibly he underestimated the psychological power of the Eighth Army's name and did not realize what a galvanizing effect the mere appearance of a handful of his troops would have made among the tired defenders at Salerno.

What was apparent to him was that he could never hope seriously to buttress the man-power at Salerno in the space of a day or two, and he did not propose to jeopardize his own position hopelessly in trying to do so.

Nevertheless the junction was made on September 16th, the tide turned at Salerno and things began to march forward rapidly.

Confidently and professionally the Eighth Army spread out

over the southern mountains. Brindisi, Bari, Catanzaro and Potenza fell one after another and the troops marched forward along the Adriatic towards the all-important Foggia air-fields. The Eighth Army was a club again, a private expedition wandering off into the mountains, always advancing, always Montgomery leading them on to one more conquest. It was summer. The vines were dripping with grapes. The villagers, smiling and waving, disgorged unending chickens and eggs. In the first week of October Termoli, on the Adriatic north of Foggia, was seized by a sea landing and Foggia itself fell almost without a blow. The Fifth Army entered Naples on the other side of the mountains.

So far so good. But was it good? Far from evacuating Italy, the Germans were reinforcing. Here and there, especially in the north, Italian partisans rose heroically but sporadically, and there was no real sign whatever of the Italian Army *en bloc* joining our ranks. The Italian Army was disintegrating. In a state of hopeless disorganization the soldiers were vanishing to their homes. It began to look as if we would have to fight every mile of the way up the Italian peninsula.

And now winter came down with an extraordinary abruptness. At one moment it seemed there was dust and hot sunshine; then suddenly it was mud and snow. And with the winter the fighting began, not skirmishes but pitched battle: the Biferno . . . the Trigno . . . the Sangro. Not death in packets of a dozen but hundreds dying and the corroding cold making life hellish for those who survived. It made no difference if you captured one river valley; another lay just beyond. And beyond that more mountains, more valleys, more impossibly entrenched positions. Huge convoys were bogged along the roads and sometimes were halted altogether for hours or even days. A piercing wind kept sweeping down from the Apennines, and the Adriatic turned from cobalt blue into a sullen grey. The private expedition was not such fun any more. There was still no sign of the Germans retreating to the Plain of Lombardy; they preferred to snipe down on the Allies from the rocks and the ravines. Somewhere, somehow, the campaign had gone wrong. And this was evident to the soldiers as they climbed slowly northwards with that kind of blind resolution which is somewhere between bigotry and divinity.

Looking back on the Italian campaign one sees there was a chimerical quality about the whole operation. Success seemed to be forever just round the corner. Each time the commanders reached forward to grasp it something went wrong, the light died out—and then suddenly flickered up again in

some other place. Off we went in pursuit of the new hope until that too, in its turn, died away. By mid-October the whole character of the campaign had changed. The original conception—the rapid withdrawal of the Germans—had proved false and now we found ourselves, twisting and turning and compromising, with a series of short-term objectives. Having got one thing with much pain and effort we were lured on to try something else and in the maze of minor operations the over-all plan lost its clear purpose.

Had we been content with the capture of Foggia and Naples and gone into winter quarters, no doubt many lives would have been saved. But to Alexander (who had now set up his headquarters in Italy) and Eisenhower in Algiers it seemed that we had to secure these two places from counter-attack by further advances to the north. And having made these advances it was then judged necessary that we should capture Rome itself. This was an impossible project in the mountains in midwinter, but it did not appear to be impossible at the time. The feeling was—one more effort and we shall do it. And so Clarke on the left and Montgomery on the right were constantly urged to push on. The general idea was that, by fighting both sides of the mountains, we would split the German opposition. Montgomery, by advancing on Pescara, would protect Clarke's flank while Clarke himself marched on the capital.

Montgomery's opposition to this project was threefold. In the first place he did not believe that we were splitting the German forces by attacking along both sides of the mountains: the Germans simply moved their mobile units from side to side as the point of danger shifted. The way to advance, Montgomery believed, was to concentrate all our forces for a concentrated blow on one side of the Apennines.<sup>1</sup>

Secondly, he argued that we were running a losing race against the winter. He agreed in October and November that it was worth while making one more effort, but he also said that unless Rome fell by Christmas the wisest plan was to abandon all hope of getting there until the rivers subsided in the following spring.<sup>2</sup>

Finally he protested that our resources were not strong enough to continue with the winter battle. Already much material and many men were being drawn off for the Normandy landing in France. "We became involved in a major campaign," he said later, "and we lacked a pre-determined plan of action. The result was that the administrative machine

<sup>1</sup> This was eventually done the following spring, and Rome fell as the result.

<sup>2</sup> Rome fell in the first week of June in the following year.

became unable to keep pace with the widening scope of our operational commitments."

However, in the late autumn of 1943 none of this was yet clear. So we kept on. Montgomery's actions along the Adriatic are not especially interesting. As the weather worsened the pace got slower and slower and the opposition stronger and stronger. Sometimes when there was an especially heavy downpour in the mountains the river levels altered by six or seven feet. Bridges were carried away, roads turned into impassable quagmires, and the mud and the cold continued with a persistence that seemed to go beyond ill-luck into positive and conscious malignance.

At last, in early November, the Eighth Army struggled wearily up to the Sangro River at a point opposite Rome on an east-west axis. Here the Germans had established their "Winter Line". They did not defend the river itself but the ridge beyond overlooking the river valley; and so the Battle of the Sangro was really a battle for this ridge.

Four or five times Montgomery had to alter his plan of assault. As soon as one scheme was drawn up the rain pelted down in a series of cloudbursts, transport was bogged, supplies were lost and it became impossible to poise the assaulting divisions on the start-line. For a great part of the time the Allied Air Force was unable to operate. Tanks played a steadily decreasing role in the deepening mud.

At last, at the end of November, an assault on a modified scale was ready: the New Zealanders were to play their old deceptive role on the left while two other divisions made the main assault farther downstream. Once on the heights of the German Winter Line they were to fan out.

November 28th, by a miracle, was a fine day. Montgomery sent the troops in with this cry: "We will now hit the Germans a colossal crack". To the public at home this suggested that we were about to throw the Germans out of Italy. To the troops in the line it meant simply another bloody battle which would bring them another river and another mountain pass. Still, there was just the hope that the Germans *would* crack this time and allow us at least to reach Pescara.

The battle was one of those battles that went "as planned"—and nothing more. We already had a bridgehead across the river. Striking out from this springboard the soldiers carried the heights under concentrated artillery fire, and within thirty-six hours the German Winter Line was broken. A string of villages was overrun and a thousand prisoners were brought in within the first few hours. It was success with none of the rewards of

success. This was no open desert. There could be no follow through. Having lost one winter line the enemy simply ran up another on the next range of mountains to the north. Ortona fell at Christmas and then the British momentum died away. On the left, Clarke, with the Fifth Army, was also in difficulties. The heartbreaking truth began to dawn on everyone—however many Sangros we crossed there was always another Sangro ahead. This was the dark and bitter part of the road, the period of unremitting danger and labour and no reward.

Even the men who were in those battles cannot tell you how they kept going through this winter. The Battle of the Sangro was followed by the tragic assault of Cassino; and after Cassino the long-drawn-out agony of the Anzio landing. These were affairs with which Montgomery had nothing to do, and lie outside this book. If one cannot admire the Allied planning of this winter struggle one must at least see and feel the nobility of the blind persistence of the Americans and the British. It was a period when the soldiers were greater than their commanders. People now forget how much they achieved. In the four months up to Christmas 1943 the Eighth Army traversed some four hundred miles from their starting-point and most of this in winter and in impossible campaigning country. Adversity drew the men together. There was one encouragement at least that never left them: no matter how hard the way they were always advancing.

And now, after a year's campaigning, after fighting across North Africa, Sicily and Italy, without a single failure, many had come to believe that with Montgomery there *could* be no failure, there *could* be no alternative but to advance. His name had become consonant with victory.

If one looks for good luck in Montgomery's career it probably lies most strongly here in this period. He was in Italy just so long as the Allies were making headway. He was recalled just at the point when things were starting to go seriously wrong. It is hard to conjecture what would have happened had he been ordered to remain with the Eighth Army. As a subordinate he could probably have made no radical alterations to the over-all plan. He might have argued and quarrelled with Eisenhower and Alexander; quite possibly he might have resigned. But luck—and the march of events—took him out of Italy just in time.

A few days after Christmas in 1943 Montgomery suddenly announced to the Eighth Army that he was going to leave them. He had been ordered, he said, to take a command in England. He was living at the time in a picturesque little

Adriatic town called Vasto, and several hundred staff officers and commanders gathered in the theatre there to hear him say goodbye. When Montgomery came on to the stage in his beret, his battledress with the ribbons, it was a curiously tense and emotional moment. There was no ceremony. He spoke very drily for about half an hour. Alamein. The desert. So many miles. So many different climates. So much that was planned and risked and done.

To an outsider the moment and the speech meant nothing—so much it was a compound of these people's lives. They had not yet grown old and garrulous about their exploits. The war was still on and everyone in that room still had the prospect of violently dying. There were no dramatics and no expressed emotion. This farewell of Montgomery to the Army which he had made—and which had made him—was a practical act, the last of many practical acts. Just once his voice caught on a phrase and he had nothing to say. Then he went on and finished his speech.

There was silence among the officers as he turned abruptly and began to walk off. Then a perfunctory, well-bred, parade-ground cheer broke out, and it had nothing much to do with the feelings of the speaker or the audience because what they felt could not be expressed by cheering or clapping. One does not applaud a surgeon after he has performed successfully an operation. And most of Montgomery's span of command had been an act of surgery.

To the soldiers he wrote: "What can I say to you as I go away? When the heart is full it is not easy to speak. But I would say this to you:

"You have made this Army what it is. You have made its name a household word all over the world. You must uphold its good name and its traditions.

"And I would ask you to give my successor the same loyal and devoted service that you have never failed to give me."

Among the soldiers there was no subtle reticence. They were still cheering, still waving to him and shouting from the roadside, "Jesus, there's Monty. Hi! Monty", when he drove down to his aircraft. This had happened to him every day across two thousand miles of campaigning. The Eighth Army. This was his family and these were his children. Could he not make his family a million men? Could he not embrace so many more like these? And could they not go anywhere together?



The aircraft did not make directly towards England. It turned south instead and flew to Marrakesh in Morocco for a rendezvous with Churchill, who was convalescing there from pneumonia.

The accession of Montgomery to this special command in England under Eisenhower had been by no means a cut-and-dried affair. Indeed Roosevelt and Churchill had taken the whole hierarchy of the High Command under review. At first Brooke had been chosen as the leader of the final great gamble of the western war—the invasion of France from England. Then, in view of the preponderance of the American forces, Marshall's name had been put up. Neither Brooke nor Marshall had wanted the job; both felt they were better placed as they were, exercising the real power in London and Washington. Finally Eisenhower had been elected, and he was formally asked by the British War Cabinet to name the man whom he would like as his British field commander. Eisenhower had answered that this was a matter best left for the British to decide for themselves. Churchill was in Tunis during these negotiations and he pressed Eisenhower to name his choice. Eisenhower repeated that he did not want to force the issue in any way but he was quite happy to continue with his existing field commander, General Alexander. From Tunis Churchill informed the Cabinet of this conversation, and added that it might be best to let Eisenhower have Alexander.

The position was one of the utmost power and importance; in some ways it was the most critical appointment of the war, since the British field commander would have control of the actual landing in France.

Cabinet was divided over the matter. Two names stood out clearly: Alexander or Montgomery? The steady and reasonable organizer or the man with the flair? Which? It was all too painfully obvious that Montgomery had been a disappointment as a co-operator either with his Allies or even with certain British service chiefs. There had already been some criticism in London and Algiers of Montgomery's work in the Sicilian and Italian campaigns. It was claimed that he was "too slow", too intent on getting the last ounce of supplies before he attacked. It was said that Patton in Sicily had "run rings round him". Other critics found him quarrelsome, negative, even defeatist.

To many in power in Whitehall the self-assurance had

appeared as nothing more than arrogance. The Eighth Army commander had been told bluntly in the War Office: You are making enemies fast and loose. You have kicked generals when they were down and you might have been generous. You have jeered and made cruel remarks about other officers and these remarks have got back to them. The Americans are reluctant to place themselves under your command. The whole of the First Army in Tunisia is bitter against you because they say you claimed the victory there. You have made no attempt to understand their difficulties—or anyone else's difficulties. You flatly contradict others in conference and sneer at their opinions. When officers come to your headquarters you will not see them. You have the reputation of high-handedly pushing people aside whenever it suits your purpose. All these men you have slighted are your enemies. You will have to ask yourself whether you can afford to go on like this.

Montgomery, hearing these charges, had been genuinely surprised. It was quite true that he had refused to be disturbed by visitors during the course of a battle, but he felt he had made particular concessions to allies and equals alike. Had he not mentioned them in his orders of the day? Had he not been at particular pains in Africa to explain to a group of American and British generals the art of making war? Had he not been obliged to submit to much inept planning? There had, of course, been incidents. The commander of the Canadian troops had flown out to the Mediterranean during the Sicilian campaign intending to see how his countrymen were getting on in their first action. Montgomery had forbidden him to land and the Canadian commander had flown back to England. But could not he have seen that he, Montgomery, was fighting a battle and did not want to be disturbed? And had not the Canadian general been issued with a cordial invitation to come once the battle was over? Victory was everything. Provided you got the victory what did these petty misunderstandings matter?

An old friend said to Montgomery in England: "It is true you have made a score of enemies. But you have made hundreds of thousands of friends as well."

Unfortunately the score of enemies were in high places. If Montgomery had no actual enemies in the Cabinet, there were at least key ministers who felt strongly that this new and vitally important post should go to a man who represented squarely the tradition and the character of the British Army, a man who had proved his ability to get along with his allies and his talent for combining armies in the field. These supported Alexander.

Brooke and Sir James Grigg, the Minister for War, though no opponents of Alexander, believed that this heady and dangerous experiment should be controlled by someone of Montgomery's tactical skill and power to galvanize the troops. In the end the vote had swung their way.

And now here was Montgomery entering Churchill's room at Marrakesh on New Year's Day 1944 to hear the terms of his new office. Churchill was in bed reading a bundle of papers. He tossed them across to Montgomery. "See what you think of it", he said. It was "Operation Overlord", the plan for invading Normandy in northern France, the "Second Front" for which the world had been waiting for the past two years.

Montgomery stayed up half the night reading it through.

"Well?" Churchill asked in the morning.

"I can't give an opinion," Montgomery said. "I have not studied it. I have not consulted the Navy and the Air Force. And I am not, sir, your military adviser."

Churchill persisted. Surely the General had some opinion. Surely he could express a strictly private view. He could say what he liked without prejudice to any arrangements that might be made later on.

"Well, then," Montgomery said, "it will not do. It is not an operation of war. The organization of command is wrong. The frontage is too narrow. The whole plan will have to be drastically revised."

It was something of a bombshell. For many months General Morgan in England had been working on the plan with a secret staff known as "Cossac". To alter that plan now, so near the eve of this tremendous adventure, seemed foolhardy. How could Montgomery be certain that the plan was wrong? Why should he say with such flat conviction that "the frontage was too narrow", the landing forces not great enough? Surely this was a subject upon which everyone must have doubts. But Montgomery had no doubt. This was simply another technical operation with a right and a wrong way of doing it. You had only to manage things in the right way and the results were certain. He and his staff would be able to adjust the whole thing satisfactorily.

To Churchill and Beaverbrook (who was at Marrakesh) the General must have presented a slightly baffling picture. When all the world was desperately anxious about this thing, when the very best brains were balancing alternatives and doubtfully weighing the changing dangers of the prospect, here was one man who had no hesitations at all. Did he really know? Did he really have the remedy? Or was he merely a

lucky adventurer? But then Alamein, Mareth, the Sicilian landing, all the other victories. As a builder of morale alone he was a potent instrument of war.

Churchill took Montgomery's book and in a somewhat scrawling hand (possibly because he was still ill in bed) wrote:

"The immortal march of the Eighth Army from the gates of Cairo along the African shore through Tunisia, through Sicily, has now carried its ever-victorious soldiers and their world-renowned commander far into Italy towards the gates of Rome. The scene changes and vastly expands. A great task accomplished gives place to a greater in which the same unfailing spirit will win for all true men a full and glorious reward."

With this blessing Montgomery set off on January 2nd for England. At the last moment they would not let him fly over that huge expanse of ocean in his own two-engined plane; a four-motored bomber was handed over instead. Right or wrong, genius or mere adventurer, Montgomery was too valuable to lose at this moment.

## CHAPTER ELEVEN

# THE TIDE TAKEN AT THE FLOOD

### I

THESE were the rich days. High command. One more adventure—the biggest of all. Five months of freedom in England to take part in the planning and moulding of the expedition. Then back to France; not this time a young and bothered subaltern hurried away from his tennis, not a divisional commander compelled to fight on someone else's half-hearted ideas. This time Montgomery was going back at the head of a million men, and Europe would have a campaign, cold and clear and surgical, such as she had never seen before.

Promptly he moved back into his old school, St. Paul's, in Hammersmith, on the outskirts of London, and set up his headquarters there. Promptly de Guingand and the staff of planners arrived and moved into the schoolroom much as they would have made their encampments in the desert. Montgomery was fond of calling them his "first eleven". Sadly one of the outgoing non-Montgomery generals remarked: "The Gentlemen are out. The Players are coming in."

In a world of doubts no one at Hammersmith appeared to have any anxieties at all. It was, in many ways, a repetition of the scene in the desert before Alamein. Having made a first rapid inspection of the situation in England, Montgomery called his subordinates together, addressed them on his methods, on what he hoped to do and how he would do it: in fact, a short Montgomery course on "The Art of War". It was a gesture nicely calculated to raise the eyebrows of the outgoing Gentlemen. Was Montgomery the Supreme Commander? Was he going to take all the credit this time as well? Did he imagine that this was another one-man show? Had not "Cossac" already done the bulk of the work?

While the opposition gathered its ranks the staff at Hammersmith got down to the planning. Eisenhower's Chief of Staff, General Bedell Smith, was also in favour of a stronger assault. They applied for and got a wider front, a bigger initial landing, a much stronger rate of build-up. Three stages were envisaged: the "break-in", the entrenchment and the "break-out". The vital "break-in" period was to open with a heavy naval and aerial bombardment of the Normandy coastline followed

by the landing of the British on the left and the Americans on the right.

Then the entrenchment of the bridgehead while the supplies flowed in, the British wheeling left to the capture of Caen while the Americans cut off the Cherbourg peninsula on the right and moved on to the capture of the supply port of Cherbourg itself. The final phase would resemble the tactics at Alamein and Mareth: the main enemy forces would be attracted to the British end of the line round Caen while the Americans launched their "break-out" on the right.

This would be the signal for all the armies to advance towards the Seine together and it was hoped that the river would be reached in ninety days. It was then expected that there would be a further battle on the Seine and, if it was successful, who could tell?—perhaps the war would be over by Christmas.

The over-all plan, of course, was not the product of Montgomery's brain; it was the result of many minds, British and American, working over many months and always within the limits allowed them by the Navy and the Air Force. But on his arrival in England, Montgomery was nominated commander-in-chief of all the Allied land forces in the field, and the actual working of the plan, its tempo, its tactical direction and application at the point of contact—all these matters fell to the staff of Montgomery's 21st Army Group, which was the initial striking force. In the broad strategic role, the politics and the administration, the Americans from now on played the leading part.

Montgomery was delighted to be out of Italy. And now that he was out on his own again, given his head in the biggest race of all, many good soldiers in England were darkly apprehensive that he was going to ride rough-shod over everyone and everything. Once again Montgomery had the rare good fortune to have a superior in Eisenhower who was willing to give him a free hand, and eagerly and gratefully he grasped the operational power.

"He will abuse it", the opposition cried. "He will take no advice. He will start a wave of capricious sackings. It has all happened before." But there was no wave of sackings. In the British Army, Ritchie (who had failed in the desert) was retained in his corps. Dick O'Connor, who had escaped from Italy, was also given a corps. So was Bucknall of the 5th Division. And Crocker of the First Army. None of these were Montgomery generals. Neither Horrocks, nor Leese, nor Harding was on the scene. Only Dempsey, a keen and logical craftsman, was brought back and put in command of the

British Second Army. Yet with Montgomery's "First Eleven" working at St. Paul's and with the return of the 50th, the 51st and the 7th (Armoured) Divisions, it remained an "Eighth Army", a strictly "Montgomery" command.

Outside this and running parallel to it, the Americans under General Bradley had in England their own Army Group, which managed its own domestic affairs. Bradley was simply obliged to accept general orders from Montgomery who, in turn, was answerable to Eisenhower. It was a situation which required a good deal of tact and forbearance, and at this stage, when everyone was under the cloud of the risks and dangers ahead, things worked smoothly. It was not until later on when the major risk was gone and the end in sight that loyalties became somewhat divided. For the moment Montgomery was accepted as the key man who was to lead the actual assault on Europe.

The truth was that he was mellowing and growing with his job. He had made a series of remarkable mental adjustments since he had gone out to Africa eighteen months before. He had grown much more tactful in his dealings with politicians and allies. He was more careful in what he said, more patient, and outwardly at least much more ready to listen to advice. The core of his character remained unrepentant, but an exterior façade of manners had grown up and he was much easier to approach. It was even a light-hearted and agreeable experience to have dinner with him. He began to take a mild interest in politics. And, what was much more important, he accepted his masters. Apart from Eisenhower, there were just three British leaders whom he admired and recognized as his superiors with the right to intervene. One was Churchill, another was Brooke and the third was Grigg. From these three he would accept orders and strictures. To them he would go for advice, though not perhaps in strictly tactical military matters. In Grigg at first Montgomery suspected an opponent, but they met and dined and had the matter out. "It will be no good if you start sending me 'stinkers'", Montgomery said. "If you criticize me we will only have a row. I know I am difficult. I know I'm a bit headstrong and apt to ride straight over opposition. But just caution me. Just tell me from time to time to take it steady." Upon this they became friends.

With Churchill, Montgomery was intrigued. The broad, sweeping gestures, the ardour, the warrior approach, the Elizabethan colour and enthusiasm—it was fascinating. Montgomery would go down to Chequers and promptly find himself invited to fight battles with rulers and inkstands

and pens across the Prime Minister's desk. "If I did this, General," Churchill would say, moving the ashtray to the left, "what would you do?" Churchill was one of the few men whom Montgomery addressed as "Sir". But there were limits to the formalities. One night when Churchill telephoned and suggested a conference towards midnight, Montgomery protested mildly, "But, sir, I shall be in bed then. It's long after my bedtime." Wryly Churchill let the matter pass.

One might have expected a rich crop of anecdotes and incidents from these momentous days in England leading up to the invasion. It was the floodtide of Montgomery's life. He was working, thinking and acting on a huge canvas and he raced ahead with confidence and precision from one thing to another. But soldiers usually are the worst recorders of their own doings, and in any event, for England in general, this was a flat and forbidding time.

The dread of the coming battle lay like a leaden weight on everyone's mind. Could it be anything else than an appalling "blood bath"? There was something outrageous in this slow deliberate preparation for a massacre. The bombing of southern England went on. There were threats of rockets. Austerity followed one about like a lean and hungry dog. It sat by your table as you ate, followed you into the black streets at night and lay with you in the half-heated houses at night. The wreckage, the shabbiness and the overwhelming drabness of four years' garrison life stared one in the face all over England. When would it come? When? When?

Everywhere they went the leaders were met with the blank and fretful questioning. More and more people fixed their minds with a half-desperate faith on the little General in the black beret who kept bobbing about with his racy confidence, his curiously naive mixture of schoolboy slang and religious conviction: "We'll hit 'em for six. . . . The Lord mighty in battle."

Montgomery met the politicians with the same innocent and interested curiosity. One after another the Cabinet Ministers, Eden, Bevin and the others, went down to see him; and usually they came away impressed at least by the abounding assurance of the General. To Montgomery these visitors from the nebulous and intricate world of politics were even more strange phenomena than he was to them.

"What sort of a chap is he?" he would inquire when he was told that some dignitary was arriving. "Is he a good chap?" Gravely the prelates, the politicians and the great men filed by without quite knowing that they were being appraised on the



level of whether or not they were "good chaps". Within these simple standards the General looked them over with considerable native shrewdness and he confided his opinions to his unpublished and unpublishable diary. Some third of Montgomery's waking day was given to the study and appointment of human beings.

An alarmingly high proportion of them were set down simply as "fools—quite useless". The people he particularly disliked were those with affectations and over-ornate manners, the smooth characters and many who were deeply immersed in money. In Montgomery's world there was no time to practise either the refinements of manner or the pursuit of material things: only the battle counted, the battle to be fought his way.

But for some time he had been interested in having his portrait painted. Several artists had attempted it without much success—possibly because they were nervous with the sitter. Augustus John was now commissioned for a fee of £500, and Montgomery began to drive down to John's studio in Tite Street, Chelsea, for the sittings. It was a strange performance. Montgomery would arrive with his A.D.C. in a Rolls-Royce, mount the stairs and enter an atmosphere which (despite the instruction of his wife) was as far away from him as voodoo worship. While the artist filled his canvas, the General sat there somewhat stiffly on the dais, in his beret, his ribbons and his battledress.

Bernard Shaw had long been wishing to meet Montgomery, and, intrigued by this scene, he dropped into the studio one day. There was no more painting at that sitting. Both had a very great deal to say. With unembarrassed gusto Shaw peeped across a lifetime of thinking and pacifism at the man of action and the man of war.

"General," he announced blandly, "I will tell you when the war is going to end."

Montgomery (from the dais): "Really?"

Shaw: "When money goes to five per cent. All wars end then."

The conversation touched lightly and fragrantly on politics. "Only five per cent. of the people are fit to rule," Shaw declared. "The difficulty is to find them and lift them up—and there are not enough men for the high jobs."

Montgomery: "Would you say that five per cent. of generals are efficient?"

Shaw: "No. Not that."

And amiably and understandingly they regarded one another across the studio.

An hour or two later Montgomery's chauffeur, waiting in the street outside, was surprised to see an old gentleman with a white beard step into the car with the announcement that he was to be driven home to the country: the General had loaned his car. They proceeded at a pace consonant with the age of the passenger, until the passenger himself protested and the speed was increased to sixty miles an hour. But again, to the chauffeur's astonishment, the white beard appeared at his elbow. Was this all that the car could do? Marvelling, the chauffeur put his foot down on the accelerator. So it was speed the old boy wanted. The speedometer shot up to ninety and riding thus, with the old boy leaning contentedly back in the cushions, they arrived at his home.

"Not bad", Shaw said as he stepped out and handed the soldier two half crowns. For to-day at least he was a man of action. Going inside, he sat down and wrote to Augustus John the liveliest comment on Montgomery yet to be set on paper.

"DEAR AUGUSTUS JOHN," he wrote. "This afternoon I had to talk all over the shop to amuse your sitter and keep his mind off the worries of the present actual fighting. And as I could see him with one eye and you with the other—two great men at a glance—I noted the extreme likeness between you. You, large, tall, blonde, were almost massive in contrast with that intensely compacted hank of steel wire, who looked as if you might have taken him out of your pocket.

"A great portrait painter always puts himself as well as his sitter into his work; and since he cannot see himself as he paints (as I saw you) there is some danger that he may substitute himself for his subject in the finished work. Sure enough, your portrait of B. L. M. immediately reminded me of your portrait of yourself in the Leicester Gallery. It fills the canvas, suggesting a large, tall man. It does not look at you, and Monty always does with intense effect. *He* concentrates all space into a small spot like a burning-glass; *it* has practically no space at all; you haven't left room for any. Now for it. Take that old petrol rag that wiped out so many portraits of me (all masterpieces) and rub out this one till the canvas is blank. Then paint a small figure looking at you straight from above, as he looked at me from the dais. Paint him at full length (some foreground in front of him) leaning forward with his knees bent back, gripping the edge of his camp stool, and his expression one of piercing scrutiny, the eyes unforgettable. The back-

ground: the vast totality of desert Africa. Result: a picture worth £100,000. The present sketch isn't honestly worth more than the price of your keep while you were painting it. You really weren't interested in the man.

"Don't bother to reply. Just take it or leave it as it strikes you.

"What a nose! And what eyes!

"Call the picture INFINITE HORIZONS AND ONE MAN.

"Fancy a soldier being intelligent enough to want to be painted by you and to talk to me! Always yours,

"G. B. S."

The following day, February 27th, 1944, Shaw wrote again:

"MY DEAR JOHN,—Having slept on it I perceive that part of my letter of yesterday must be dismissed as an ebullition of senile excitement; for as a matter of business the portrait, as it stands, will serve as the regulation one which its buyers bargained for and are entitled to have (plenty of paint and the sitter all over the canvas). And between ourselves it has a subtle and lovely Johannine colour plan which must not be thrown away.

"The moral would seem to be to finish the portrait for your customers and then paint the picture for yourself. Only, as he certainly won't have time to give you a second set of sittings, you must steal a drawing or two made from the chair in which I sat.

"The worst of being 87-88 is that I never can be quite sure whether I am talking sense or old man's drivel. I must leave the judgment to you. As ever, but doddering,

"G. BERNARD SHAW."

Doddering or not he was still the most charming letter-writer in the language.

Montgomery was inclined to agree with Shaw's estimate of the picture, which was now nearing completion (an A.D.C. sitting in Montgomery's jacket so that the rows of ribbons could be painted).

The "Johannine colour plan" appeared to Montgomery to be a rather nasty blue cloud and he was not happy about the likeness. Was he bound to take the picture since he had commissioned it? Certainly not, John said. It was hung in that year's Academy, a great centre of attraction for the crowds, and subsequently sold, it is believed, for £1000.

The matter cropped up once more when a London paper said that an Army officer had bought the portrait for £100.

John wrote to *The Times* correcting this. The £100 sale, he said, referred to a drawing of the same subject which he had shown at the Academy at the same time.

The General meanwhile went off in search of another artist more to his taste.

## 2

The invasion plan decided upon, Montgomery abandoned the details to de Guingand and the Americans and devoted himself entirely to the soldiers. He had a special train, and Addison Road, Hammersmith, was his private station. From here he set out each week with the intention of seeing and talking to every soldier and officer who was destined to go on the invasion, something like a million men.

There was almost a Wesleyan and revivalist fervour in this one-man expedition. The Army Intelligence reports had made it clear that the average young officer was expecting to die in the assault, and among the ranks there was that same heavy weight of apprehension and dismal foreboding. Very well. He would conquer this despondency. He would preach a new gospel of faith and hope. Let him get among the soldiers and they would understand. They would turn this invasion into a new crusade.

Up and down the country Montgomery went, talking sometimes to five or six meetings, addressing thirty thousand men in a single day. First he marched round the ranks peering into the soldiers' faces one by one. Then they came running in thousands towards him, to sit at his feet and listen to the thin religious voice: "Finish the thing off . . . you and I together . . . with God's help we will see the job through to the end". It was the same with each meeting, the same brand of faith and conviction, and he talked with the same assurance to Americans and Canadians, even to Norwegians and Poles.

To recapture the atmosphere one has to cast one's mind back to the time. It was a period when everything was a little larger than life—just as Montgomery himself was becoming larger than his own role in events. Conviction—any sort of conviction—shone out like a lighthouse in the dark sea of doubting about the immediate future. Most of the ordinary subtleties and niceties of life had vanished, and when Montgomery stood up and pounded out his simple faith he captured a rapt and believing audience at once.

And as upon a classical stage both audience and players are cast up into a new and cosmic world where all the issues are heroic, so now, preaching on the English football fields and the

parade grounds, Montgomery made the soldiers feel that they were embarked upon something which made them larger and finer and more commanding human beings than they were before.

Presently reports began to flow back to London of the General's extraordinary crusade. He was here, there and everywhere. He was becoming a popular hero even in the remote villages. It was not just a matter of a general haranguing his soldiers before battle; it was growing very like an election campaign.

Nor did it stop with the Army. Montgomery began to address the railway workers, the miners, the stevedores. He held huge mass meetings in the factories. "Keep on working", he declared into the microphone. "Give us the tools and we will finish the job." They cheered him with a roar. Posters began to appear in the streets; pictures of that lean, intent face under the beret, a personal message underneath. In the towns the people shouted as he drove by: "Up there, Monty", "There goes Monty".

And just where, they wondered in Whitehall, was all this hullabaloo leading to? Was Montgomery a general or a candidate for the next Prime Ministership? In the House of Commons a cheer was raised at every mention of Alexander's name. At a reference to Montgomery the House fell silent. This became so marked that Grigg drew a few of the experienced members aside and reasoned with them; Montgomery had to be trusted, he was sincerely trying to raise morale—nothing more. But still the House watched suspiciously.

When the factory lectures started Montgomery was warned privately that he should call a halt. He would stand in better favour with the authorities, he was told, if he would just stick to his soldiering. He continued his campaign. A second warning arrived. Still he went on. The newspapers were now encouraged to "go slow" on Montgomery. Reports of his speeches were discreetly banned or cut by the censors. He was not asked to broadcast on the B.B.C. And finally a direct and official request to stop was passed on to Montgomery himself.

"I will not stop", he replied. "I have contracted to undertake a programme and I will go through with it because I am informed that it will be of value in heightening morale."

It was an awkward position. You could not suddenly muzzle the man whom you had chosen as the country's military leader at the moment of its major crisis. Thousands of people were now flocking to view his famous caravans which were sent on tour of the country to raise funds for the Red Cross. His

Eighth Army flag was publicly auctioned and was knocked down for two hundred and seventy-five guineas. People were naming babies after him, pleading with him to enter politics. Lady Oxford appealed to him in an impassioned letter to save the Liberal Party. Wherever he appeared the crowds came billowing round. But now the sands were running out. D-day was creeping closer and closer. Carefully opening and shutting the stops of publicity the authorities waited patiently until the invasion should sweep the over-popular General back to Europe and his proper affairs.

Not everyone in high places was alarmed by the General. Quite early in his morale campaign he had addressed a large gathering of the most eminent men in England at the Mansion House in London. It had been a great testing-point for Montgomery. Possibly there is no more urbane and long-headed assemblage in the world than that which gathers from time to time at the Mansion House ceremonies. With the Cabinet, the ambassadors, and the aldermen of England watching him in open curiosity, Montgomery rose and spoke as though he were addressing a platoon of soldiers on the heath. As always it was the way he spoke, his manner, his note of pronounced conviction—even his tense and ascetic appearance—which won the day and roused them to an exuberant and youthful cheering over the glasses of port. The words he used, in part, were these:

"It must forever redound to our shame that we sent out soldiers into this most modern war with weapons and equipment that were hopelessly inadequate; we have only ourselves to blame for the disasters that early overtook us in the field. Surely we must never let this happen again. Nor will we.

"But it is the man that counts and not the machine. If you have got men who are mentally alert, who are tough and hard, who are trained to fight and kill, who are enthusiastic, and who have that infectious optimism and offensive eagerness that comes from physical well-being—and you then give these men the proper weapons and the equipment—*there is nothing you cannot do*. Nothing. Nothing.

"Such men must have faith in God . . . and you must have mutual confidence between the commander and the troops; any steps you take to establish this confidence will pay a very good dividend.

"A study of the military disasters that have overtaken us in our history will reveal that they have been due, basically, to faulty command, or bad staff-work, or neglect of the human factor, and sometimes possibly all three.

"If you tell the soldier what you want, and you launch him

properly into battle, he will always do *his* part—he has never let the side down. Never. The British soldier is easy to lead; he is very willing to be led; and he responds at once to leadership.

“Only from an inspired nation can go forth an inspired army. It is absolutely vital that we realize that the ‘tide in the affairs of men which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune’ will not be for this nation on Armistice Day or on Victory Day.

*“It will be when our men go forth to battle on this great endeavour. The tide will flow then or not at all.*

“That is the time when there must swell up in the nation every noble thought, every high ideal, every great purpose which has waited through the weary years. And then, as the sap rises, the men will feel themselves to be the instrument of a new-born national vigour. ‘Let God arise and let His enemies be scattered.’

“All this is a necessity. The Promised Land is not now far off; if necessary we have got to hazard all, and give our lives that others may enjoy it. From a consecrated nation, such men will abundantly come. And the Lord Mighty in Battle will go forth with our armies and His special providence will assist our battle.

“Can you imagine this conversation in after years? ‘What did you do in the World War?’

“‘I pulled hard to start with; but after a time I began to lose interest and let go the rope. I thought I wanted a rest; and I wanted more pay.’

“‘And did you win?’

“‘No. We lost. I let go the rope and we lost the match. God forgive me; we lost the match.’

“Is it possible that such a conversation could apply to us British? No. It is impossible. Thank God it is impossible.

“Then let us stand-to and get on the rope. How long will the pull last? No one can say for certain; it may last a year; it may take longer. But it will be a magnificent party. And we shall win.”

The Church militant had found her champion. The Bishop himself could not have done better than his faithful son.

### 3

Across the Channel in France a piece of great good fortune had befallen the Allies. Hitler had decided to pit Rommel as his field-general for one last decisive throw against his old desert enemy, Montgomery.

It would be difficult to imagine anything more auspicious for the Allied cause. Rommel never was the match of Montgomery in a set-piece battle. Impulsive, erratic and restless by temperament he allowed his line to be flung off balance whenever a struggle dragged on.

Both Hitler and Rommel—and for that matter most of the British and American public as well—were gripped with a wholly erroneous idea of the nature of the coming battle. The collapse of the Maginot Line—and all the other defensive lines in the war—had taught them nothing. Nor had they gripped the fundamental difference between this war and the 1914–1918 war, the fact that this time, when so many wholly novel weapons were in use, the offence always prevailed at first against the defence.

Rundstedt and Montgomery and a few other professionals had grasped this fact; they read the lesson of Russia and the desert quite clearly—all defence must be fluid and mobile. You must meet and strike the advancing enemy in the open. No coastline was defensible. The French coast would crack as quickly as the Maginot Line. The massacre which the Allied public dreaded on the beaches would never happen because the real battle would never take place there; it would be fought inland.

Rommel, the impulsive, with Hitler impulsively at his back goading him on, was blind to all this. He did the very thing which Montgomery tried to prevent happening in similar circumstances in England in 1940. He rushed all his main defences up to the coast. Everything to Rommel depended on the Atlantic Wall. A complex about the Wall had grown up in the German Army. It *must* hold.

In vain for Rundstedt to protest that this was the same fatal mistake the French had made with their Maginot Line in 1940 (which Rommel himself had been instrumental in demolishing). In vain for him to argue that the Allies must be allowed to land, and later, when they had shown their hand, be met and defeated perhaps on the Seine or even farther back on the Rhine.

Hitler and Goebbels were determined to protect their flying-bomb and artillery bases in France. Given just a little more time they would demolish London. The invader must be flung back on the coast. And as Rommel stood on his Wall at Calais and looked across the narrow sea to Dover he was eager to begin the battle.

In England, Montgomery was ranged on the side of the planners who opposed an early landing in 1944. He refused to



budge until all was ready, until all the railways were geared, all the stocks delivered to the ports, the pipe-lines and the Mulberry wharves completed and the latest tanks delivered from America.

Elaborate deception and double deception schemes were organized. In Kent fake encampments were erected and a full Army Group signalling station was kept transmitting coded messages to give the impression that the invasion was to be directed from there and the landing to fall on Calais. (Actually Montgomery's Tactical and Main Headquarters were outside Portsmouth, and Eisenhower also was miles away at Kingston.)

In Liverpool the British Intelligence Staff discovered an actor who bore a strong resemblance to Montgomery; a Lieutenant Clifton James who was serving in the Royal Army Pay Corps. He was brought down to London and he spent a week travelling around with Montgomery, observing all his gestures and mannerisms—hands behind his back as he walked, the pinching of the left cheek, the tense direct look, the rigid set of the head, the trick of throwing out a deprecatory hand as he punctuated his points in conversation. When the part was learned James was fitted out with the General's wardrobe, his beret with the badges, the beribboned battle-dress, the fur-lined flying-jacket. Then he was flown off to Gibraltar. He alighted on the airfield there, in full sight of the Fascist Intelligence agents who in those days perched like crows on the Spanish border a quarter of a mile away. A reception committee on the airfield underlined the occasion and James was driven through the narrow Gibraltar streets to Government House. There he was entertained by the Governor as though he were Montgomery. The following day James again appeared at the airfield and was flown to Algiers where he called at the headquarters of the Allied Commander-in-Chief, General Maitland Wilson. And then he disappeared.

The object of this charade was simple—to suggest to the Germans that a gigantic bluff had been played; that the real invasion was not aimed at northern Europe but was coming in through the Mediterranean from the south. Complicated shipping movements and other deceptions backed up the idea, and it was hoped that the trick would persuade the Germans to keep at least some forces in the south.

On his return to England it was suggested—perhaps with some justice—that James should be remunerated for his work at the rate of Montgomery's salary. Somewhat shocked by the suggestion the War Office eventually paid up—but only for





THE JOHN PORTRAIT

those days when James was actually wearing Montgomery's uniform.

At home the last touches were being added to the expedition. Eisenhower and the commanders gathered at St. Paul's to hear addresses from the assault leaders on the final plans.

Admiral Sir Bertram Ramsay, speaking for the Navy, emphasized all the many dangers which might demolish the expedition in the Channel. Air-Marshal Sir Trafford Leigh Mallory, who, with Ramsay, was so soon to die, also spoke soberly of the capricious summer weather off the English coast.

But Montgomery as usual stood up brimming with assurance. Standing in front of a large floor-map on which he punctuated his points with his hand from time to time, he asserted that the plan was entirely sound. Stage by stage he traced the positions to which he hoped to lead his armies in the three months after D-day.

There followed a second talk to all ranks down to lieutenant-colonel level. Arrangements were also made for the briefing of the soldiers throughout the entire force before they actually took off. All this was part of a deliberate scheme, not only to keep the organization running smoothly, but to reduce as far as possible the real enemy at this critical hour, the fear of the unknown in men's minds.

By now Montgomery had revived in England the idea of personal leadership in the military field, just as Churchill had done it some years previously in the political field: provided he had a success his position with the troops was secure. At his own level, among his equals and superiors, the arguments, the debates and the doubts went on. In the last resort Montgomery's main difference from other leaders was that he never would blindly accept the advice of those above him. Perhaps, as many said, his besetting sin was vanity; certainly he appeared at times to be intransigent and stubborn to the point of bigotry, to oppose others simply for the love of opposing them. But these vices, if they existed in him, had also distilled a virtue which was regrettably lacking at times among the officers struggling up to a high command: he was nobody's sycophant, he could not be dined and wined into an amenable frame of mind, he could not be impressed by a show of authority nor were his wits clouded by ceremony. Nor was he unduly handicapped by the niceties of tact and diplomacy. He was wholly unbribable—even by the subtlest forms of bribery. And he never intrigued. This last was also a refreshing novelty. A very great part of Montgomery's success from

Alamein onwards was this habit of "talking back" to his superiors, of digging in his toes before a battle and demanding point-blank what he wanted in the way of men and supplies—otherwise he would not fight the battle. It is easy, as his enemies suggested, to win victories if you have the means. It is not so easy to extort and sometimes bludgeon those means out of governments and rulers. Nor is it easy to turn squarely against strong political pressure, to reject plans given you from very high authority and insist on the adoption of your own. This was the real basis of Montgomery's behaviour in High Command at this time and it was the least-known side of his character.

Obviously he was not always right; he himself said in 1944: "I have made many mistakes in the past and I shall doubtless make many more". It was impossible for the authorities, even had they wanted to, to give him *carte blanche* all the time. They had to oppose him sometimes. The eternal problem was to know just when you could give the rein to this headstrong and over-willing horse.

By the time the invasion was ready Churchill, most of the British Cabinet, and a great part of the Allied Command were ardent admirers of Montgomery's skill, his confidence and his toughness of moral character. But Churchill was a warm-blooded man. His was not the surgical approach to war. Once the conference was over and the planning was done he was a rip-roaring subaltern again, and his mind was riding once more in the charge of the 21st Lancers at Omdurman. Let us get at 'em. Let us take the monster by the throat. Let the cannon speak and this mighty host of free men would fall upon the skulking foe with fire and sword and all the ardour of a righteous cause. He announced his intention of landing with the troops on D-day.

From this he was restrained; but he chafed nevertheless at the endless preparations, the logistics, the mountainous tables of tonnage, the graphs, the figures, the loading priorities, the paraphernalia of workshops and bulldozers and spare parts, the radio wave-lengths, the ballistics and the statistics. Where was the bayonet in all this? Was the invasion an adding machine? Did the generals really need all those trucks and cranes and sacks of concrete on the landing-barges? Had not the organization become over-organized? Where was the charge up the beaches in all this? Had everyone forgotten that?

He queried the loading programme. Get the soldiers ashore. That was the thing. The paraphernalia could follow afterwards.

The answer from the generals was that all the equipment was, unfortunately, necessary. The men would be useless without it.

Churchill persisted. There were too many vehicles on the boats. Again Montgomery argued with him. It was reminiscent of the story of the king complaining to Mozart at the playing of one of the composer's symphonies: "Too many notes, my dear Mozart. Too many notes." Mozart had answered "No, sir, just enough". And Montgomery now repeated in the same way: "No, sir, we have just enough vehicles".

The Prime Minister remained restive. It so often happens in a crisis when one is exposed to a thousand anxieties the mind will fix on one and make it the sounding-board for all the rest. So Churchill fixed on this matter of the vehicles and the loading priorities. Barely a week before D-day he decided to go down to Montgomery's headquarters and address the General's staff upon the subject. Montgomery was waiting to receive him, but first led the way into a study. And there Montgomery put down his cards on the table.

It was unwise, he said, for the Prime Minister to speak to the staff at that moment. Even if he, Montgomery, was wrong it was too late now to alter things. The loaded trains were running to the ports. The boats were loading. The whole vast invasion machine was turning over and to alter things now would hopelessly dislocate the whole operation. He was absolutely confident that the loading programme was sound, that every single vehicle was necessary. If the Prime Minister could not accept his word on this—if he insisted on an alteration at this eleventh hour—then someone else must be found to lead the expedition.

Someone else must lead the expedition! The bombshell fell quietly in the room. Suddenly Churchill gave way. He had had something more than a tolerable or a human burden on his mind in the past few months; and now this was too much. Possibly he saw, and with a sense of overwhelming relief, that events now had reached the point where they were beyond the control of any one man, where inevitably this monstrous project was sweeping upward to its final crisis, that everyone was reacting in a certain way because he *had* to react in that way and that there was no longer any turning back or turning aside for anyone. And he gave way. The resignation of Montgomery was unthinkable and they both knew it. The two men remained a little longer in the room while the tension slid away. Then Montgomery reminded him that the staff was waiting outside.

Churchill got up and went out. The generals, the brigadiers and the colonels were drawn up in a line. One by one Montgomery introduced them. Everyone there sensed there had been a crisis. Most of them guessed what had taken place in the study.

Churchill got to the head of the line and surveyed them for a moment without speaking. Then the old lion had his final roar. Some sly imp of genius made him say, and with dignity: "I'm not allowed to talk to you, gentlemen". Then he walked out. The scene was all his.

In Montgomery's book the Prime Minister had written:

"On the verge of the greatest adventure with which these pages have dealt, I record my confidence that all will be well, and that the organization and equipment of the Army will be worthy of the valour of the soldiers and the genius of their chief".

There followed the final conference on June 1st between Montgomery and the four Army generals under his command—Omar Bradley of the First American, George S. Patton of the Third American, Dempsey of the Second British and Crerar of the First Canadian. Then, a few days later, came that momentous meeting when Eisenhower decided to sail in the face of the rising wind rather than delay any longer.

To the troops Montgomery made his last appeal:

"The time has come to deal the enemy a terrific blow in Western Europe . . . in better days that lie ahead men will speak with pride of our doings. We have a great and righteous cause."

On the following day, June 6th, the blow was struck and Montgomery followed his shock troops over to Normandy. He set up his Tactical Headquarters in an old château at Creully half-way between the beaches and the firing-line.

## CHAPTER TWELVE

# GREAT ARGUMENT

### I

WHEN Montgomery crossed to Normandy in June 1944 he believed that the Germans could have been thrown out of the war by the following Christmas and the Japanese defeated within six months thereafter. It was a belief he never forsook either during the campaign or afterwards. Even though the collapse of the Germans did not take place until May 1945—six months later than he anticipated—Montgomery stuck to his view that the war might have ended according to his time-table had he remained in control of the armies in the field.

There are, therefore, two versions of the campaign: the story of how it was actually fought, and the story (which we are concerned with here) of the campaign seen through Montgomery's eyes.

To the public the events flowed by in a coherent and connected pattern under the guiding hand of Eisenhower. One great milestone followed another: first the unbelievable success of the landing in June and the capture of Cherbourg. Then, through July and August, the long anxious battle of the bridgehead ending with the American break-out through St. Lô and the encirclement and destruction of the German Army in the Falaise Pocket. Then through the last days of the summer the kaleidoscopic and delirious pursuit, the fall of Paris, Brussels, Holland, the new American army sweeping up from southern France, and the Russian avalanche to the Oder. From day to day one talked of the ending of the war. Then the failure of Arnhem, the slow release of Antwerp, the abrupt halt all along the line ending with the ominous German counter-offensive at Christmas in the Ardennes. Then the dragging winter attacks up to the Rhine. And finally, in the spring, the breaking of the tidal wave which engulfed Germany from the east and the west.

Each event appeared to follow on logically and inevitably. But this was not so. The gravest divisions of opinion developed in the Allied High Command. Personal jealousies flared up. There were many moments of the most serious doubtings and hesitations. Vain and ridiculously emotional national rivalries



clouded the issues. And often prejudices took fire through the lack of information and the unavoidable confusion of war.

Mainly because we had overwhelming strength and we were winning, and very largely through the patience and determined tact of General Eisenhower, these animosities never reached the point of open revolt. The Command was far more steady, far more complete and unified than it was in the previous war. One after another the simmering rivalries were composed and, in a sense, sublimated by the actual shock and movement of the fighting. And there were, as well, minor cross-currents that subdued the major waves. At Eisenhower's headquarters there were, for example, a group of British officers who by no means always supported Montgomery. And there were differences between the American commanders in addition to certain *malentendus* with the French and the goading silences of the Russians.

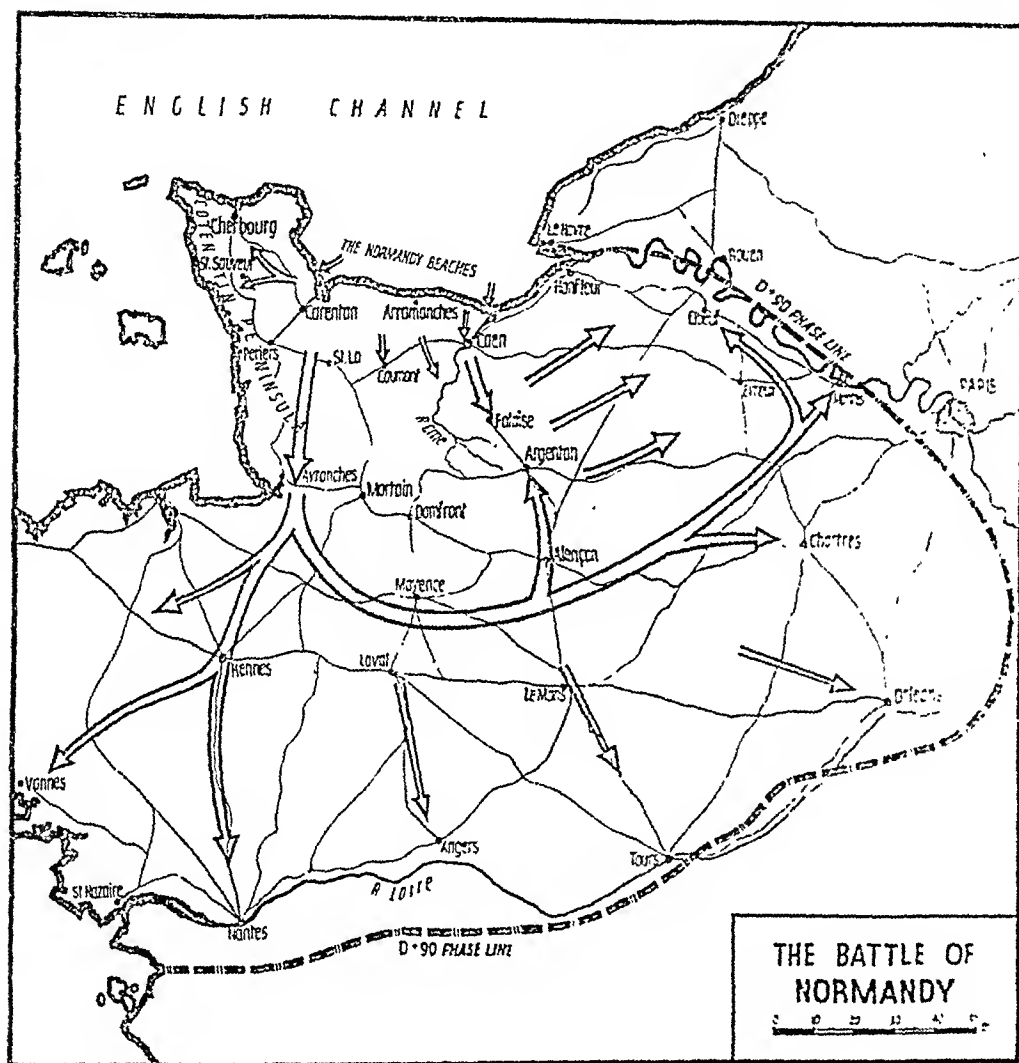
Montgomery wandered, a prickly and lonely prophet, through these political thickets. To his opponents he seemed to be forever growling vainly out of his lair: "Have done. Away with these arguments. There is only one way to settle the war and that is to let me finish it for you. Just relax and hand over the business to me." For thirty years he had fought the British Army, and now that he had achieved some success in that direction he found himself tilting against a whole group of armies. It must have seemed to him sometimes more than exasperating. When, from time to time, he was given his head he raced away with enormous gusto—only to find, after a brief moment of liberty, the reins dragging him back again. There were many other horses, mostly Americans, who also wanted to run in this final sprint. And since they had the preponderating weight of men and arms in the field they insisted on their rights.

But at first Montgomery was away on his own. From June until August, from the landing until the Falaise Pocket, he controlled the Allied armies in the field, and the general direction of the tactical battle was his own. Let us dip into his own account of the engagement:

"Once ashore and firmly established my plan was to threaten to break out on the eastern flank—that is, in the Caen sector; by this threat to draw the main enemy reserves into that sector, to fight them there and keep them there, using the British and Canadian armies for the purpose. Having got the main enemy reserves committed on the *eastern* flank, my plan was to make the break-out on the *western* flank, using for this purpose the American armies under General Bradley,

and pivoting on Caen; this attack was to be delivered southwards down to the Loire and then to proceed eastwards in a wide sweep up to the Seine about Paris.

"This would cut off all the enemy forces south of the Seine, over which river the bridges were to be destroyed by air action. This general plan was given out by me to the general officers



of the field armies in London in March 1944—that is, three months before D-day.

"The operations developed in June, July and August exactly as I planned. I had given D plus 90 as a target date for being lined up on the Seine; actually the first crossing of the river was made on D plus 75."

About the details of the landing he says:

"My plan of assault, as approved by the Supreme Commander, provided for three simultaneous landings by eight

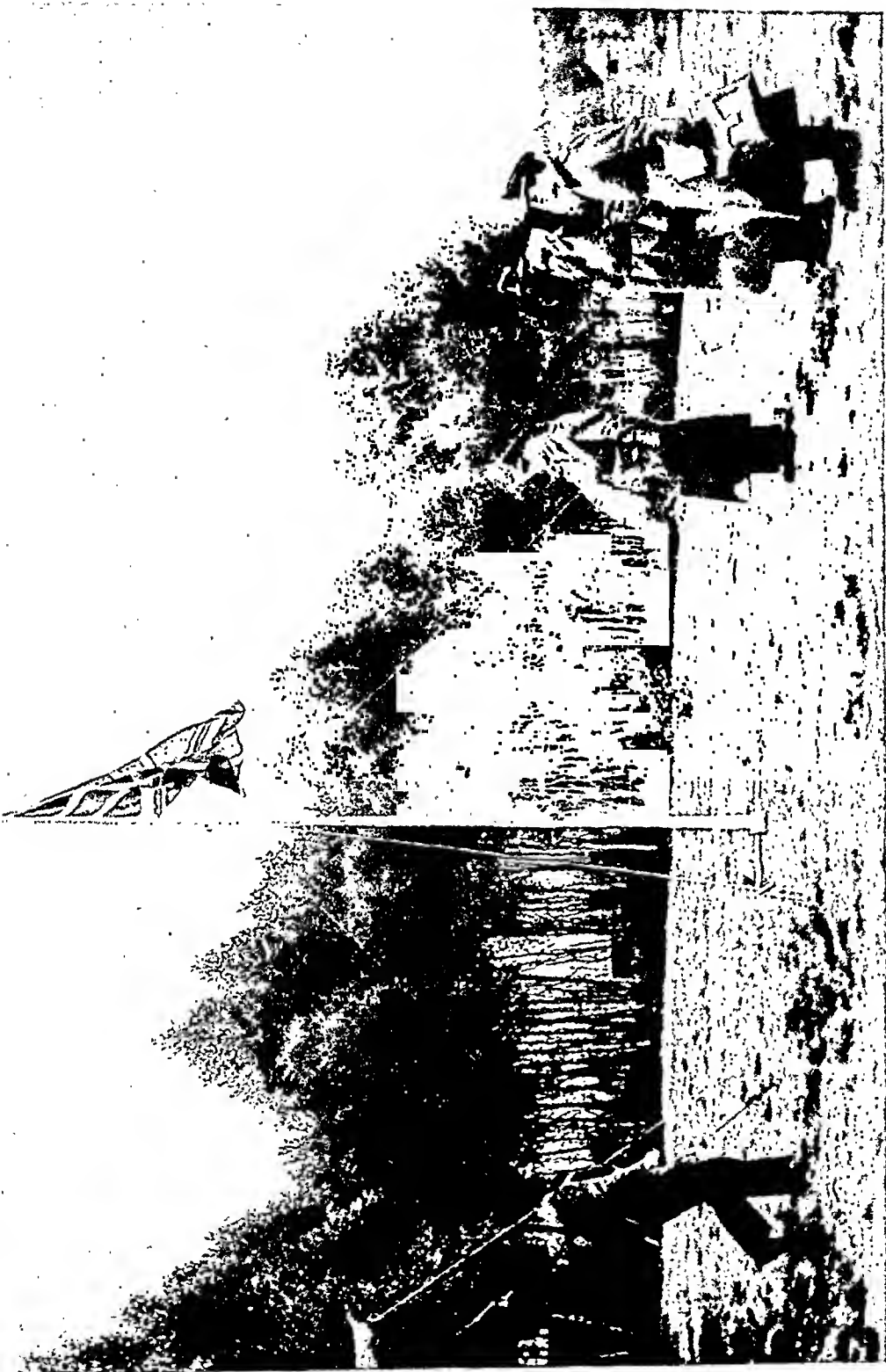
equivalent brigades—two British, two Canadian and two American. There were in addition on either flank British Commandos, U.S. Rangers and three airborne divisions, two of which were American. The British under Dempsey were to make straight for Caen and establish the pivot, while Bradley cut off the Cotentin (Cherbourg) peninsula and captured Cherbourg.

"I considered it essential for the success of the initial operations to have ashore, and ready for action by the end of D plus 3, seven divisions, together with the necessary proportion of armour, quite apart from the airborne troops. With these forces I was confident of being able to defeat the first German attempts to dislodge our forces and also of being able to retain the initiative."

The initiative was indeed maintained; but this was not apparent at the time. A "slogging match" developed, a bitter and excruciating series of battles which did not appear to be getting us anywhere. To the public who did not know the plan and the devious phases of its unfolding, and to the soldier who could not see the battle for the bullets, these hideous and changing conflicts of June and July seemed to be without pattern or direction, a chaos in which luck and courage governed all. Even some of those in command who knew the plan began to lose heart, so fierce and continuous was the struggle. And in the absence of detailed and consecutive news from hour to hour their minds began to fill with doubts.

And so a controversy developed over Montgomery, a controversy which continued with many permutations until long after the war. It was like some fungoid disease which, having been quenched at one place, lay dormant for a while and then broke out in a new form somewhere else. To those who were at Montgomery's headquarters and saw the orders go out day by day and watched the reports coming in, this controversy seemed childish and absurd. But whether or not this special view was right the fact remained that the argument was a very serious one: it touched the highest levels, it provoked the most emotional prejudices and here and there unseated the best reason.

It had been hoped in the planning that Caen would fall to the British in the assault. It did not fall; and immediately all those people who judge campaigns by the capture of towns and place-names began to imagine that we had failed. They forgot that it was not Caen we wanted but to attract the bulk of the German armour and artillery to this end of the bridge-head so that the Americans would be able to make an easier



THE LUNEBURG SURRENDER



break-out at the other end. And this is precisely what happened. Although Caen did not fall in June, Rommel reacted entirely to Montgomery's plan by directing the bulk of his striking forces against the British on the outskirts of the city.

As these battles grew fiercer through June people at home began to suggest: "Montgomery has failed. He is getting nowhere. Why does not Caen fall?" At length Eisenhower was forced to take notice of them and his fears were confided to the Prime Minister. Did Monty really know what he was doing?

Mr. Churchill crossed to Montgomery's headquarters in France and found there the most surprising confidence. Set-backs? What set-backs? The battle was going excellently to plan. Having been beaten in the first assault Rommel was still hoping to wipe out the bridgehead and he was going about it in precisely the wrong way. He was draining the rest of France of reserves in order to fight the decisive battle then and there in Normandy. Had he committed all these reserves together he might possibly have flung us back to the coast or at least contained us indefinitely in the bridgehead. But he had been bluffed by the Allied deception plans. He continued to fear a second Allied landing in the Pas de Calais area and so he was cautiously bringing down his reserves piecemeal into Normandy. One by one they were being defeated, and in the end, if this went on, there would be no divisions left for a later stand on the Seine.

Montgomery reminded Churchill of the plan which had been agreed upon in March. Well, then, here was the plan in operation. Half a dozen panzer divisions were gathering round Caen in front of the British, while over on the left in front of the Americans the German line was tailing away. The shock of battle was enormous, the strain of fighting continuous. And the difficulties of manœuvring in close *bocage* country (a terrain intersected by thick hedges and small fields) were appalling. But still the plan was working out. Let the newspapers and critics hold their hands for a moment and they would see a victory.

Convinced, Churchill returned to England and passed on what had been said to Eisenhower. The Supreme Commander, if not exactly happy, was also inclined to put his trust in Montgomery, and from this moment until the closing of the gap at Falaise, Eisenhower loyally confirmed Montgomery's control.

The controversy might have ended here but for the appearance of several popular post-war books in America. Commander Harry Butcher, in his *My Three Years with Eisenhower*, reports

that in June 1944 at S.H.A.E.F. there were constant complaints at the slowness of Montgomery, who "waited so long (at Caen) that two panzer divisions were drawn against him". This is set in contrast to Bradley's rapid progress on the right flank. Again, under the date of July 20th, Commander Butcher says, "Tedder says the British Chiefs of Staff would support any recommendation Ike might care to make with respect to Montgomery for not succeeding in going places with his big three-armoured division push (again near Caen)". It seems incredible (especially as Commander Butcher was Eisenhower's chief aide at the time) that the S.H.A.E.F. commanders could have had no notion of Montgomery's plan or that they could not have perceived that Montgomery was doing precisely what he had said he would do—attract the German armour to Caen so that Bradley could break out on the right flank.

Mr. Ralph Ingersoll, an American journalist who was attached to Bradley's staff, also wrote a book, *Top Secret*, which was published in 1946. He, too, makes the astonishing assertion that "Montgomery failed at Caen". He appears to believe (and the view was given wide currency in America) that the plan was for the British and Canadians to break out of Caen towards Paris, and that when this failed a dangerous stalemate developed. It is also suggested that at this point (in July) the strategy had to be changed: the feeble British were left behind at Caen while the Americans opened up an entirely new salient on the right.

In point of fact (as we now know from the officially published documents and the accounts of such leaders as Eisenhower and General Bedell Smith) the role of the British at this stage was never to break out and the strategy was never changed. The plan as laid down by Montgomery in March 1944 was followed to the letter and with overwhelming success. Very deliberately the British with their staying powers were set to attract and meet the great bulk of the German armour in a slogging match around Caen, while the Americans with their marvellous equipment, their mobility and their ardour for quick movement were given the fast-riding role in the west at St. Lô.

A study of Montgomery's directions to the Allied Army commanders throughout June, July and August 1944, brings out this point clearly. It also reveals that, at a time when all the world was puzzled and worried about the British and Canadian "slowness" at Caen, Montgomery was far more concerned about the delays in launching the American break-out at St. Lô.

Seen in the light of these documents, both British and American, Mr. Ingersoll's references to the British become so much sensational and irresponsible nonsense. The lamentable thing is not that he should be wrong, but that he should have been taken so seriously on both sides of the Atlantic; and that by 1946 Anglo-American relations should have drifted to the point where the book became the source of a misunderstanding between the two countries.

However, at the time, Montgomery's plan was going ahead. On July 25th the Americans started their break-out through St. Lô, the newly arrived American Third Army under Patton swinging right into Brittany and the remainder of the Americans racing round through Mayenne and Alençon to build up the southern wall of the pocket round the German Army.

Criticism for the time being expired. But there was one tense moment. The Germans made a desperate and bull-headed attempt to cut the American armies in two by breaking through their lines at the base of the pocket at Mortain.

"This was an exciting time", Montgomery says. "It was now to become apparent whether the enemy would stand and be defeated between the Seine and the Loire or whether he would endeavour to withdraw his forces behind the Seine. Between August 7th and the 11th it became clear that he had decided to fight the Battle of France on our side of the Seine. On the 7th a major counter-attack, employing up to six armoured divisions, was launched on Hitler's orders against the American forces in the area of Mortain. It was designed to cut off the forces operating south of Avranches by a drive to the sea. In the face of this counter-attack the Americans, assisted by the full weight of the Tactical Air Force, stood firm."

Then the denouement of this greatest battle of the western war: "I ordered the right flank of the Twelfth U.S. Army Group (the two American armies) to swing north to Argentan (the southern end of the mouth of the pocket) and intensified the British and Canadian thrusts southwards to the capture of Falaise (the northern end).

"It had become a race to trap the German forces deployed in the long salient (or pocket) between Falaise and Mortain. Meanwhile, the enemy received a tremendous hammering from the air. Falaise fell to the Canadian Army on August 16th; American forces reached Argentan, and fighting of tremendous intensity was in progress at the bottleneck with the German striving all he knew to force his way out."

With one last effort the Allies plugged the neck, the Air



Force overran the enemy within the pocket, and the remainder of the Americans raced on to Paris, the Seine and eastern France. It was the end. It was also probably the last of the classic land battles ever to be seen or endured in Europe.

The wreckage was fearful. There was a monstrous and horrifying debris of smashed horses, carts, vehicles and men choking up the country lanes. Twenty German corps and divisional commanders had been killed or captured, two others wounded. Forty-three divisions were knocked out. Half a million enemy soldiers had been eliminated. Fifteen hundred tanks and three thousand five hundred guns were either destroyed or captured. It was a victory on a cosmic scale.

There was even a personal triumph as complete as any leader of men could reasonably expect in this world. The long conflict of wills between Rommel and Montgomery was over. Having demolished his opponent's armies and utterly undone his generalship, Montgomery had the satisfaction of seeing the end of Rommel himself. The German Field-Marshal was struck down by the bullets of low-flying fighters in the village of Sainte Foy de Montgomery, in the midst of the battle area. The Montgomery clan had come to its birthplace for its revenge.

It is another revealing facet of Montgomery's mind that from this moment he lost all interest in Rommel. The picture was taken down from above his table in the caravan (the same caravan in which the photograph had first been posted at Alamein) and a photograph of Rundstedt, the new rival, set in its place. He no longer spoke of Rommel or thought of him. No sadistic (but perhaps understandable) pilgrimage was made to the spot where the arch-rival was hit. And when, months later, it was officially confirmed by the enemy that Rommel at last was dead,<sup>1</sup> Montgomery had no comment to make, no gesture of triumph. The truth was that he had long since ceased to rate Rommel as an equal.

But to those around Montgomery the passing out of Rommel added the last decorative touch to the victory. After so many doubts and so many months of waiting it was a transcendent moment. Montgomery had made good his word a hundred times over. The plan had been pure gold. He had fought his greatest battle, he had drawn hundreds of thousands of men to his will. He had manoeuvred this vast and frightening host as

<sup>1</sup> While Rommel was still convalescing it was discovered by the Gestapo that he was implicated in the bomb plot against Hitler. He was visited by Gestapo agents, and after the interview, he walked out alone into the woods. The following day his body was found: he had died of poisoning. Von Kluge, who replaced Rundstedt in the over-all command about this time, soon committed suicide also. Rundstedt was subsequently restored to his command.





though it were a platoon. And now he was entirely master of the battlefield and the road led on directly to the final *coup de grâce*.

It was at this point in August that Eisenhower sent word that Montgomery must step down. He must revert to the minor command of the two British armies while Eisenhower himself took up the operational direction in the field. To Montgomery the news could hardly be other than bitterly disappointing; a humiliating blow that took the edge off the whole victory.

It was a difficult moment for everybody. Eisenhower had done nothing which had not been pre-arranged. It had been accepted from the first that he was the Supreme Commander and that he must one day cross over to France and gather up the reins himself. There was no discourtesy and certainly no jealousy in the manner in which he took over the operational command; indeed he made it clear that Montgomery's future advice on the general conduct of the war would hold high priority.

To Eisenhower it seemed that he had no choice. There were now five American armies deployed as against two British. The American generals (let alone Congress and the American public) were wholly unwilling to continue under Montgomery's command—it was a slur on their own ability. Moreover, an Allied Headquarters had been created to meet this very situation, and Montgomery was not the man who had been nominated by Britain as the second in command. That position had been given to Air Marshal Tedder. If Montgomery continued to supplant Eisenhower and Tedder there would be an outcry in the United States Press and in Parliament.

To Montgomery these arguments were not conclusive. He had won a great victory. He had demonstrated a skill which had brought the Allies overwhelming success. Surely he was entitled to follow up that success. It was inefficient and dangerous to swop horses in mid-stream. As for the Supreme Allied Command there was nothing in the world to stop Eisenhower and Tedder from coming across to France and carrying on exactly as they had before. They could continue to control the rearward organization, to co-ordinate the flow of arms and men up to the front, to handle the *politics* of the battle, and the political resurrection of Europe.

As for the American Press, Montgomery argued, this point was of no account. *Victories were the only thing that mattered, not public opinion.* Victories moulded public opinion. Give the people victories and the public opinion would follow. There would be

no criticism as long as we kept on winning. And the way to win the war quickly was to continue with the present command.

These two points of view were already irreconcilable enough, but something much more insoluble intervened. Supreme Headquarters and Montgomery were radically opposed on the actual tactics of the campaign as it should be fought from the Seine onwards.

Montgomery believed that the moment had come to throw Germany out of the war with one bold and decisive stroke. Given some forty divisions, or about a million men, and the cream of the Air Force, he was confident he could make one major thrust along the northern coast of Europe, enter the Ruhr and bring Germany to surrender. To do this he estimated that the Allies would have to halt on the right (in central France) and divert all priorities in petrol, vehicles and other equipment to the northern column. Indeed, with that plan in view he had already ordered Bradley to seize Paris, plug the gap between Paris and Orleans and then stop. Certainly, he argued, there were dangers in the scheme but the hour was propitious, the enemy was in a state of rout and once in the Ruhr we had only to maintain forces there for a maximum of three months—and that would be the end.

Supreme Headquarters strongly disagreed. One could not leave all France behind and expose a flank hundreds of miles in length. The thrust could never be maintained; a few soldiers might struggle into the Ruhr and then they would be cut off. It was absolutely necessary to capture first a large supply port on the North Sea. All the armies (there were now seven) must move up to the Rhine together.

Montgomery protested that this would mean that the war would drag on for months; that if we presented a long thin front to the enemy then Rundstedt would hold it off by simply maintaining a long thin line of his own, and we would be nowhere strong enough to break it. Now in August was the moment when he was unable to withstand one concentrated blow.

The arguments swayed back and forth through correspondence and subordinates, and were continued in a painful meeting between Eisenhower and Montgomery themselves in Montgomery's caravan. Montgomery would not and Eisenhower could not back down. And so it came to a matter of the senior man exerting his authority. Montgomery has summed up the issue himself:

"The speed of our advance through the Pas de Calais and Belgium convinced me that if the Allies could concentrate and

maintain sufficient strength for the task, one powerful and full-blooded thrust deep into Germany would overwhelm the enemy and carry with it decisive results.

"The best axis along which such a thrust could have been developed was the route of the Ruhr leading to the plains of northern Germany. It was obvious that the enemy would concentrate strong forces to defend this vital axis, and the industrial area of the Ruhr.

"Speed was essential; the stroke could be effective only if carried out at once, taking advantage of the disorganized state of the enemy; moreover, weather conditions would inevitably deteriorate from mid-September onwards and handicap the use of our air power and airborne forces. But we would have to be strong enough on the selected axis to get decisive results quickly.

"Could sufficient troops be made available, and our maintenance sustain them on such a long line of communication? If so, the end of the war was in sight.

"The Supreme Commander came to the decision that we should not at this stage stick out our neck in one single thrust deep into enemy territory, owing to our lack of major deep-water ports. The lines of communication still stretched to the Normandy beaches and Cherbourg peninsula, and the autumn weather was close upon us. He therefore decided that the early opening up of deep-water ports and the improvement of our maintenance facilities were pre-requisites to the final assault on Germany proper. He directed that our immediate aim should be the establishment of bridges over the Rhine throughout its entire length, and that we should not go beyond this until Antwerp or Rotterdam could be opened."

Looking back on the event it is still difficult for the non-expert to decide who was right. That extra six months on the war in 1945 acutely intensified the ensuing famine in Europe, accelerated (through air bombing) the general downslide of civilization in the post-war years, killed many thousands of additional men and women, and probably lengthened the Japanese war as well. So Montgomery's thrust, if possible, was well worth trying. But even among the British he had opponents. The Russians at this time required 150 divisions to reach the Oder. Could the Western Allies have hoped to throw the Germans out of the war with just 30 divisions? Probably there was just one event which could have made Montgomery's scheme water-tight beyond all doubt. That was the success of the July bomb plot against Hitler. In the light of the evidence at the Nuremberg trials there can be no

longer much doubt that had Hitler died then the collapse would have followed before the winter of 1944.

But the plot did not succeed, and Montgomery went off obediently enough to clean up the deep-water port of Antwerp. No personal animosity remained between him and Eisenhower, any more than there had been with Alexander over the Sicilian and Italian campaigns. They had disagreed on a technical level, but each continued to respect the integrity and honesty of the other. Courtiers about the High Command whispered little stories and made the disagreement fester in secret, but Eisenhower and Montgomery reached across their heads and for the time being agreed to disagree. And it was at this moment that the British Cabinet made the somewhat obvious but acceptable gesture of creating Montgomery a field-marshal.

Never perhaps had two such different personalities come together on a battlefield as Eisenhower and Montgomery. Their very appearance displayed their opposing and yet interlocking natures. On Eisenhower's broad and smiling face everything was boyishness, frankness and enthusiasm. Even in his loose-limbed easy walk and his warm full voice there was an air of friendliness and plain dealing. The heart warmed to him at once. Here was a man who was still the boy who once fished by the water-hole, an extrovert without any pretensions, a leader who knew and lived by all the weakness and failings and emotions of the ordinary human being; and finally a soldier of exceptional intelligence trying quite simply and devotedly to do his job as well as he could. Against this was set that "intensely compacted hank of steel wire" that made up the troubled and complicated nature of Montgomery. It was the difference between the fire and the burning-glass, the humanist and the individualist, the extrovert and the introvert, the determined amateur and the professional.

Eisenhower expressed truly the broad American attitude towards fighting: to get in there with the team and give it all you've got, to push on and exploit each success as it came along, to fight clean and fast. To the American public three thousand miles away the war never assumed the same aspect as it did to the people of Europe and Russia. It was never a desperate personal struggle for survival to-day or to-morrow in one's own home, but a fiercely dramatic game played at a distance. If an army were wiped out that did not mean that Kansas or Pittsburg was going to be blown to bits to-morrow. And yet, because the American soldier was offering his life in this distant arena, and his people at home could have no notion of

what the fighting was like, the war possessed for the American public a thousand imagined terrors and triumphs; all its colours and even its viciousness were heightened, and the whole conception of the struggle was essentially dramatic and heroic. And just as we can become immensely moved in a theatre at a great tragedy, so the Americans were moved. But we react quite differently and far less dramatically when a real-life tragedy comes into our own lives. At the front the American soldier knew what this real-life tragedy was like. But at first, coming from the farm and the city office in the Middle West, he approached the war in the same dramatic way as the public at home, and later on the tragedy he came to know was for himself and not for his wife and children. Possibly because of this he had a double bravery: he fought not out of desperation but in the belief of a cause.

This was the altruism of Eisenhower's approach to war: he fought for an idea and perhaps a tradition. Montgomery fought for survival, with generations of struggling for survival behind him. With Montgomery there was no question of merely pitching in and giving it all you had: the thing to do was to kill with the utmost efficiency and on a long-term basis. You made a cold-blooded plan for killing and you stuck to it. You were never distracted by local successes, never carried away by enthusiasms or strokes of luck, never moved by public opinion; you stuck to the science of the matter. It is not suggested that Eisenhower and the Americans were amateurs, but their *emotions* were those of the amateur.

It followed, then, that there was a fundamental difference in the reactions of the Americans and the British leaders; those moments in the battle which seemed to the Americans to be the height of success sometimes appeared to be the very reverse to Montgomery, and he was urging "Pause and consolidate" when the Americans were crying "Push on". And sometimes when the Americans were advising caution Montgomery was all for advancing. Thus at Falaise, when the American plan was for taking all the armies steadily up to the Rhine together, Montgomery wanted to fling everything into the desperate gamble of an isolated spearhead march right into the centre of the Reich. And this, ironically, at a time when his critics were declaring he was "too slow, too cautious".



But now in August the bridgehead was done with. Eisenhower assumed the field command of the armies on September 1st and at once put his own plan into operation. He countermanded Montgomery's instructions that Bradley should halt at Paris and urged all the armies forward to the Rhine together. Bradley was elevated to equal status with Montgomery as the commander of an army group.

Not one but two main thrusts were to be directed at Germany—one by General Patton aimed south of Paris towards the Saar, and the other by Montgomery in the north through Belgium and Holland to the lower Rhine. At the same time all other Allied forces were to be led up to the river with all possible speed and with more or less equal supplies.

It is interesting to follow the correspondence between Eisenhower and Montgomery from this point onwards.

On September 4th Montgomery wrote to Eisenhower stressing his opposition to the S.H.A.E.F. plan. He said in this letter that the plan meant a slow and deliberate campaign because the Allied armies would be spread on a very wide frontage, our administrative resources would be spread accordingly and would fall down. He reiterated that we would be nowhere strong enough to get decisive results quickly, the Germans would thus be given time to recover and we would become involved in a long winter campaign.

Again Montgomery asserted that there must be under Eisenhower a land force commander who would co-ordinate the armies and keep close up with the battle. The face of modern war was such, he argued, that a battle could very quickly get out of hand unless some one commander was able to give his sole and undivided attention to it. Eisenhower himself was already involved with too many problems: political, international, financial, governmental. Therefore let Eisenhower have an Army C.-in-C. just as he already had an Air and a Navy C.-in-C.

The letter can hardly have made agreeable reading to the soldiers at S.H.A.E.F. But Montgomery appended a startling suggestion. "If", he said, "I am not suitable for the appointment of C.-in-C. in the field, let Bradley have the job."

It was an offer which was kept secret at the time and has never been publicized since. Montgomery pressed it strongly. Not once, but a number of times, and in writing, he offered to

serve under Bradley who was his junior both in rank and reputation. Since the Americans had so many more soldiers than the British, he wrote, it was only reasonable that the appointment should go to an American. At all events let *someone* be appointed.

Eisenhower's immediate reply to this was "No. British public opinion would never stand it." And, no doubt, he was right.

By now (September) the Supreme Commander had moved his headquarters from England to Granville on the Atlantic side of the Cherbourg peninsula. Montgomery, holding the views he did, could hardly fail to note that Granville was some 500 miles from the front line, and the front line was getting farther away every day. However, on September 5th, Eisenhower issued the following order from Granville:

"12th Army Group (American) will capture the Saar and the Frankfurt area. 21st Army Group (British and Canadian) will capture the Ruhr and Antwerp."

Montgomery replied with repeated telegrams saying it was not possible to carry out these orders. 21st Army Group was not strong enough. S.H.A.E.F. was completely out of touch with the realities of the situation.

On September 15th Eisenhower followed up his orders with a letter to Montgomery, saying, "We shall soon have captured the Ruhr, and the Saar and the Frankfurt area, and I would like your views as to what we should do next".

Montgomery received this letter at a time when he was fighting increasing resistance on the Leopold Canal and other lines. He replied that he saw no chance of capturing the Ruhr or the Saar or the Frankfurt area unless the command and the strategy were reorganized in what he considered a more professional way.

However, an order was an order, and Montgomery proceeded with his attack towards the lower Rhine.

### 3

With the aid of three airborne divisions the British were asked first to seize bridgeheads at Grave, Nijmegen and Arnhem. The battle began on September 17th and reached a stalemate eight days later with the honours standing fairly even: we took two bridges and failed at the third—Arnhem. Arnhem was an incident magnified far beyond its strategic importance by the peculiar and exciting circumstances and

the poignant tragedy of the stranded parachutists. Actually only a handful of divisions was involved, the over-all losses were small, and apart from the magnificent outburst of courage the battle had no more significance than half a dozen actions that were fought that same winter. "During the eight vital days of battle", Montgomery reported afterwards, "there were only two on which the weather permitted a reasonable scale of offensive air support and air transportation."

A longer and in some ways more gruelling engagement followed in October with the reduction of the approaches to Antwerp, which was to become the main—the vital—port for the Allies. In early November the port was clear. Meanwhile things had not gone too well all along the line; somehow the German rout at Falaise had turned into a bitter defence, and all hope of finishing the war before Christmas had vanished. Patton, having first outrun his supplies of fuel and ammunition, was restocked, but still he was held up around Metz, and there was no sign anywhere of the Allies achieving an early passage of the river. The armies had come up to the Rhine together and now they were blocked. In the thick of a particularly bitter winter the battle had bogged down. And again there were shortages in supply: even shells were rationed. It was impossible to deny that a great many of the dire things Montgomery had predicted about the S.H.A.E.F. plan had actually come to pass.

Restless, frustrated, and impatient, Montgomery wrote again to the Supreme Commander. On December 13th the letter was delivered to Eisenhower, who by then had taken up his headquarters at Versailles, outside Paris. In it Montgomery declared that the strategy since Falaise had not been successful. Things indeed had gone wrong ever since Eisenhower himself had taken over the direct command in his remote headquarters. If the Supreme Commander would not appoint a deputy to combine the battle at the front then Montgomery had another suggestion. Let him organize the theatre into "fronts" with a C.-in-C. in charge of each front. Resources should be allotted to each front in accordance with its problems and tasks.

The northern front, Montgomery urged, should be given to himself and it should extend southwards as far as the Ardennes. This would mean placing the American Ninth Army as well as the British and Canadians under Montgomery; and thus they would proceed to the capture of the Ruhr.

General Bradley at once hotly opposed this plan. In Washington also the idea of again placing American troops under British command was strongly opposed—even resented.

In London the British Chiefs of Staff, reviewing the disappointing results of the autumn, on the whole, took Montgomery's side.

Here, then, was a disagreement running beyond personalities into the sphere of governments, and Eisenhower needed a more than human patience and tact to cope with it. The argument was continuing in a desultory way when suddenly the Germans struck in the Ardennes with the largest assembly of armour ever seen in Europe; the object nothing less than the recapture of Antwerp and the cutting of the Allied forces in half.

Some days of particularly bad weather had made air reconnaissance impossible, and thus the Germans came up to their start-line in secret, and delivered their opening blow with tremendous success. The American armies were split down the centre. Throughout December 16th and 17th the situation was out of control.

At Supreme Headquarters in Versailles there was a commotion as the appalling news came in.<sup>1</sup> Conference followed conference. It was useless now to discuss whether in fact the general strategy was wrong; the thing was to do something quickly before the situation developed into complete chaos. For the moment the chain of command had broken down. Over a large area generals were out of touch with the fighting, and the one imperative was to re-establish a command which would grip the situation together again. There were only a few hours in which to decide. Major-General Whiteley, a senior British officer attached to Eisenhower, suggested that Montgomery should be called in. At once, as though they had been waiting for this very day, the rivalries flared out. A strong faction at Supreme Headquarters (it was British as well as American) had never admitted Montgomery's skill in the Battle of Normandy; indeed it believed that he had mishandled it. They had urged his replacement while the battle was on and they could see no reason for calling him in now. They disliked his personality, they suspected he would be all too ready to crow over the matter and exacerbate feelings in every direction. Another group, while no lovers of the Montgomery manner, were willing to admit his skill and believed that at least he could be given some measure of control. As the argument raged back and forth at Versailles, still worse and worse news arrived. But at last, as always in a crisis, the issue devolved upon Eisenhower himself; he alone could settle the matter. He decided that Montgomery should have command of the First

<sup>1</sup> In fairness it must be stated that General Bedell Smith denies there was any great concern at S.H.A.E.F.

and Ninth American Armies then in the thick of the fighting in the north. Bradley meanwhile should continue in control of the remaining American forces on the southern flank of the battle.

Thus began the incident of the Ardennes, which was clouded by the crisis at the time and seems to have become more clouded by prejudices and emotional rivalries ever since.

What happened in the Ardennes? The facts as we read them in the intelligence reports and the war diaries seem clear enough. The Germans struck with two panzer armies and made a deep penetration at a point where the Americans were regrouping; they demolished an untried American division and proceeded at speed towards Liège and the River Meuse, leaving isolated pockets of American resistance behind them. Montgomery, acting on his own initiative as the first reports came in, cancelled the mustering of his British armies for a battle in the extreme north and instead began to cover the approaches to Brussels and Antwerp. On December 20th he was given command of the First and Ninth American Armies in the main battle area. Judging that the Germans intended to continue toward Liège he cancelled the American plans for counter-attack and instead formed a defensive line.

To continue in Montgomery's own words: "The Battle of the Ardennes was won primarily by the staunch fighting qualities of the American soldier, and the enemy's subsequent confusion was completed by the intense air action which became possible as weather conditions improved. Sixth S.S. Panzer Army broke itself against the northern shoulder of the salient, while Fifth Panzer Army spent its drive in the fierce battles which centred on Bastogne. Regrouping the First and Ninth U.S. Armies, assisted by British formations, made possible the rapid formation of a reserve corps of four U.S. divisions under General Collins. The action of this corps, co-ordinated with the drive from the south by General Patton's Third Army, pinched the enemy forces out of the salient.

"The enemy had been prevented from crossing the Meuse in the nick of time. A detailed study of the battle would show how rapid re-grouping enabled the Allies to regain the initiative which the enemy had temporarily seized. Once we were sure of the Meuse crossings it became increasingly apparent that the opportunity had come to turn the enemy's position to our advantage. Hitler's projected counter-offensive ended in a tactical defeat, and the Germans received a tremendous battering." It was on New Year's Day, 1945, that the worst was over.

Those who were with Montgomery at this time were astonished at the snap and incisiveness of his orders. At times since he had lost the over-all command he had seemed lethargic, and as the long autumn battles in the mud had dragged on many people remembered a similar period under Montgomery's command in Italy during the previous year. Then, as now, he was living in a dreary village surrounded by mud, cold and rain, his convoys and soldiers straggling on the roads without the immediate prospect of getting anywhere. But now, under the stimulus of rapid action, all the old intensity and certainty came racing back. It might not be altogether wrong to say that he was enjoying himself.

He returned to Belgium after the fray full of enthusiasm. Dressed in a red beret and a camouflaged parachutist's jacket (he had recently been made Colonel-Commandant of the Parachute Regiment), he gathered the war correspondents to tell them his version of the story.

Curiously, Montgomery's Press conferences were never very successful. He tended to underrate the technical knowledge of his audience, and often he would speak with a monosyllabic simplicity that was impossible to pass on to a newspaper. "We are all one great team," he would say, "and we have all got to pull together." And he would return to the point again and again. Burning for real news the correspondents sat silently in rows on the wooden benches, wondering how on earth they could turn a homily on the team spirit into a news story. When they tried to pin Montgomery down to hard facts he frequently dodged the issue and escaped into generalities. More than anything else these conferences spread the already popular belief that the Field-Marshal, while a remarkable stimulator of men, was no ball of mental fire.

Moreover, Montgomery was not very good at dissembling. His thought processes *were* simple. They were also remarkably penetrating, but that did not appear at a Press conference. He rarely discussed the technicalities of which his head was full: this, he felt, would be "giving away his methods". While most commanders delighted in revealing their knowledge of tactics, with Montgomery it was the exact reverse. He cut all the preliminaries and, as it were, presented you with the finished solution of the problem. Because he conceived the Press more or less as a signalling set for the transmitting of atmosphere and news, and because he heard and read simple untechnical accounts of the battle on the radio and in the newspapers, he overlooked the fact that the correspondents themselves were not necessarily simple people, and that they, not he, were expert in

rendering technicalities into newspaper simplicities. Further, he was by nature not always an impartial summer-up. He looked upon affairs from his own angle and it was foreign to him to analyse the thoughts and ideas of others. Often when he intended to be fair he simply neglected the other man's point of view. And when he was pleased and elated he could not disguise the fact.

He was elated on this morning after the Battle of the Ardennes. His red beret was in character with his brimming emotions. It was not an inaccurate summing-up as far as it went, but there was a slight flavour of patronage in his references to the part played by Bradley and the other American generals. At this special moment, when it seemed on the face of it that Bradley had been taken unawares in the Ardennes, and that the American commanders had allowed themselves to be out-manœuvred, the report of this conference was bound to give offence. It was the signal for yet another public and a private flare-up over Montgomery and the position of the British vis-à-vis the Americans in the war.

For some time a section of the Press in England and America had been exchanging barely modulated abuse with one another. A good deal of it was childish and silly, but then quite a large number of people felt (unconsciously) childish and silly, and the argument was an expression of war-nerves which had been strained far too long. When it was suggested from Chicago and New York that the British were not pulling their weight, the British people looked at their drab cities and their drab and anxiety-ridden lives and remembered how long the United States had taken to enter the common war, how rich were the American soldiers billeted in England and how safe and well-fed were the American civilians. When London hinted that American generals were not very skilful and that New York business men seemed to think that the war was being run for their special benefit, people in the United States remembered that they were supplying the greatest number of troops and equipment in both Europe and the Pacific: that they were entitled to some gratitude for their help in a European cause which many in their hearts could not regard as their own. Why should they save the British Empire for the British?

This was the public quarrel. The private disturbance was just as acid. The Ardennes offensive inevitably had raised the suggestion that the American generals had been for a time outwitted by Rundstedt. Being human, they—and many of the staff—did not enjoy the spectacle of Montgomery appearing to come to the rescue. When Montgomery chose this moment to







MONTGOMERY, EISENHOWER AND BRADLEY

But yet gro con his com caus and pres Field opin

make his public statement on how he had fought the Battle of the Ardennes with American troops, and at the same time renewed his demands to be placed in permanent control of American forces—then feelings leaped into active dislike.

General Bradley complained that Montgomery's statements were making him (Bradley) ridiculous and lowering his authority in the eyes of his men. Discipline was suffering. When Bradley put out his own version of the Ardennes battle, a version which diminished the role Montgomery had played, the British Press flamed out angrily. And still Montgomery persisted that, for the conquest of the Ruhr at least, he should be given the full command in the north. To rival American commanders it sounded as if he were saying: "There you are. Look what happened in the Ardennes. You had to call on me for assistance. I had to get you out of the mess." If Montgomery did not say quite this he did continue to indicate strongly that he felt the general direction of the campaign was at fault, and that the picking and thrusting at the Rhine was advancing nobody. Things were getting very near an open breach between Supreme Headquarters and 21st Army Group. Staff officers who had the leisure to discuss these things were becoming more and more acrimonious.

Looking back on the scene from a world at peace one might marvel that the generals could brawl so cold-bloodedly with one another at a time when so many thousands were exposing themselves to death, and dying. But war—as one so easily forgets—is a thing of emotion, of *amour propre*, of crude recourse to violence. Each believed passionately in his own point of view. It was a gunman's world. And now with the end in sight many a man who had been missing in the crisis was hungering for the honours. Many were desperate to prove themselves. All believed they were acting for the best. It was a situation no one quite knew how to tackle.

It was in the first week of January, immediately after the Battle of the Ardennes, that Montgomery wrote to Eisenhower yet again asking for a rearrangement of the command, on the grounds that the strategical plan directed from Versailles was continuing to fail. Eisenhower replied saying he could not alter his position, and he added that the Field-Marshal by his constant prediction of failure was doing harm to the Allied cause. By now the argument was coursing strongly in America and London, and Eisenhower was under some considerable pressure from Washington. Again he reasoned: could not the Field-Marshal see how impossible it was to fly against public opinion in the United States? Doggedly Montgomery replied:

"Victories make public opinion. Give me the Ninth Army and I will take the Ruhr."

This was a much more serious impasse than the earlier contretemps in the autumn, and de Guingand was kept shuttling between 21st Army Group in Belgium and Supreme Headquarters in France. De Guingand was a master at smoothing out difficulties but this was getting beyond him.

At length Eisenhower declared, not without some feeling, that the issue had gone too far. He had exhausted every argument. He had gone to the limit of his powers in making concessions to Montgomery. Both tact and reason seemed useless. In his earnestness he thumped upon the table. Very well. If Montgomery wanted a show-down he should have it. Let the matter go back to Washington and London. Let them decide. It was either he or Montgomery. One of them would have to go.

With this ultimatum in his pocket de Guingand posted back across France and Belgium to 21st Army Group, and arrived late at night. Montgomery heard the news silently. Since boyhood he had loved to sail up as close to the rocks as possible, and now he was very close to the rocks indeed. Well, he on his side had tried everything. He had pushed his beliefs to the climax, failed, and that was that. Here was a matter in which not even Churchill could intervene.

A telegram accepting Eisenhower's authority was written out and dispatched at once. Immediately a modest and charming reply was received from Eisenhower, assuring Montgomery of the widest powers Supreme Headquarters was able to give him. At the same time a friendly letter was sent by Montgomery to Bradley saying that it had been an honour to command American troops; and Bradley received a similar note from Churchill assuring him of the respect and support of the British Government.

It was at this point that Eisenhower did something which was both magnanimous and shrewd. Having established his authority he suddenly turned round and gave Montgomery what he wanted. The theatre was organized into fronts and the Ninth American Army was placed under Montgomery's command. Together the Allies crossed the Rhine in great force. The crisis was over. It was never to recur.

There was never anything more in the dispute than this, and subsequent attempts to magnify the disagreements were simply mischievous and untrue. When the campaign was over Montgomery himself summed up the matter very clearly. "When Allies work together", he wrote, "there are bound to be

different points of view, and when these occur it is essential that they are thrashed out fully and frankly; but once a final decision is given, it is the duty of all members of the team to carry out that decision loyally. The Allied team worked in this spirit, and by its team work achieved overwhelming victory.

"In June 1945, when the German war was over and Supreme Headquarters was being dissolved, I wrote to General Eisenhower and thanked him for all that he had done for the British armies, and for myself. I said that I wanted him to know that I, a British general, had been proud to serve under American command. Ike, as I like to call him, wrote me this very charming letter:

" 'DEAR MONTY,—Your note to me written on the 7th is one of the finest things I have ever received. I am intensely gratified that you feel as you do. In the aftermath of this Allied effort enduring friendships and feelings of mutual respect among higher commanders will have a most beneficial effect. The team must continue to exist in spirit.

" 'Your own high place among leaders of your country is firmly fixed, and it has never been easy for me to disagree with what I knew to be your real convictions. But it will always be a great privilege to bear evidence to the fact that whenever decision was made, regardless of your personal opinion, your loyalty and efficiency in execution were to be counted upon with certainty.

" 'I hope you realize how deeply appreciative I am of your letter and the spirit that prompted you to write it, as well as of the tremendous help and assistance that you have been to me and to this whole Allied Force since it was first formed. In whatever years are left to both of us, possibly we may occasionally meet, not only to reminisce, but to exemplify the spirit of comradeship that I trust will exist between our two countries for all time.

" 'With warm personal regards,

" 'As ever,

" 'IKE.' "

Montgomery's book, *Normandy to the Baltic*, which deals with these affairs, is an astonishing piece of documentation, full of terse authoritative writing and brilliant analysis. Unfortunately it is not available to the public, but it will probably remain for all time a standard work for military students on the North-west European campaign. In it one obtains an entirely new picture of Montgomery, his extraordinarily detached view of the battle as a whole, his incisive grip on the development of

the struggle day by day, his honesty and his unaffected admiration of the Americans. Not one hint of personal animosity emerges. American and British, generals and privates, are regarded impartially and unemotionally as counters in an elaborate and highly technical game. One reads here of the fantastically intricate planning by which he laid not one but two encircling layers round the German armies west of the Seine, of the complicated approach to the Ruhr; and there is an entirely unprejudiced account of his dealings with S.H.A.E.F.

However, this is all material for the professional student and lies outside the personal business of biography. What we are concerned with here is that in January, having brought their differences to a crisis, Eisenhower and Montgomery offered one another the fullest co-operation.

Why had Montgomery persisted so implacably in his demands? His enemies said—personal vanity. Yet when we look into his own mind and remember all his background of experiences from childhood onwards we find the matter much more complicated. With some truth he could say: "Whenever I was given a free hand to fight the war as I thought right, success was complete and decisive: and the end of the war was brought nearer, *e.g.* Alamein, Sicily, Normandy, the Ardennes, the crossing of the Rhine. Whenever my advice was not followed we got into grave difficulties."

And when the casualties came to be counted one had to acknowledge this point as well: "I always stood not only for the need to win victories, but to win them with the minimum loss of life. For this reason I refused always to start till I was ready—and the soldiers knew this. Hence their regard for me."

Finally, it was impossible for Montgomery not to believe that he had agitated all through the dark autumn days of 1944 for a new organization of command; and that it took the crisis of the Ardennes and a really first-class row to get what he wanted. Then all went well.

Whether or not all this builds up into a combination of vanity and luck and persistence, the fact remains that it is a logical case, a case for the serious attention of history.

And now the spring was breaking. With first the King, and then Churchill, staying at his side in his headquarters, Montgomery planned and made his crossing of the Rhine. Then the avalanche burst over Germany to Berlin.

Visiting Normandy six days after the landing, Churchill had written in Montgomery's autograph book:

"As it was in the beginning so may it continue to the end".

On November 6th he had added:

"The conquest of Germany remains". On March 4th, 1945, he wrote again: "The British Army has reached the Rhine on a broad front and with its Allies from America and its Canadian brothers will presently pass this obstacle as it has so many others. Such are the rewards which fall to the brave when led with unwearying energy and unequalled skill."

In March 1945 as he watched the British stream across the river the Prime Minister made another entry: "The Rhine with all its fortress lines lies behind the 21st Group of Armies. Once again they have been a hinge upon which massive gates revolved. Once again they have proved that physical barriers are vain without the means and spirit to hold them."

"A beaten army, not long ago Master of Europe, retreats before its pursuers. The goal is not to be denied to those who have come so far and fought so well under proved and faithful leadership."

"Forward all on wings of flame to final Victory."

Soberly Montgomery notes that the Germans had, in his opinion, made three major mistakes: "The first was the decision to fight the Battle of France south of the Seine. By failing to surrender the territory between the Seine and the Loire and to take advantage of the Seine obstacle they suffered tremendous losses . . . and widespread political repercussions."

"Then came the second mistake. They launched a counter-offensive in the Ardennes, designed to hit the Allies so hard that the German striking force could subsequently be switched to the east. But they failed to win the air battle first; they had not the air resources nor adequate supplies of fuel for a major counter-stroke, and were wrong to attempt it. While some progress was made in the short period of bad weather, the enterprise was doomed to failure. A counter-attack, Yes; a counter-offensive, No."

"The third big mistake was the decision to stand and fight west of the Rhine in the hope of masking the Ruhr."

4

Two scenes on Lüneburg Heath in northern Germany, the scenes with which Montgomery ended the war.

A funeral cortège comes winding through the trees in the bright spring sunshine. A gun carriage, the coffin with the Union Jack draped round it, Montgomery walking a little ahead. A group of senior officers waiting on the road falls in behind and

follows the coffin across the grass to an open grave beside a bank of trees. It is an afternoon of unusual and beautiful freshness, so still that the voice of the chaplain sounds clearly across the field and, at the firing of the rifles in the air, the birds rise screaming and a dog barks in the farmyard in the valley.

Montgomery is the first to go up to the grave and salute the body of his friend John Poston, of the 11th Hussars. Some thirty months have gone by since they first met quite fortuitously in the Egyptian desert on Montgomery's arrival there. Since then the boy of twenty-five and the man in his fifties have been everywhere together in ten countries along the Army's line of march, Montgomery directing, Poston riding out each day in his jeep to the front line to gather the news and bring it home in the evening. "Home" was Tactical Headquarters, a group of caravans and vehicles, the two puppies "Rommel and Hitler", and this was very much a piece of England in whatever country it was though it never stayed more than a few days in the same place. The grave lies in Tactical Headquarters, now. Poston would never take care. He was always discovering short-cuts back along roads which had not been reconnoitred. He was taking a short-cut when a little group of fanatical German boys, firing some of the last shots of the war, ambushed him. He drove the jeep straight at them as they fired, he was wounded shot it out from a ditch and died; and Montgomery sent out a party to bring the body in. And now, saluting shortly, he walked back to his caravan and wrote this letter to *The Times* in London:

"There can be few young officers who have seen this war from the inside as did John Poston.

"He knew everything that was going on and was in possession of much information that is secret and must remain secret for all time. We trod the path together from Alamein to the Elbe.

"I gave him my complete trust and confidence and he would come to me with his own personal troubles. He had been through this war from the beginning and he saw the end approaching. The Promised Land was not so very far away and he gave his life that others might enjoy it.

"I was completely devoted to him and I feel very sad."

From the funeral Montgomery went up to the hill-top outside Lüneburg to receive the German commanders coming in to surrender. It was a grey evening: grey heather, grey heavy clouds, grey coats on the Germans and grey in their faces.

"Tell me," said Montgomery in his caravan to Admiral

Friedeburg, the leader of the enemy delegation, "is this a good likeness of Field-Marshal Rundstedt? I always like to study my opponents."

Friedeburg looked at the photograph and dully agreed that it was excellent. Rundstedt, the man who had said "Montgomery is the ablest of the British generals"; the German Field-Marshal who was now making his private surrender somewhere in the south.

Never had anyone seen Montgomery so jocular as he was on this occasion. He kept the Germans waiting. Motioned them to stand here and here. Read them the terms of surrender as though they were a classroom of schoolboys taking dictation. Ordered them to sign one by one.

And now in this first week in May the story was almost complete. Hitler was dead. Goebbels was dead. Himmler was in hiding. Goering a prisoner. And the Russians were in Berlin. The British Army had crossed to the Baltic to join hands with them. The German Army was a bewildered and panic-stricken herd streaming into the Anglo-American lines in front of the Russians. And by a curious stroke of fortune the German High Command had come first to Montgomery to offer their unconditional surrender. He looked at them quietly over the rims of his glasses; Germans, the enemy, the beaten enemy, the unskilful and foolish enemy, and therefore nothing. They were of no interest any longer. They might as well be dead.

Montgomery made his last address to the troops:

"What I have to say is very simple and quite short. I would ask you all to remember those of our comrades who fell in the struggle. They gave their lives that others might have freedom, and no man can do more than that. I believe that He would say to each of them: 'Well done, thou good and faithful servant'.

"And we who remain have seen the thing through to the end; we all have a feeling of great joy and thankfulness that we have been preserved to see this day. . . . 'This is the Lord's doing, and it is marvellous in our eyes.'

"Few commanders can have had such loyal service as you have given me. I thank each one of you from the bottom of my heart. We have won the German war. Let us now win the peace."

And Churchill wrote the final chapter in the autograph book:

"At last the goal is reached.

"The terrible enemy has unconditionally surrendered.

"This record of military glories, predicted or celebrated,



now in its tenth chapter, reaches its conclusion. The fame of the Army Group, like that of the Eighth Army, will long shine in history, and other generations besides our own will honour their deeds and above all the character, profound strategy and untiring zeal of their Commander who marched from Egypt through Tripoli, Sicily and southern Italy, and through France, Belgium, Holland and Germany to the Baltic and the Elbe without losing a battle or even a serious action."

## CHAPTER THIRTEEN

### 1946 IN LONDON

#### I

A FULL seven rows of medals decorated the Field-Marshal's chest. In addition to his G.C.B. conferred at the end of the war, he had been created a chief commander of the United States Legion of Merit and had received that country's Distinguished Service Medal. From the Russians he had the Order of Suvorov and the Order of Victory. From the French the Grand Cross of the Legion of Honour and another Croix de Guerre to add to his old one from the earlier war. From the Belgians he had the Grand Cordon of the Order of Leopold and still another Croix de Guerre. He had the Grand Cross of the Order of the Lion of the Netherlands, and the Danes made him a first-class member of the Order of the Elephant. At Prague he was given the Order of the White Lion, the Star of Victory and a fourth Croix de Guerre. From the Poles he had the Order of Virtuti Militari, from the Greeks the Order of King George of the Hellenes, from Morocco the Order of the Sultan and from Tunisia the Order of the Bey. They shone together, some thirty ribbons in all, in a solid plate of colour on his battledress.

He was the controller of the British Zone of Occupation with twenty million German subjects, and he was the British member of the Allied Control Commission in Berlin.

At home in Britain and in the Empire there was scarcely a region that had not hastened to do him honour. In addition to his official receptions in Antwerp, Brussels and Falaise he had been made a freeman of Londonderry, Belfast, Canterbury, Portsmouth, London, Huddersfield, Newport, Edinburgh, Manchester, Lambeth, Brentford and Chiswick, Warwick, Maidenhead, Dover and Hastings.

He was an honorary Doctor of Laws of Oxford, Cambridge, Belfast, St. Andrews, the McGill University in Canada and the Louvain University in Belgium. He was a freeman of the Mercers' Company in London and a Governor of the King's School in Canterbury. His patronage and his presidencies extended over hospitals and football clubs, boys' and Bible societies, Army regiments and benevolent funds.

In Berlin he toasted Marshal Zhukov in champagne (a

special occasion), in Paris he was the guest of President de Gaulle, and in England he dined with his Prime Minister in Downing Street and his King in Buckingham Palace.

From America came offers of half a million dollars for his autobiography (refused), and City business men were thinking of appointing him to the Boards of their companies. As a Field-Marshal of the first grade he had a salary of £9 a day with allowances (and a pension of some £1600 a year later on). It was the highest rate of pay in the Army with the exception of that of the Chief of the Imperial General Staff (who received £10 a day). All in all, it was a formidable edifice which the penniless young subaltern from Tasmania had erected around himself.

As he flew around Europe, from Prague to Berlin and Copenhagen, from London to Ireland and Scotland, receiving ovations, making speeches, accepting the applause of these first rich days of peace, there was a sudden double jolt in the triumphal progress, and death twice brushed by the Field-Marshal very quickly.

Except for occasional bombings and bombardments Montgomery's life had not been seriously threatened through the war. Once in the early days in Normandy he had been shelled out of his château at Creully, and again at the end of the war in the German township of Soltau even the cooks and clerks in his headquarters had to turn out to ward off marauding German patrols at night. But there had been no deliberate attempt on his life until he went to Copenhagen a week or two after the victory.

His visit had been announced in advance and a young Danish terrorist of Nazi sympathies rented a flat on the route of the procession. He equipped himself with hand-grenades and stood poised at the window when suddenly he lost his nerve. Danish police grabbed the man before he could change his mind again. Montgomery heard nothing of the matter until afterwards.

But then a little later something more serious happened. Montgomery was flying in a light single-engined plane to inspect Canadian units near Oldenburg. The engine cut out as the machine was about to land. The pilot banked, tried to land on a road, and finally they dropped vertically on to some high bushes where the plane was reduced to a total wreck. Montgomery crawled out apparently unharmed. He took a cup of tea and went on with his tour of inspection.

That night he flew back to his headquarters and there he was X-rayed. It was discovered that a small chip of bone had

been detached from one of the vertebræ and he was for a short time in bed.

Possibly as a result of the accident, possibly because the strain of the war was beginning to tell, he was not well in the summer of 1945 and again in the early autumn. His old war wound had made him susceptible to colds and other minor ailments which he combated by simply intensifying the simplicity of his habits. But he continued steadily with his rounds of receptions and soon he was back in his old tireless groove of health again.

## 2

The business of governing Germany was going surprisingly well in the British sector. Montgomery treated the whole affair as if it were simply another operation of war. When the peace was not a day old he astonished his staff by suddenly announcing that he had made certain plans for the civil government of north-west Germany. No one had even guessed he had put his mind to the matter, and there was intense curiosity mixed with misgiving about the outcome. The uneasiness about the appointment of Montgomery as Controller in Germany was strongest in London, and was about equally divided between the Left and the Right.

Those who regarded the Field-Marshal as a martinet with totalitarian ideas despaired of his ever handling the trades unions, the political parties and the re-education of German youth in the right way. Humanitarians who saw him simply as a soldier deplored that he had never shown the slightest interest in the feeding and rehabilitation of starving people. The jingoes feared that he would succumb to the nonsense about "putting the Germans on their feet again" under a sort of professional soldier's agreement with the German generals. To the economist he was too inexpert, to the diplomat too naive, to the leftist too churchy, to the conservative too popular. The one thing on which most people had agreed was that he had no training for the complexities of the job.

However, the appointment raised no great interest at the time; everyone was sick and tired of Germany and only thankful that the Germans were not able to menace England any more. Montgomery was able to go ahead with his administration under a not too bright light of publicity.

Actually Montgomery's opponents had overlooked two things. In the first place the problem of Germany *was* a military

problem—or at least it was a crisis that required direct action, and the politics for the moment were of second-rate importance. Starvation, cold and general misery governed every issue and the Germans had not the strength—the mere physical strength—to consider politics even had they wanted to.

The second thing (which the opponents had no means of knowing about) was Montgomery's method of always accepting the advice of experts.

At the point of victory Montgomery took one look at Germany and saw what anyone else with two eyes in his head could have seen, that he was in charge of a disordered rout, that millions of people were running wild without a police force or a government, and that presently they would starve and start looting and wrecking unless something were done quickly. It was not a long-range strategical and political problem, but a short-range tactical and economic problem.

He was quite unmoved by a sense of revenge or non-revenge. Abstract emotions—mass emotions—had never touched him in the least.

He had never talked or thought about Loyalty or Courage or Generosity in the abstract but only as applied to particular things. The Job was all. *Why* the job should be done was quite another matter and outside his province. The job here was to stop a rout from becoming a riot, to diminish the possibility of disease sweeping Europe.

And so on this first day of peace he emerged from his caravan and announced:

A. That the German military command, as the only existing authority able to cope with these millions, would continue to operate (under his orders) for the time being.

B. That the people must be fed in an orderly fashion, and the only way to do this was to get German farm labourers out of the army and on to the land as quickly as possible.

C. To assist in distributing the food, repairing and heating the houses, all technicians in railways, bridge building and so on should be put to work in the same way.

D. All remaining vestiges of control—the police, the local Kreis administrations, the hospitals—were “frozen” for the time being and would continue to operate in the crisis until they could be replaced by something better.

He then called in the experts to make the project work. One of the first experts was Field-Marshal Busch, who was the German in military command of a good deal of Montgomery's territory; and Busch started by criticizing Montgomery's methods fairly freely. Montgomery sent for him; bit his head

off; told him he would be sacked on the spot if he did not obey orders and sent him away.

Then came a meeting with the team of civil administrators who were being sent out from England. Montgomery explained that they would operate exactly as if they were at war. They would handle all details themselves or take them to the Chief of Staff. When they wanted to see Montgomery himself they would have to state their business inside ten minutes. For the present they would occupy themselves entirely with getting through the crisis.

There followed Operation Barleycorn (to get the soldiers on to the land), Operation Coal Scuttle (to gather fuel for the winter) and all the other schemes.

During this transitional period, the period of moulding the German chaos into some workable form, inevitably two things happened which disturbed and angered people at home: too few Nazis were removed from their jobs and too many British soldiers due for demobilization were kept in Germany. Montgomery was criticized on both counts. Moreover, it was all too clear that the black market was raging in Germany. Despite his protestations that public opinion did not count in war, he was not insensitive to it in peace. Again the experts were called in, and as the long, hideously painful winter of 1945-1946 dragged on it began to seem possible that Montgomery would hand over to his successor a situation which at least was susceptible to treatment.

If his administration had not been flawless he had established law and order. Neutral observers were almost unanimous in agreeing that of the four zones in Germany the British was by far the best organized. In both the Russian and French sectors a certain ruthlessness prevailed, an instinctive desire for revenge *per se* and immense official looting. The Americans at this early stage were suffering from a lack of trained administrators and a wave of nostalgia which swept the soldiers with an intense desire to get out of the mess of Europe. In all four sectors perhaps the Russians were the only ones who had a really coherent long-term political policy. They alone appeared to be quite coldly and clearly preparing to convert their area of Germany into a satellite of their own Government.

At heart Montgomery was not really interested in the Germans. He traversed his district, attended the Control Commission meetings, made speeches full of facts about railroads and coal tonnage, and performed his job punctiliously enough. But his heart was in the Army. The real business of governing Germany fell more and more upon his subordinates;

his "team of experts". More and more the C.-in-C. was to be found touring the British soldiers' camps. He was constantly awarding medals, opening workshops and universities for them, presiding at sports meetings and discussing their training.

It was something more than a successful general's affection for his men; it was a genuine and permanent interest in professional technique—an interest which had already survived the anti-soldiering period following the 1914-1918 war.

During the German campaign he had begun (and it was distinctly unorthodox) a policy of issuing personal "merits" signed by himself to soldiers who performed some unusual feat of devotion or courage. These merits were really an additional decoration designed to enthuse the soldier and attach him more closely to their general. Many a good democrat in England, scenting dictatorship, raised his eyebrows at this practice. And now in place of these merits Montgomery issued a personal card to every soldier leaving his command: "I feel I cannot let you leave 21st Army Group on your return to civil life without a message of thanks and farewell. Together we have carried through one of the most successful campaigns in history, and it has been our good fortune to be members of this great team. God bless you and God speed—B. L. MONTGOMERY."

Was he really planning to go into politics? Was he preparing the electorate in advance? Again the old questions came up. There was much to provoke them. He seemed, through these post-war months, to be forever popping over to England in his aircraft to receive a new "freedom" at some city or other. Always the crowds, the cries of "Monty" . . . "Monty". His chauffeur had an instruction to slow down whenever children stood beside the road, so that the Field-Marshal could bestow a special wave of the hand and a smile.

To many it was evident that Montgomery had broadened again with his experience as a civil governor of Germany. He had done well with the Russians; they liked his forthrightness, the "soldierly" attitude. At a meeting of the Control Commission in Berlin, Zhukov's chief of staff pointed to Montgomery (who was in the chair) and whispered to one of the British staff—"I could be chief of staff to that man". Clearly Montgomery was learning, if not diplomacy, a certain *patience* in a post-war world that was approaching his own standards of bluntness. And he obviously enjoyed authority, obviously wanted to keep it.

However, of late Montgomery had been steadily falling out of the news as generals do once a war is over. The British elections of the summer had come and gone without his making a move. The successful Labour Party was by no means sympathetic to him. More and more people were engrossed in the frantic struggle to take up civilian careers again—and somehow keep body and soul together through the arid poverty of the times. But the atom bomb now brooded over the world, and with it a seemingly senseless brawling among the spokesmen of the major Powers. Apparently there was still a use for generals in the world—even though they were becoming a little out of date, the tools of the scientists.

## 3

All through this period—the autumn and the winter of 1945—Montgomery was reverting strongly to type. The teacher was coming up in him again. And with this the desire to make a record of all he had experienced and learned through the war. Throughout the time of his government of Germany this undercurrent of thought was continuing strongly; it was probably far more real to him than his outward life. It went beyond the normal human craving for immortality; it was the old passion for teaching others, a determination to “tidy-up” the whole incident of the war by getting the story down in print, by getting everything explained and illustrated for the history books.

When nearly everyone else in the world was talking about the atom bomb and beset with the problems of the civilian future, Montgomery was quietly writing about the precise tactics by which he had won his battles in the desert, and tabulating lists of shipping tonnages. Let everyone else say that the methods of the last war were out of date, he was not convinced of it; the same principles would prevail in the future, atoms or no atoms.

A stream of pamphlets and printed lectures flowed from Montgomery's headquarters; booklet after booklet covering every department of the Army, every turn of the campaigns. These were printed solely for distribution among officers, but public lectures were given as well. Maps were reproduced, photographs printed. His orders of the day were collected and handsomely bound for private circulation. So was his autograph book. Only the diary remained secret. For the rest, Montgomery went on patiently with the help of his staff until



he had got every important particle of his story down on paper. At one lecture in London he continued for two solid hours with only a short break in between; this was his account of the Battle of North-west Europe. Like the ancient mariner he was determined that he should be heard, because he believed that what he had to say would make his hearers better and wiser men.

To the layman the pamphlets make dull reading. For the most part they consist of flat statements of opinion or fact. There is a Delphic ring about them, and each truism follows hard upon the heels of the last. There is no argument, no concession to possible alternatives. The reader can either take it or leave it—and if he leaves it he is wrong: not only wrong but damnably wrong.

The pamphlet, *Principles of War*, opens: "A war is won by victories in battles". Then: "You must first win the air battle before you embark on the land, or sea battle.

"The enemy must be made to dance to your tune and react to your thrusts.

"Morale is the most important single factor in war. The surest way to obtain high morale is by success in battle."

One after another the maxims and the sayings pile up until you have a kind of soldier's Koran. The more salient points like "Morale is the first factor in war" are repeated again and again as though the author were trying to drive it into his audience's brains by the sheer weight of repetition. Even in the minutest things there is this same bland presumption of prophetic and indisputable rightness. And as you read on, the points do fix themselves in your mind with a mesmerizing persistence. The overwhelming simplicity which at first repels the mind in the end attracts it.

This was especially so while the war was being fought. One of Montgomery's commanders used to say that in the thick of an action, when all reason seemed on the point of vanishing in the chaos of explosion and killing, he would remember that thin insistent voice pronouncing its simple lucid advice—and it had the effect of an anchor.

In point of fact there was a great deal of ordinary common-sense in all Montgomery's sayings and, added together, they did contain the learning of an extraordinarily wide experience in commanding men. Had these pamphlets been available at the beginning of the war, and had they been acted upon, there can be no doubt that many unsuccessful actions could have been avoided. But Montgomery himself, like everyone else, had to learn. And the interesting thing is that so much of

his teaching is a list of necessary abstract virtues, and fairly obvious ones at that. Thus he says "be successful, be healthy, be simple, be inspiring, be quick, be surprising, be reflective, be courageous". Each point is put down with the positivism of the Beatitudes in the Bible. "Follow this rule", he cries, "and you will be saved." As with most prophets the thing he cannot altogether impart is his own spirit and determination. He cannot pass on the secret of *how* one manages to acquire all these excellent virtues.

He tried in these pamphlets and in many addresses to define the quality of leadership, to issue an easy guide for future commanders. There are many useful hints, but somehow this part of the teaching never quite comes off, probably for the very good reason that leadership is an individual spark susceptible to analysis but beyond mimicry. Wrestling with the problem—"Why did I succeed", he really ends by explaining himself to himself. He writes:

"One of the first responsibilities of a C.-in-C. in the field is to create what I would call atmosphere, and in that atmosphere his staff, his subordinate commanders and his troops will live and work and fight.

"Above all, commanders must have a moral courage, that resolution and that determination which will enable them to stand when the issue hangs in the balance.

"The battle is, in effect, a contest between two wills, his own and that of the enemy commander.

"It is absolutely vital that a C.-in-C. should keep himself from becoming immersed in details. He must spend a great deal of time in quiet thought and reflection. He will refuse to sit up late at night conducting the affairs of his army; he will be well advised to withdraw to his tent or caravan after dinner at night.

"He must trust his subordinates. The only orders issued from a commander's Tactical Headquarters are those given verbally to army commanders by the C.-in-C.; these are never confirmed in writing.

"Every single soldier must know, before he goes into battle, how the little battle he is fighting fits into the larger picture. The troops must be brought to a state of wild enthusiasm. They must enter the fight with the light of battle in their eyes and definitely wanting to kill the enemy.

"When the issue hangs in the balance radiate confidence in the plan and in the operations even if inwardly you do not feel too certain of the outcome."

And finally:

"Never worry".

There is also much technical advice along these lines :

"In all offensive operations endeavour to hit hard on a narrow front and keep on hitting, penetrate deeply and then turn outwards, i.e. the *schwerpunkt* and the *aufrollen*. The momentum of the attack must be kept at all costs.

"All divisions are different; some are outstandingly good at the break-through attack, but not so good at the deliberate set-piece affair; some divisions are best at night; some by day. For a solid killing match certain types of men are better than others—and so on."

The words often sound strangely archaic, as though they are dealing with events in another world, a bygone age. In 1945 and early 1946, when these pamphlets were written, not only was the world intensely antipathetic to war, not only were most people bored with its technicalities, but the discovery of the atomic bomb made the whole subject appear to be hopelessly out of date.

How were the movements of tanks and infantry and battle-ships going to affect the issue now? The next war—and it was unthinkable—would be a matter purely of atomic rockets and other incalculable horrors. To speak now of guns and machine-guns was like harking back to the bows and arrows and the sword play of the Roman wars. H. G. Wells was writing in England too, about this time, but from the opposite pole of thought to Montgomery. "This is the end", he declared. "Progress has stopped. The world is now rushing to its ruin." It expressed the way many people were thinking.

But was it the end? In 1918 people had also said it was the end, that another war was impossible. In 1938 at Munich and in 1939 they had said that air bombing would destroy civilization. But it is not the end, Montgomery argued. An antidote to the atomic bomb would be discovered. Meanwhile it was necessary to marshal intelligently the forces that we did possess. "Reason alone", he insisted, "will never prevent war." You must be strong. A strong British Empire was his first essential for keeping peace in the world.

Yet there was something else in his teaching. Apart from the tactics and the weapons, apart even from war itself, it contained a simple philosophy of life, a thesis that was a compound of boy scoutery, of Victorian discipline and Bishop Montgomery's absolute faith. In 1946 Montgomery was still a Victorian figure, an empire builder of the world of Rhodes and Kipling and Gordon. It was not necessarily out of date; it was certainly much nearer the feeling of the people than a

hopeless defeatism or the iconoclasm and absolute lack of faith of the intellectuals. For Montgomery the old Spartan virtues remained, and to practise them revealed the happy life—or if not the happy life, the just and correct life. It remained an exactly prescribed world: on this side the practical issues which man must tackle with his courage and his common-sense; on that side the divinity that watched over the universe. Like a good operational plan every issue was covered by some department in the supreme order of things. There were no mysteries; but simply human weaknesses which, unless checked, led to a state of untidiness.

Like most rebels Montgomery was in a constant state of war against “untidiness”; he was aiming continually towards orthodoxy, a composed and efficiently managed world. At heart Montgomery was not an explorer or an experimenter but a revivalist. He accepted the world as it was and religion as he found it. His self-appointed task was to reorganize existing things on a more tidy pattern.

Whom, then, did he resemble? In the end he was not a martinet like Cromwell, nor an eccentric like Gordon; not a soldier of the Church like Stonewall Jackson, nor a fire-eater like Garibaldi; and he did not mount to the subtle realism and magnetism of the Napoleons and the Hitlers. Most strangely, of all the people in the world, the man he probably resembled was not a man of war at all, but of peace. At first sight the comparison with Mahatma Gandhi seems ridiculous. But between the prophet in Asia and the general in Europe there was a marked physical likeness: the pointed face, the arresting eyes, the wiry body. Their voices were even very similar and they shared the same dry sense of humour. Both were wholly indifferent to worldly pleasures and both enjoyed the genial conviction that what they said and did was absolutely right, a conviction which they managed to impart to a good many other people. Both were excellent choosers of men, especially intellectuals, both were shrewd domestic politicians and each of them gathered his group of devoted disciples. Equally they adored argument and opposition, equally they went to the crowd and the common man and found their strength there. Theirs was a parallel world of essential simplicities, a world without mystery but full of practical errors which needed correction. Each of them could be kind and generous to his friends, and they were entirely devoid of snobbery. Both of them, too, could be intransigent and they were not altogether lost to the pleasures of making mischief, of “sailing as close as possible up to the rocks”. An unbridgeable gulf of philo-

sophy and background might separate the two men, but their methods and their basic mental reactions were much the same. For the man of peace it was the same as with the man of war, one crying "Be weak", the other "Be strong".

Both believed in a world governed by love and the loyalty of love; both sought to surround themselves with love—Gandhi and his starving millions, Montgomery with his dedicated soldiers. The loin-cloth was just as much a symbol as the black beret.

## 4

In November 1945 Montgomery went up to St. Andrews University in Scotland to receive the honorary degree of Doctor of Laws. At the ceremony he made a speech which was unusually interesting if only for the fact that he revealed that the three military commanders of the past whom he most admired were Moses, Cromwell and Napoleon. He also settled the question of whether or not he was going into politics.

"Moses", he said, "was already old when he was called to lead the Children of Israel out of the land of Egypt. His task was an immense one. Israel had been living for about four hundred years as slaves . . . they lived in the Nile Delta, a bad and enervating climate.

"I believe that Moses intentionally kept Israel for forty years in the desert—for two generations—in order to breed and train a fighting race capable of undertaking the task of conquest which lay ahead. . . . He is most careful never to risk failures in action . . . he had an unbroken record of military successes."

But in the end Moses failed; he sinned by his presumption against the Lord.

Cromwell, too, Montgomery found, was an inspiring trainer of men. With "fire in his belly" he set about reorganizing his soldiers after the action of Edgehill, and in fifteen months he was a lieutenant-general. And this was done in his middle age.

"Cromwell was not a very likeable man. He was quick-tempered; he believed in a rigid discipline and constant exercises, and he drove his men hard. But he believed with a blinding certainty in the righteousness of his cause, he enthused his soldiers with its righteousness and he was convinced of his own ability to achieve success in battle. And he did achieve success; he had no failures."

But Cromwell sinned too; he sinned by his presumption

against the people. He entered politics where he was "uncertain and perplexed" and he became a dictator.

Napoleon, unlike the others, was a professional soldier but he also was a dominator of men. His great power, according to Montgomery, was his power of simplifying problems. His sin was a little more commonplace. He sinned against common-sense: "From the time he became First Consul, political rather than military factors influenced his decisions, and his failure to reconcile his political aspirations with what was militarily possible finally led to the disasters of Moscow and the Peninsula, from which no recovery was possible".

"What", Montgomery asked, "did Moses, Cromwell and Napoleon have in common without which they would not have achieved success?" Two things, he replies—supreme confidence in themselves and the ability to pass on this confidence.

Finally he reaches this conclusion:

"The three leaders whom I have considered succeeded so long as they kept in mind their clear military purpose and were not deflected from it by other considerations. But many battles have been fought for political and not for military reasons, and these have been the graveyard of many a soldier's reputation. The soldier is the servant of the politician and is therefore bound to be subject to political pressure. He must be strong enough to resist such pressure whenever it conflicts with his clear military purpose.

"In history the military leader has frequently been tempted, and frequently succumbed to the temptation, to aspire to political leadership. The whole training and experience of the soldier is to take direct action down certain well-defined lines, and he has in his hand a military machine which responds immediately and with precision to his touch. The politician is trained in subtlety in debate, in weighing up the conflicting interests of his supporters, and finally in compromise; and the government machine is much less precise or exact than the military, and is much more liable to deviation unless in highly skilled political hands.

"Now in war, if a commander compromises on essentials he fails. Furthermore, the time factor forces the commander in the field to adopt the best expedient in the time available, which is usually short. The politician, on the other hand, is seldom forced to give an immediate decision; rather he delays in order to find the right and accurate answer and avoids any temporary expedient. One seizes time by the forelock and adopts the best expedient; the other procrastinates in order to ensure that what he does is exactly right.

"Therefore a leader, who is primarily a soldier, when he meddles with politics loses his clear, simple military purpose; he no longer sees the essentials; he is at sea in a political world. There have been few soldiers who have made good politicians and few politicians who have made great soldiers."

Privately, Montgomery went even further than this. He had been approached unofficially by both the Conservatives and the Liberals, and no doubt the Labour Party might have been glad to have had him as well. All offers were refused, and he declared that he would never enter politics. The question then remained—what was he going to do? Alexander had already been appointed Governor-General of Canada. For Montgomery, the soldier, there were not very many worlds left to conquer.

## 5

The course of the war was pretty nearly done. Japan was finished. The Nazi leaders were being led to their cells at Nuremberg. Years of slow convalescence lay ahead, but at least the actual surgery of the fighting was finished. One after another the generals and the soldiers were drifting back to civilian clothes, in business, in the City and the factories. Montgomery remained in his battledress. The season for war was over, but he was a permanent resident on the past and future battlefields. Wars were simply major incidents in an Army career, a time of examination, as it were, and, having passed, one went on with the course again.

Little by little events were falling into a perspective and the hurried and enforced relationships of the war were sorting themselves out. Churchill and Grigg, Montgomery's two acknowledged leaders in the Cabinet, had been turned out of office by the election. De Guingand, his health affected by the overstrain of the war, left the Army Group. From Eisenhower to whom Montgomery had sent a copy of his lecture on the North-west Europe campaign, came a letter which sealed a friendship that was stronger than their differences during the battle:

"DEAR MONTY,—Thank you very much for sending me a copy of your lecture. I have read some of it with great enjoyment, and will finish it as soon as I get an opportunity."

"My blood-pressure went up very considerably the other day to read in an American magazine that I 'disliked' you. My first reaction was to write to the editor."

and tell him what a skunk and a liar he is, but on second thought it seemed to me that to take notice of such a silly falsehood would be simply playing into the hands of some newspaper gossip.

"I shall probably see you in Berlin to-morrow.—As ever, your devoted friend,  
"IKE."

From London, Churchill wrote:

"MY DEAR MONTY,—. . . Certainly the relations which I had with you, with Alexander and with the High Command of the three Services generally, were of a most intimate character in spite of the great stresses through which we went. How different from the rows of the 'Frocks' and 'Brass Hats' which characterized the last war."

At the anniversary of Alamein some hundreds of the old soldiers gathered at Claridge's Hotel in London under Montgomery's chairmanship. Churchill, the guest of honour, rolled out one more period: "Up to Alamein we survived; after Alamein we conquered". Montgomery, he said, "is one of the greatest living masters of the art of war". And he went on to relate one of those after-dinner after-war stories that multiply and magnify as the years go on. This was the story:

When Montgomery was first appointed to the command of the Eighth Army he was driven to the airport by General Ismay. Montgomery had philosophized on the "tragical life of the soldier"—at one moment he is up and at another down; he wins a battle and gains promotion; he wins again and his name becomes a household word; he wins a campaign and he develops into a national hero. Then suddenly a defeat. He is in disgrace. He is forgotten.

Ismay (according to Churchill) had sought to cheer Montgomery. "Why", he asked, "should that happen to you?"

"To me?" Montgomery said in astonishment. "Certainly not. I am referring to Rommel."

At the dinner table Montgomery threw back his head and joined with Churchill in the long shout of laughter that went round the room. In defeat unthinkable: in victory insufferable: the phrase was dying at last.

There followed the granting of the honorary degrees to the Allied war leaders at Oxford on St. Crispin's Day. Of Montgomery the Public Orator said:



"On this day of St. Crispin what could be happier than the presence among those guests whom our laurels crown, of one who has twice matched the knightly prowess of our ancestors at this very season of the year? It was close on St. Crispin's day that he earned, in his youth, the award for Distinguished Service in the field; and close on this day when, later in life, he faced his old adversaries on Egyptian soil, in a contest with our Empire as the stake. How I wish I could now display to you, as a tale not told before, the full grandeur of that campaign, showing you in every detail:

'How each man stood; how hot the noonday glowed;  
How clean a pair of heels the Axis showed'.

"Past all praise is that high-hearted, knightly valour which led soldiers of our Empire through uninhabitable wastes, through fire and flood, by way of cliff and forest, from Egypt to Berlin.

"I present the paragon and flower of Britain's chivalry, Bernard Law Montgomery *Africanus*, G.C.B., for admission to the honorary degree of D.C.L."

In Germany the flower of Britain's chivalry had now, at last, obtained a portrait of himself to his liking. While he stood for seven consecutive hours in a room at his headquarters, Mr. Frank O. Salisbury executed a painting which delighted the Field-Marshal. It is a vigorous and concise piece of work showing Montgomery in his beret, his battledress and his woolly flying-jacket, pointing to Normandy on the map of Europe, with the heraldic emblems of Montgomery's command on the top left-hand corner.

At home the Field-Marshal had composed many of his affairs. His son David was at Winchester and developing a strong inclination to become, not a soldier, but an engineer. On his long week-ends from Germany, Montgomery himself retreated quite alone to his son's former school in Surrey, where for some years now a room had been kept for him; apart from the wandering Tactical Headquarters it had been his only home in the world since his house had been blitzed in Portsmouth. It contained a truckle bed, a direct telephone to Germany and a wooden plaque over the door which announced that here Montgomery had made his personal headquarters during the German war. Downstairs, before the reverent eyes of the schoolboys, various paintings and photographs of the Field-Marshal hung on the wall, a Nazi flag captured from Rommel, a cartoon or two. In the corner were kept the Field-Marshal's baton in gold and velvet and some of the many

clocks, silver salvers and trophies presented by the cities of England and Europe.

Montgomery loved being with the boys. He sat with them for his meals, set them puzzles and made jokes across the roaring hubbub of the dining-room.

Sitting afterwards on the lawn under the oak-trees he had leisure to think about his future. There were many offers. He had been asked to become Chief Scout. The British Legion and a dozen other organizations wanted him as president. There was mention of a governor-generalship. Well, there was still time. He was only in his sixtieth year. Until the spring of 1946 at least he must continue in Germany.

Looking back over the sixty years he concluded that he would have changed nothing in his life. He believed that he would always have chosen this career and that he had been destined to become a general since his heart was set upon it. "I have always been supremely confident that I can do anything that I attempt—due to hard study", he said.

Perhaps in his old age he would devote himself to youth movements. From the nation he wanted nothing very much. A house in the west country perhaps—not another Blenheim—but a small place with a garden and two or three spare bedrooms. Outside a car and a few clothes and presents he had no possessions whatever. His career had brought him no wealth. He had his salary (less income tax), a few hundreds of private income, nothing more. But then he had never wanted to spend money and he wanted none now.

The Field-Marshal was far from frail, but he seemed to his old friends to have shrunk a little in stature. He weighed ten stone four pounds in his uniform, and stood five feet eight inches in height. If anything his life was simpler than ever: he ate little, drank a cupful of a warm milk drink each morning and night, and when his work was done read the usual run of novels and latest books. He seldom played cards but he liked to make moderate bets occasionally to back up his opinion in an argument. His face had grown a little thinner but it was still the face of the subaltern who had sailed for India in 1908 and the face of his father before him. The chin was sharper, the grey moustache clipped back almost to nothing.

That extraordinary detachment that enabled him to sleep at will, to withdraw by himself for hours at a time every day, and to throw all minor troubles aside, now enabled him to cross the bridge from war to peace, from excitement to routine, much more easily than most men. He could never quite understand the lack of detachment in other men—even in the men

on whom he loaded the details of his work day after day. Speaking of the political and military leaders in Whitehall he used to exclaim: "How can they ever think clearly? They go to conference after conference. They rush from their desks to official lunches and dinners and then back again to their desks where the work piles up. They stay up until midnight. They never have time to think. They must be perpetually tired."

In 1946 Montgomery carried on in his own handwriting an exceptionally large correspondence with all sorts of people—former batmen and servants, foreign generals and politicians, soldiers' wives and the secretaries of innumerable societies. Every pamphlet he wrote, every bound copy of his speeches, went off to a large circle of particular friends all over the world. These friends, who had supported him through the struggling years, he treated with an avuncular interest which almost went beyond loyalty. He assisted their sons in the Army, he subscribed to memorials, he drove miles to take a cup of tea with families who had been kind to him in the past. No letter ever went unanswered. Football clubs, schools, hospitals and city councils could usually count on him to accept their invitations if some charity was involved.

Some people still looked on this patronage with suspicion. Their theme was "Vanity of vanities: all is vanity".

"It is his besetting sin", said one of his generals (not an antagonist). "Montgomery has genius, but it is a restricted genius marred by just this one thing—his vanity."

This to Montgomery was absurd. To a host of admirers it was envious heresy. They argued that here was a man who was really disinterested, seeking no luxury, no property, no political power. His pleasure in the crowd must therefore surely be innocent. At all events, most people agreed that Montgomery, if ruthless, was never an intriguer. At least you knew exactly where he stood on every issue.

The Field-Marshal's views had crystallized a good deal. He was fond of saying: "You must be strong. We had a second world war because we never destroyed the German Army the first time: we were not strong."

The past to Montgomery was full of avoidable errors, mainly due to our weakness, our failure to "grip the problem tightly". He even liked to recall that several times he was very nearly ejected from the Army for misbehaviour, which was true enough.

His mother, an indomitable old lady who took her first aeroplane flight at the age of seventy-eight, was still living at New Park in Northern Ireland, but Montgomery seldom saw

her or the rest of his brothers and sisters scattered around the world. His life was in his son. Of late, however, his attitude towards women had softened, although he had some misgiving about women in power. "Imagine a woman Secretary for War", he said. "She might be having a baby while a campaign was being fought."

Religion was still the backbone of his thoughts, but it was not the sort of revivalist ardour generally attributed to him. He rarely introduced religion in a conversation. In private he returned often to his favourite passages in the Bible: the parable of the Good Samaritan and Solomon's prayer for a wise and understanding heart. This past passage<sup>1</sup> has perhaps a particular reference to Montgomery's life as he has wanted to live it:

"Give therefore thy servant an understanding heart to judge thy people, that I may discern between good and bad. . . . And God said unto him . . . Behold I have done according to thy words: lo, I have given thee a wise and an understanding heart. . . . And I have also given thee that which thou hast not asked, both riches and honour: so that there shall not be any among the kings like unto thee all thy days. And if thou wilt walk in my ways, to keep my statutes and my commandments, as thy father David did walk, then I will lengthen thy days."

All this for Montgomery has had a special meaning. He has tried hard to emulate his father.

Those who saw him at this time, sitting peacefully in the English garden in his old grey sweater, the boys playing around him, might well have thought that the rocket had spent itself at last, that the career might be ending gracefully here. A title, a dignified old age, an appearance or two at school speech-days and Empire reunions—this surely was the inevitable course of things.

In actual fact, another blistering row was brewing over Montgomery and very shortly he was going to be in the thick of it himself.

Alan Brooke was retiring. A new man was wanted as Chief of the Imperial General Staff, the highest post in the British Army. Montgomery, as the most successful commander in the war, was an obvious choice on merit. But—Montgomery. The diehards leapt to their guns. He would turn the whole War Office into a circus. How could you have a C.I.G.S. strutting about in a comic hat? He would fire everyone whom he did not know and appoint his own people instead. He would quarrel with the other Services and other countries. He would

<sup>1</sup> 1 Kings, chapter iii.

never grasp the intricacies of the job. How on earth could you expect him to deal with such a problem as the atomic bomb? The whole Army would be used for the self-glorification of Montgomery.

Random shots came in from all sides. The opposition was not yet quite dead; but now there was more sound than fury in the attack—indeed, it was more like a rearguard action.

Had the appointment been a purely political one the opposition no doubt would have been a good deal stronger; the Government had already decided to make no money grants to the generals, and the names of Montgomery and his fellow-commanders had been pointedly omitted from the official vote of thanks on the Victory in the House.

But the war had created a solid body of men at the top who knew Montgomery, not as the public hero and the cheer leader on the battlefield, but as the planner at the conference table. They were aware that Montgomery had spent forty years of his life studying the Army, and that most of his theories had proved correct. They also knew that as C.I.G.S. he would call in the experts and take their advice, and that the matter of the atomic bomb would be handled in this way. And finally, they had seen Montgomery develop with his job in the past few years; he had mellowed, he had broadened, he was learning patience at last. Those who met him now for the first time were astonished at his good humour and a certain gentleness and kindliness.

"He is a man", Sir James Grigg noted, "who not only became a greater man as his responsibilities grew . . . but a much more agreeable one as well." And Sir James added: "I am positive he is not a self advertiser. Everything he says and does publicly is considered with a view to its effects on the troops under his command: they arrogate to themselves a part of the glamour that attaches to him".

Yes, the glamour was there. It would always be there.

In the 1946 New Year's Honours List Montgomery was raised to the peerage, taking the title of Viscount Montgomery of Alamein, of Hindhead in the county of Surrey, and a few weeks later it was announced that he would succeed Brooke at the War Office. The rocket was gathering itself for the final flight. The struggle to the target was over.

For those who had watched him through the years one thing was apparent above everything else: the rebel was a rebel no longer. And it was not Montgomery but the opposition which had given in. One after another the things which had been withheld and forbidden were now under his command.

At last his ideas and the Army had locked together. The hands were off the reins again. The days of defiance, from Bishop's Court in Tasmania to the Battle of the Rhine, were over. When Montgomery marched to the War Office in June 1946 there was still perched firmly on his head the symbol of it all—the black beret.



# INDEX

- ADELAIDE, 32  
 Adriatic, 173, 175, 203  
 Aisne, R., 55  
 Alam Halfa, 119, 124, 126, 130, 131,  
 133-8, 153  
 Alamein, battle of, 16, 114 *et seq.*, 136 *et*  
*seq.*, 148, 175, 220, 239  
 Alençon, 203  
 Alexander, Field-Marshal H. R., 39,  
 98, 100, 112, 116-18, 158-9,  
 160-1, 170, 172, 208  
 and African campaign's organiza-  
 tion, 128-9  
 character, 116-17  
 as Governor-General of Canada, 238  
 relations with Montgomery, 116-17,  
 128-9  
 Alexandria, 75-9, 110, 140  
 Algeria, 112  
 Algiers, 160, 162, 167, 172, 192  
 Allied Control Commission, 230  
 Allied High Command, 197-8  
 American Civil War, 42, 107  
 American divisions in Africa, 111, 151  
 American war mentality, 208-9  
 Anderson, Gen. Sir D. F., 161  
 Anglican Church, 19-23, 73-4  
 Antwerp, 197, 208, 211, 212, 214, 225  
 Anzio landing, 174  
 Apennines, 170, 171, 172-4  
 Arab-Jewish revolts (Palestine), 73,  
 94-6  
 Ardennes, battle of, 197, 213, 214-17, 221  
 Argentan, 203  
 Arnhem, 197, 211  
 Army (British), *passim*  
 democracy in, 77-8  
 Edwardian life in, 42-3, 47  
 Infantry Training Manual, 72-3  
 Intelligence Corps, 118, 132, 138,  
 163, 192  
 Middle East conditions, 75-7, 119,  
 121  
 Army (British)—*contd.*  
 Montgomery on, 44  
 Norwegian campaign (1940), 100  
 retrenchment (1920), 62  
 unpreparedness (1939), 99-100  
 Asquith, Rt. Hon. H. H., 53, 54 and *n.*  
 his *Memories and Reflections*, 54 and *n.*  
 Atlantic Wall, 191  
 Atomic bomb, 231, 234, 244  
 Auchinleck, Gen. Sir C. J. E., 109, 111,  
 112, 114-15, 118  
 Australian divisions, 117, 124, 134, 137,  
 163  
 "Avalanche" landing, 168  
 Avranches, 203  
 BAGDAD, 87  
 Balfour Declaration, 94  
 Balkans, 114, 129, 167  
 Baltic, 223  
 Bari, 168, 171  
 Bastogne, 214  
 "Baytown" landing, 168  
 Beaverbrook, Lord, 178  
 Belchem, Gen., 163  
 Belfast, 225  
 Belgium, 55-6, 100, 206-8, 210-11, 215,  
 224  
 Benedictine Order, 18  
 Benghazi, 140, 141, 146, 150  
 Bergonzoli, Gen., 147  
 Berlin, 53, 220, 223, 225-6, 230, 239  
 Bethlehem, 73  
 Bevin, Rt. Hon. E., 183  
 Biferno, R., 171  
 Bishop's Court, Hobart, 25-8, 30-2, 76,  
 148, 245  
 Bitter Lakes, 75  
 Blenheim, 241  
 Board of Trade, 109  
 Boer War, 32, 34, 42  
 Bombay, 48-9  
 Boulogne, 54



- 1st Reg. Gen. O., 182, 196, 200, 206,  
     211-12, 214, 216-17, 218  
 1st Division, 103  
 1st Div. 171  
 British Broadcasting Corporation, 188  
 British Expeditionary Force, 99  
 British Legion, 241  
 British Occupation Zone, 225, 227, 229  
 Brittany, 203  
 Broadhurst, Air Vice-Marshal, 153  
 Brooke, Gen. Sir A. F., 65, 94, 98, 100,  
     159, 176, 178, 182, 243  
 Brussels, 197, 214, 225  
 Bucknall, Gen. G. C., 181  
 Bull Run, 103  
 Bunnyfuddle, 20  
 Bug-Bug, 110  
 Burg-el-Arab, 124, 133, 151  
 Burma, 112, 116  
 Burnett-Stuart, Gen. Sir J., 75, 77, 80,  
     83, 154  
 Burnham-on-Sea, 88, 90  
 Busch, Field-Marshal von, 228  
 Butcher, Commander, 201-2  
     his *My Three Years with Eisenhower*, 201  
  
 CABINET DEFENCE COMMITTEE, 129, 158  
 Caen, 181, 198-202  
 Cairo, 75, 82, 110, 114 *et seq.*  
 Calais, 191  
 Camberley Staff College, 61, 65, 69-70,  
     86, 116  
 Cambridge University, 20, 32, 225  
 Canterbury, 108, 225  
 Carver, Betty (*see* Montgomery, Betty)  
 Carver, R., 140  
 Casey, R., 137  
 Cassino, battle of, 174  
 Catania, 161, 163  
 Catanzaro, 171  
 Cawnpore, 19  
 Chamberlainism, 98  
 Chelsea, 184  
 Chemin des Dames, 59  
 Cherbourg, 101, 181, 197, 200, 207, 211  
 Chicago, 216  
 Chiswick, 32, 39, 67, 71, 148, 225  
 Churchill, Rt. Hon. W. S., 16, 54, 108,  
     111, 114, 129, 148, 151, 157,  
     159, 176, 179, 193-6, 201, 218,  
     220-1, 223-4, 238-9  
 Citizen Army, 59  
 Clarke, Gen. M., 172, 174  
 Collins, Gen., 214  
 Cologne, 60, 61  
 Congress (U.S.A.), 205  
 Coningham, Air-Marshal Sir A., 133  
 Conservative Party, 238  
 Copenhagen, 226  
 Cork, 61  
 "Cossac", 178, 180  
 Cotentin peninsula, 200  
 Creasy, Sir E., 17 *n.*  
 Crerar, Gen., 196  
 Crete, 119, 140  
 Creully, 196, 226  
 Crimean War, 42  
 Crocker, Gen. J. T., 181  
 Cromwell, O., 235-7  
 Crowe, Sir E., 109  
 Cyprus, 114  
 Cyrenaica, 109, 140, 151  
  
 DABA, 139  
 Day, Capt., 54  
 de Gaulle, President, 226  
 de Guingand, F. W., 65, 80, 86, 98,  
     118-21, 133, 145, 147, 161-2,  
     163, 180, 218, 238  
 Delhi, 19  
 Dempsey, Gen. M. C., 65, 140, 163,  
     181, 196, 200  
 Dickens, C., 20  
 Dinard, 66  
 Disarmament, 62  
 Dives, R., 17  
 Donegal, 18  
 Dover, 225  
 Dunkineely, 18  
 Dunkirk, battle of, 100-1, 108, 116, 148  
  
 EDEN, Rt. Hon. A., 114-15, 183  
 Edgchill, 236

- Edinburgh, 225, 236  
 Egypt, 75-82, 109 *et seq.*, 136 *et seq.*,  
 224, 239-40  
 Eighth Army, 111 *et seq.*  
 resembles a club, 163, 165, 171  
 crusading force, 142, 149, 163  
 desert's effect on, 123  
 and First Army, 160-1  
 its morale, 111, 141-2, 148-9, 153  
 its staff, 147-9  
 its Tactical Headquarters, 146-7,  
 160-1  
 Eisenhower, Gen. D., 112, 159-60, 162,  
 172, 174, 176, 180-1, 192-3,  
 197-8, 201-2, 205, 208-9  
 character, 208-9  
 clash with Montgomery, 206-9  
 letters to Montgomery, 219, 238-9  
 El Adem, 162  
 El Agheila, 140, 149  
 Elbe, R., 224  
 Enfidaville, 161  
 Etna, Mt., 164  
  
 FALAISE, 17, 197, 201, 203-4, 209, 212,  
 225  
 Farrar, Dean F. W., 20-1, 23, 32  
 Farrar, Maud (*see* Montgomery, Maud)  
*Fifteen Decisive Battles of the World*  
 (Creasy's), 17 *n.*  
 First Army (British), 111-12, 160-1, 177  
 First World War, 53-6, 59  
 military tactics in, 65  
 Foggia, 167, 168, 171, 172  
 Frankfurt, 211  
 French, Gen. Sir J., 53  
 Freyberg, Gen. Sir B. C., V.C., 120,  
 137, 163  
 Friedeburg, Admiral, 222-3  
  
 GABES GAP, 154, 160  
 Gandhi, Mahatma, 235-6  
 Garibaldi, 235  
 Gatehouse, Gen. Alec, 125  
 Gazala Line, 110  
 Gela, 161  
 General Election (1945), 231, 238  
 Gestapo, 204 *n.*  
 Gibraltar, 113, 192  
 Gilbert, Sir W. S., 22  
 Gneisenau, 48  
 Goebbels, J., 191, 223  
 Goering, H., 223  
 Gordon, Gen., 14, 58-9, 73, 234-5  
 Gott, Gen. "Straffer", 110, 111, 112  
 Goums, 163  
 Graham, Gen., 163  
 Granville, 211  
 Grave, 211  
 Grigg, Sir J., 178, 182, 188, 238, 244  
 Gwynn, Gen. Sir C., 70  
  
 HAIFA, 96  
 Haig, Field-Marshal Earl, 59  
 Haining, Gen., 94  
 Haldane, Brig.-Gen., 54  
 Hammersmith, 32-6, 45, 48-9, 180-2,  
 193  
 Harding, Gen. J., 65, 115-16, 118, 124,  
 151, 181  
 Harrow School, 20  
 Hastings, 225  
 Hastings, battle of, 17-18  
 Henry II (of France), 18  
 Henty, G. A., 33  
 Herbert, Sir A. P., 71  
 Higginson, Gen., 62  
 Highland Division, 120, 134, 163, 168  
 Himeimat, 119, 124  
 Himmler, H., 223  
 Hindhead, 244  
 Hitler, A., 65, 72, 98-100, 190, 203,  
 204 *n.*, 207-8, 214, 223, 235  
 plot against, 204 *n.*, 207-8  
 Hobart, 24-32, 74  
 Hollond, Brig.-Gen. S. E., 62-3, 79  
 Home Counties and invasion, 102-3  
 Home Guard, 102, 106  
 Hong Kong, 83  
 Horrocks, Gen. B. G., 124, 139, 163,  
 181  
 Hotel Ouest et Montgomery, 17  
 Huddersfield, 225

- H. of C. T., 33  
 H. of C., 19  
 H. of C., 1-16, 12, 44-8, 62, 82-7  
 H. of C. Office, 19  
 H. of C. Civil Service, 18-19  
 H. of C. divisions, 119, 134, 163  
 H. of C. Mutiny, 19, 42  
 H. of C. R., 202-3  
     *H. of C. Secret*, 202  
 Irish Home Rule, 50, 61  
 Ironside, Field-Marshal the Lord, 65, 99  
 Israel, 75-6  
 Italian Gen., 239  
 Istanbul, 87  
 Italian Army, 109, 137-8  
     *at Alamein*, 137-8  
     *first African campaign*, 109  
 Italy, 70, 101, 166-74, 220, 224  
     *surrender of*, 166-7, 169, 170  
  
 JACKSON, Gen. "STONEWALL", 85, 106-103, 235  
 Jane, Lt.-Col., 192-3  
 Japan, 83-4, 110, 207, 238  
 Jerusalem, 73, 87  
 Jewish illegal immigration, 94-5  
 Jews in Palestine, 73, 94-6  
 John, Augustus, 184-7  
 Jugoslavia, 167  
  
 KABUL, 87  
 Kansas, 208  
 Kenya, 32  
 Khartoum, 58, 73, 110  
 Kellaghtee, 18  
 King's School, Canterbury, 32, 225  
 Kingston (Surrey), 192  
 Kipling, R., 234  
 Kitchener, Lord, 54  
 Kluge, Field-Marshal von, 204 *n.*  
  
 LABOUR PARTY, 231, 238  
 Lahore, 19  
 Larneth, 225  
 Lambeth Conference, 32  
 League of Nations, 60  
 Leese, Gen. Sir O. W. H., 65, 124, 153, 181  
 Leigh-Mallory, Air-Marshal Sir T., 193  
 Lenk, 66-7, 71  
 Lentini, 163, 166  
 Leopold Canal, 211  
 Lexington, 107  
 Liberal Party, 189, 238  
 Liège, 214  
 Liverpool, 192  
 Lloyd-George, Rt. Hon. D., 62  
 Loire, R., 199, 203, 221  
 Lombardy, 168, 171  
 London Division (47th), 59  
 Londonderry, 18, 107, 225  
 Longfellow, H. W., 33  
 Lough Foyle, 18, 40  
 Louvain University, 225  
 Lumsden, Gen. H., 124, 135, 137  
 Lüneburg Heath, 221-3  
 Lybia, 109 *et seq.*, 138, 140 *et seq.*  
  
 MCGILL UNIVERSITY, 225  
 Maginot Line, 191  
 Maidenhead, 225  
 Majerda Valley, 161  
 Malta, 97, 110-11, 129, 140  
 Manchester, 225  
 Mareth, battle of, 152-4, 179, 181  
 Marlborough School, 20  
 Marne, battle of, 55-6  
 Marrakesh, 176, 178  
 Marseilles, 97  
 Marshall, Gen., 159, 176  
 Martuba, 140  
 Mayenne, 203  
 Mediterranean, 73, 95, 97, 111, 113  
 Mena House, 80  
 Mercers' Company, 225  
 Mersa Matruh, 79, 110, 138, 140  
 Messe, Gen., 147  
 Messina, 166, 168  
 Meteren, 56  
 Meuse, R., 214  
 Mons, battle of, 54-5  
 Mons Comericus, 17

- Montgomery (town : Punjab), 19
- Montgomery, Bernard Law, *passim*
- aggressiveness towards superiors, 27-29, 35, 44, 48, 72-3, 75-6, 81, 130, 161-2, 176-9, 194-5
  - in air-crash, 226-7
  - his Alamein tactics, 124-6, 130
  - at Alexandria, 75-9
  - on Allied Control Commission, 225, 230
  - Americans, relations with, 160, 198-209
  - ancestry, 16-19
  - anecdotes concerning, 157-8, 183-7
  - appearance, 14, 27, 30, 36, 57, 66, 241
  - armoured corps, calls for, 115-16, 120-2, 130-1
  - army, early interest in, 32, 34
  - Army Infantry Training Manual written by, 72-3
  - asceticism, 14, 38, 43, 58-9, 104, 241
  - attempted assassination of, 226
  - battle-planning methods, 124-6
  - beret as symbol, 142-3, 236, 245
  - and the Bible, 73, 243
  - birth, 23
  - boyhood, 25-36, 57
  - as brigade-major, 57, 62
  - and Brigade Welfare Fund, 92-3
  - as brigadier-general, 87
  - as cadet, 35-9
  - at Camberley Staff College, 61, 65, 69, 72
  - charm, lack of, 35-6, 37, 58
  - as C.I.G.S., 13, 243-4
  - offered Chief Scout's office, 241
  - and church parades, 46, 82
  - as Citizen Army instructor, 59
  - and Clausewitz, 47
  - commands Eighth Army, 112
  - commands Fifth Corps, 102
  - commands South-Eastern Army, 108
  - commands 3rd Division, 98
  - commands 21st Army Group, 163
  - made Commander of the Bath, 108
  - on himself as C.-in-C., 233
  - concentration, powers of, 39, 58, 66
  - his conjugal devotion, 69, 71, 81, 87-9
- Montgomery—*contd.*
- Controller of British Occupation Zone, 225, 227, 229
  - and Corps Staff, 103-5
  - courtship and marriage, 66-9
  - cultivates his men's liking, 79, 82, 106, 123-4, 164-6, 187-8
  - and "D-day" command, 176-9
  - and "D-day" operation, 180-4, 187-196
  - honorary degrees, 225
  - and the desert, 80, 118 *et seq.*
  - diary, 231
  - his D.S.O., 57
  - his double, 192-3
  - eccentricities, 14, 47-8, 62, 66-7, 104-5
  - his enterprise, 62-3, 72 *passim*
  - experts, attitude towards, 144-5
  - Falaise: his personal triumph, 204
  - family crest, 18
  - family seat, 18
  - as field-marshal, 208
  - his first Order of the Day, 135-6
  - fluid defence: his theory of, 102-3
  - and Flying Fortress incident, 160
  - and French campaign (1940), 98-101
  - G. B. S. on, 184-6
  - Gandhi, compared with, 235-6
  - and gas warfare, 93
  - as General Staff Officer, 59, 84
  - on German major war errors, 221
  - accepts German surrender (1945), 221-2
  - Germans, first reaction to, 48
  - Gordon, General, compared with, 14, 58-9, 73, 234-5
  - honours (post-war), 225
  - his horse, Probyn, 45
  - in hospital, 57, 96
  - illness (1939), 96-7
  - his impatience, 27, 36, 58, 78
  - his individualism, 13-14, 28-9, 35 *passim*
  - Irish connections, 18
  - Irish holidays, 39-41
  - Jackson, "Stonewall", compared with, 85, 106-8

Montgomery—*contd.*

in Japan, 83-4  
 at King's School, Canterbury, 32  
 his knighthood, 148, 155  
 letter addressed to troops, 223-4  
 leadership, powers of, 13, 30, 36 *et seq.*, 50, 72, 108, 130, 193  
 as lecturer, 65, 72, 84-5, 231  
 as lieutenant-colonel, 59, 73  
 as lieutenant-general, 108  
 and "The Lord mighty in Battle," 74, 136, 190  
 at the Mansion House, 189  
 mentions in dispatches, 60  
 at Mons, 54-5  
 morale, evokes British, 15, 188-9  
 morale, views on, 64, 76-7, 84, 123, 143, 232  
 narrow interests, 45, 49-50, 60-1  
 as national hero, 13, 155-8, 188-9  
 his new system of military tactics, 64-5, 84-5, 124-6, 232-4  
 his *Normandy to the Baltic*, 219-20  
 in occupied Germany, 60-1, 225, 227-8  
 and officers' wives, 105  
 and the "old school tie," 146  
 and Oxford University, 225, 239-40  
 outgrows his family, 59  
 in Palestine, 73-5, 94-6, 97  
 as pamphleteer, 63, 231-4, 242  
 his paternalism, 147-8, 164, 175  
 his pay, 226  
 his pension, 226  
 his personal "merits" system, 230  
 his philosophy of life, 234-6  
 and physical training, 104-5  
 his "play", 106  
 at Plymouth, 62  
 in Poona, 82-3  
 his portraits, 184-7, 240  
 at Portsmouth, 87-90  
 and Press propaganda, 144-5, 215-16  
 his *Principles of War*, 232-3  
 promoted full lieutenant, 47  
 at Quetta as senior instructor, 84-7  
 as regimental quartermaster, 47-8

Montgomery—*contd.*

relations with General Alexander, 116-18, 128-9  
 relationship with father, 30-1, 49, 73-5  
 relationship with mother, 27, 28-9, 33  
 his religious fervour, 31, 43, 46-7, 49, 73-4, 90, 136, 189-90, 243  
 resists War Cabinet, 129-30, 195-6  
 and Rommel, 133, 144, 151-2, 190-1, 204  
 and Royal Air Force, 15, 124, 133, 136, 140-1, 153-4  
 sailing, interest in, 40, 48  
 at St. Andrews University, 236-8  
 at St. Paul's School, Hammersmith, 32-4, 36, 37, 45, 180  
 Scottish connections, 18  
 as second lieutenant, 43-7  
 at Sheerness, 72  
 his showmanship, 14-15, 33 *passim*  
 and Sicilian campaign, 161-9  
 his simplicity of mind, 57-8, 60-1, 231-4  
 and Sinn Fein rebellion, 61-2  
 his ski-ing, 66-7  
 his solitariness as child, 28, 35  
 his son, David, 69, 71, 81, 83, 87-9, 112, 240  
 his speeches, 165-6, 175, 180, 188-90  
 sport, interest in, 32-4, 36-7, 40, 43-5, 66-7  
 his staff, 145-8, 180-2  
 as stepfather, 71-2, 140  
 and S.H.A.E.F., 201-2, 205-11, 213-220  
 in Switzerland, 66-7, 71  
 Tactical Headquarters, innovation of, 146-7  
 and von Thoma, 143-4  
 and 21st Army Group, 163, 181, 217-18, 221, 230  
 unpopularity, 37-8, 75-6  
 upbringing, 24-32  
 varying estimates of, 13-15, 176-8, 230, 242-5  
 and venereal disease, 76-7

- Montgomery—*contd.*  
   as Viscount, 244  
   and war correspondents, 138, 144-5, 215-16  
   and War Office, 15, 72-3, 92-3, 97, 112, 178, 188, 243-5  
   wounded at Ypres, 56, 73, 96  
   in Yorkshire, 63-5  
   and a Yorkshire lass, 150  
 Montgomery, Betty, 67-72, 81-2, 83-4, 87-90, 148  
   her art, 67, 81  
   character, 67-71, 81, 87  
   children, 67, 69, 83, 140  
   courtship, 67-9  
   death, 89-90, 148  
   health, 71, 87, 88-9  
   marriage, 69  
   pacifism, 67  
 Montgomery, David (ancestor), 18  
 Montgomery, David (son), 69, 71, 81, 83, 87-9, 112, 240  
 Montgomery, Desmond, 31, 48  
 Montgomery, Donald, 22, 29, 30, 32, 33-4  
 Montgomery, Harold, 22, 30, 32, 34  
 Montgomery, Henry, 19-27, 30-2, 38-9, 48-9, 73-5  
   at Cambridge, 20  
   career, 21-4, 39, 73-4  
   character, 19-20, 22-3, 73-4  
   death, 75  
 Montgomery, John, 18  
 Montgomery, Maud, 21-7, 28-32, 40, 48-9, 242-3  
   appearance, 29-30  
   character, 21, 25-7, 29  
   engagement, 21  
   marriage, 21  
   as mother, 22-3, 25-31  
   old age, 242-3  
 Montgomery, Queenie, 22, 25  
 Montgomery, Roger de, 17-18  
 Montgomery, Sir Robert, 18-20, 40  
 Montgomery, Samuel (cleric), 18  
 Montgomery, Samuel (merchant), 18  
 Montgomery, Una, 24, 30, 35, 40, 90  
 Montgomeryshire, 17  
 Morocco, 176, 178  
 Mortain, 203  
 Moscow, 237  
 Moses, 236-7  
 Merville, 20, 32, 41  
 Mozart, 195  
 "Mulberry" harbour, 192  
 Munich Pact, 98, 234  
 Mussolini, B., 79, 110 166 167  
 NAPLES, 168, 171  
 Napoleon, 236-7  
*New Park*, 18, 20, 23, 73, 242  
 New York, 216  
 New Zealand Division, 117, 119-20, 134, 137-8, 149, 163, 173  
 Newport, 225  
 Nijmegen, 211  
 Nile, R., 75, 79, 110, 118, 126, 150, 236  
 Normandy, 17, 178, 180 *et seq.*, 196 *et seq.*, 207, 219, 240  
 North-West Frontier, 44-7  
 Norway, 100  
 Nuremberg trials, 207, 238  
 Nye, Gen. A. E., 112  
 O'CONNOR, Gen. R., 94, 96, 109, 134, 181  
 Oder, R., 197, 207  
 Oldenburg, 226  
 Omdurman, battle of, 194  
 "Operation Barleycorn", 229  
 "Operation Coal-Scuttle", 229  
 "Operation Overlord" 178  
 Orleans, 206  
 Ortona, 174  
 Oxford, Countess of, 189  
 Oxford University, 225, 239-40  
 PAGET, Gen. Sir B. C. T., 65, 112  
 Palermo, 161  
 Palestine, 73-5, 87, 94-7, 110, 148  
 Parachute Regiment, 215  
 Paris, 55, 197, 199, 202, 206, 210, 212, 226  
 Pas de Calais, 201, 206

# MONTGOMERY

251

- 1890, Gen. G. S., 160-1, 176, 196,  
     23, 210, 214  
 1914-1918 War, 237  
 1919, 55  
 1922, 110  
 1922, 172-3  
 1922, 41-7  
 1922, Vale Hunt, 44-5  
 1922, Brigadier, 75-6, 81, 83  
 1922, 208  
 1922, 62  
 1922, 167  
 1922, 82-3  
 1922, 96  
 1922, 27-8, 90, 92-3, 94, 101,  
     192, 225, 240  
 1922, Britain, 62  
 1922, J., 147, 164, 222  
 1922, 171  
 1922, 225  
 1922, Bridge, 163  
 1922, Horse, 45  
 1922, 19  
 1922, 80, 115, 133  
  
 QATTARA DEPRESSION, 119, 125, 130,  
     134  
 Quetta, 84-7  
  
 RAMSAY, Admiral Sir B., 193  
 Ramsden, Gen. W. H. C., 120, 124  
 Reggio, 167-9  
 Rhine, R., 206-7, 209-10, 212, 220, 245  
 Rhodes, C., 234  
 Richards, Gen. D. J. R., 163  
 Richmond (Va.), 108  
 Ritchie, Gen. N., 111, 181  
 Roberts, Gen., 125  
 Rome, 110, 168, 172 and *n.*, 173  
 Rommel, Field-Marshal E., 17, 28, 109  
     *et seq.*, 149 *et seq.*, 190-1, 204  
     and *n.*, 239  
     blunder at Mareth, 153-4  
     death, 204 and *n.*  
     estimate of, 152  
     in France, 190-1, 201, 204 and *n.*  
     Roosevelt, F. D., President, 16, 159, 176  
     Rotterdam, 207  
     Royal Academy, 187  
     Royal Air Force, 15, 124, 133, 136,  
         140-1, 153-4, 158, 167, 206  
     Royal Army Pay Corps, 192  
     Royal Warwickshire Regiment, 44-50,  
         54-6  
     Ruhr, 206-7, 211-12, 217-18, 220  
     Rumania, 167  
     Rundstedt, Field-Marshal von, 191,  
         204 *n.*, 206, 216, 223  
     Ruskin, J., 22  
     Russia, 167, 191, 197, 198, 208, 223,  
         229, 230  
     Ruweisat Ridge, 119, 121, 124  
  
 SAAR, 211  
 St. Andrews University, 225, 236-8  
 St. Lô, 197, 202, 203  
 St. Margaret's, Westminster, 21  
 Sainte Foy de Montgomery, 17, 204  
 Salerno, 168, 170  
 Salisbury, F. O., 240  
 Salisbury Plain, 92-3, 105  
 Sandhurst, 35-9  
 Sangro, R., 171, 173-4  
 Seine, R., 181, 199, 201, 203-4, 206,  
     220-1  
 Senussi, 79  
 Sfax, 154, 160  
 Shaw, G. B., 184-6  
 Sheerness, 72  
 Sheppard's Hotel, 116, 117  
 Sheppey, Isle of, 51, 54  
 Shorncliffe, 49, 54  
 Shrewsbury Abbey, 18  
 Shrewsbury, Earl of, 17-18  
 Sicily, 130, 161-9, 176, 220, 224  
     invasion of, 161-6  
 Sidi Barrani, 110  
 Simmonds, Gen., 163  
 Singapore, 83  
 Sinn Fein, 61-2  
 Sirte, Gulf of, 109, 140  
 Slim, Gen., 111  
 Smith, Gen. Bedell, 160, 180, 202,  
     213 *n.*

# INDEX

- Sollum, 79, 139
- Somme, R., 59
- Sousse, 154, 161
- South African Division, 117, 119, 134
- Southampton, 54
- Stalingrad, 109
- Sudanese war, 42
- Suez Canal, 75, 79, 110, 120
- Sullivan, Sir A., 22
- Supply problems, 150-2
- S.H.A.E.F., 201-2, 205-11, 213-20
- Switzerland, 66-7
  
- TAORMINA, 166, 168
- Taranto, 168, 170
- Tasmania, 23-32, 36, 56, 59, 148, 226, 245
- Tedder, Air Chief Marshal Sir A., 133, 202, 205
- Tel Aviv, 73, 95
- Tel el Eisa, 119, 124, 134
- Termoli, 171
- Thoma, Gen. von, 143-4
- Thugs, 19
- Tilbury, 97
- Times, The*, 187, 222
- Tito, Marshal, 167
- Tobruk, 110, 140
- Tokio, 83
- Trigno, R., 171
- Trinity College, Cambridge, 20
- Tripoli, 128, 143, 149-51, 159, 160, 224
- Tripolitania, 79, 151
- Tunis, 154, 161, 176
- Tunisia, 151, 152, 161, 177, 179
- Turks, 79, 114
  
- VASTO, 175
- Versailles, 212, 213
- Victorianism, 21-2
- Virginia Military Academy, 107
  
- WAR OFFICE, 15, 72-3, 92-3, 97, 112, 178, 188, 243-5
- Warwick, 225
- Washington, 111, 159, 217
- Wavell, Field-Marshal Lord, 93-4, 109, 114-15, 134, 155
- Wellington, Duke of, 13
- Wells, H. G., 234
- West Point Military Academy, 107
- Western Desert, 109
- Westminster, 21
- Whistler, J. A. M., 22
- White, Gen., 163
- Whiteley, Gen. T. F. M., 213
- Wilde, Oscar, 22
- Wilhelm, Crown Prince, 48, 55
- Willkie, Wendell, 151
- Wilson, Gen. Sir H. Maitland, 192
- Wilson, Woodrow, 60
- William the Conqueror, 17
- Williams, Gen. Sir G., 87, 163
- Wisden's Cricketer's Almanack*, 34
- Woking, 72
  
- YORK, DUKE and DUCHESS OF, 74
- Ypres, first battle of, 55-6
  
- ZEM ZEM, 150
- Zhukov, Marshal, 225, 230





